

Міністерство освіти та науки України  
Волинський національний університет імені Лесі Українки  
Факультет іноземної філології

**Алла Павлюк  
Леся Малімон  
Наталія Єфремова  
Ірина Калиновська  
Ольга Василенко**

# **English Verb in Use**

*Навчальний посібник  
для студентів закладів вищої освіти*

Луцьк  
2024

УДК 811.111'36(075.8)

А 64

*Рекомендовано до друку Вченою радою Волинського національного університету імені Лесі Українки (Гриф «Рекомендовано», протокол № 3 від 22 лютого 2024 року).*

**Рецензенти:**

**П'єцух О. І.** – доктор філологічних наук, доцент кафедри теорії та практики перекладу Черкаського національного університету імені Богдана Хмельницького;

**Рись Л. Ф.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри німецької філології Волинського національного університету імені Лесі Українки.

**English Verb in Use:** навчальний посібник для студентів закладів вищої освіти / Алла Павлюк, Леся Малімон, Наталія Єфремова, Ірина Калиновська, Ольга Василенко. – Луцьк : ВНУ імені Лесі Українки, 2024. – 300 с.

Навчальний посібник призначено для здобувачів вищої освіти спеціальностей 035 Філологія (Освітньо-професійна програма «Мова і література (англійська). Переклад») та 014 Середня освіта (Освітньо-професійна програма «Середня освіта. Мова і література (англійська)»).

Посібник є складовою навчально-методичного забезпечення освітнього компоненту «Англійська мова». Основною метою посібника, який складається з трьох частин (Theoretical Outline, Practice Exercises, Revision Tests), є систематизація знань, вироблення вмінь і навичок теоретичного опрацювання та практичного застосування основних аспектів граматики дієслова сучасної англійської мови.

УДК 811.111'36(075.8)

А 64

© Павлюк А., Малімон Л., Єфремова Н.,  
Калиновська І., Василенко О., 2024

© Волинський національний університет  
імені Лесі Українки, 2024

© Малімон А. (обкладинка), 2024

## CONTENTS

<b>PART I. THEORETICAL OUTLINE.....</b>	<b>5</b>
1. Classification of English Verbs .....	5
2. The Verb <i>to be</i> .....	7
3. The Constructions <i>there is / there are</i> .....	7
4. The Verb <i>to have (got)</i> .....	8
5. Tenses in the Active Voice.....	9
5.1. Present Tenses.....	9
5.2. Past Tenses.....	13
5.3. Future Tenses.....	17
6. Verbs in the Passive Voice.....	20
7. Direct and Indirect Speech .....	22
8. The Sequence of Tenses .....	24
9. The Oblique Mood.....	25
9.1. Subjunctive I.....	25
9.2. Subjunctive II.....	25
9.3. The Conditional Mood.....	28
9.4. The Suppositional Mood.....	31
10. Modal Verbs.....	34
11. Non-Finite Forms of the Verb.....	44
11.1. The Infinitive.....	45
11.2. The Gerund.....	52
11.3. The Participle.....	56
<b>PART II. PRACTICE EXERCISES.....</b>	<b>62</b>
1. The Verb <i>to be</i> .....	62
2. The Constructions <i>there is / there are</i> .....	63
3. The Verb <i>to have (got)</i> .....	66
4. Tenses in the Active Voice.....	68
4.1. Present Tenses.....	68
4.2. Past Tenses.....	79
4.3. Future Tenses.....	89
5. Verbs in the Passive Voice.....	97
6. Direct and Indirect Speech.....	102
7. The Sequence of Tenses.....	107
8. The Oblique Mood.....	110
8.1. Subjunctive I.....	110
8.2. Subjunctive II.....	111
8.3. The Conditional Mood.....	120
8.4. The Suppositional Mood.....	136
9. Modal Verbs.....	150
10. Non-Finite Forms of the Verb.....	181
10.1. The Infinitive.....	181
10.2. The Gerund.....	198
10.3. The Participle.....	206
<b>PART III. REVISION TESTS.....</b>	<b>216</b>
<b>APPENDICES.....</b>	<b>264</b>
<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	<b>299</b>

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

Навчальний посібник «English Verb in Use» укладений відповідно до актуальної програми з основної іноземної мови (англійської) для підготовки здобувачів вищої освіти спеціальностей 035 Філологія (Освітньо-професійна програма «Мова і література (англійська). Переклад») та 014 Середня освіта (Освітньо-професійна програма «Середня освіта. Мова і література (англійська)»).

Посібник складається з трьох частин: «Theoretical Outline», «Practice Exercises» та «Revision Tests». Перша частина посібника складається з одинадцяти розділів, у яких описано морфологічні категорії, класифікацію, синтаксичні функції в реченні тощо повнозначної частини мови – дієслова. Значну увагу приділено дієсловом *to be*, *to have (got)*, конструкціям *there is / are*, функціонуванню дієслів в активному та пасивному станах, перетворенням з прямої в непряму мову, правилам узгодження часів. Чотири підрозділи присвячено розгляду умовного способу сучасного англійського дієслова, а саме Subjunctive I, Subjunctive II, the Conditional Mood, the Suppositional Mood. Далі описані особливості англійських модальних дієслів (Modal Verbs), їхні форми, правила вживання в реченнях та способи перекладу. Велику увагу приділено неособовим частинам мови англійських дієслів, зокрема інфінітиву (Infinitive), герундію (Gerund) та дієприкметнику й дієприслівнику (Participle I, II).

У другій частині посібника пропонуються вправи, націлені на актуалізацію й закріплення граматичного матеріалу, присвяченого зазначеним аспектам. Особлива увага приділена проблемним для україномовних здобувачів освіти моментам, які викликають труднощі при вивченні сучасної англійської мови (до прикладу, дієслово в англійській мові має розгалужену систему часових форм в активному та пасивному станах, студентам потрібно розуміти правила їхнього утворення й вживання, а також правила перетворення з прямої в непряму мову, узгодження часів, необхідно запам'ятати варіанти перекладу деяких дієслівних конструкцій тощо). Кількість вправ з кожної теми визначається ступенем її важкості для здобувачів освіти.

У третій частині посібника пропонуються підсумкові тести, націлені на закріплення, систематизацію та перевірку вивченого граматичного матеріалу, присвяченого зазначеним аспектам. Вправи і тести у другому й третьому розділах посібника подано відповідно до порядку висвітлення теоретичних тем першого розділу у формі робочого зошита, тобто здобувачі освіти мають змогу виконувати вправи письмово. Ілюстративний матеріал навчального посібника ґрунтується в основному на нормах британського варіанта сучасної англійської мови. Джерела ілюстративного матеріалу включають вживану лексику, адекватно й прозоро відображають граматичні явища, які ілюструють, що сприяє кращому сприйняттю й засвоєнню граматичних явищ загалом, а також попередженню типових граматичних помилок. Ілюстративний матеріал має пізнавальну цінність у країнознавчому аспекті.

У кінці посібника є додатки: глосарій граматичних термінів англійською та українськими мовами, таблиця неправильних дієслів у трьох формах з українськими еквівалентами; модальні дієслова з переліком основних значень та особливостями вживання у мовленні; неособові форми дієслова (інфінітив, герундій, дієприкметник та дієприслівник) з їх номінальними й дієслівними характеристиками, часовими й становими відмінностями, синтаксичними функціями у реченні, конструкціями; найуживаніші дієслова, дієслівні словосполучення з неособовими формами дієслова. Наявність таких додатків полегшує самостійну роботу студентів, сприяє кращому засвоєнню граматичного матеріалу й формуванню стійких граматичних навичок.

## PART I. THEORETICAL OUTLINE

The **verb** is a part of speech which denotes an **action**, i.e. some **activity** (*to play, to speak, to walk*), **process** (*to live, to sleep, to wait*), **state** (*to be, to like*) or **relation** (*to consist, to resemble*).

The verb presents a system of finite and non-finite forms.

There are four basic forms of the verb in Modern English, they are: **the Infinitive, the Past Simple, Participle II and Participle I**: *to finish – finished – finished – finishing, to write – wrote – written – writing*,

The verb in its finite forms possesses **the morphological categories of person, number, tense, aspect, correlation, voice and mood**. Its syntactical function is that of the predicate.

The non-finite forms (or verbals) are four in number, they are: **the Infinitive, the Gerund, Participle I and Participle II**.

### 1. CLASSIFICATION OF ENGLISH VERBS

The classification of English verbs may be undertaken from different standpoints: according to their meaning, their relation to the Continuous form, the type of object they take, their function in the sentence, the way in which the Past Simple and Participle II are formed, their structure, their semantic categories.

**I. According to their meaning** verbs can be divided into two groups – **terminative** and **non-terminative**, or **durative verbs**.

**Terminative verbs** imply a limit beyond which the action cannot continue. It means, they contain the idea that the action must come to an end, reaching some point where it has logically to stop, e.g. *to begin, to break, to bring, to close, to come, to die, to fall, to find, to open, to recognize, to refuse, etc.* **Durative verbs** do not imply any such limit and the action can go on indefinitely, without reaching any logically necessary final point, e.g. *to carry, to know, to live, to play, to run, to sit, to sleep, to speak, to stand, to talk, to walk*.

**II. In accordance with their relation to the Continuous aspect**, English verbs fall into two groups: **dynamic verbs**, i.e. verbs which admit of the Continuous form (a) and **stative verbs**, i.e. verbs which do not admit of the Continuous form (b):

a) *I was reading a book when he came in.*      b) *I hear you well but don't understand what you mean.*

**III. According to the way in which the Past Simple and Participle II are formed** the English verbs are divided into three groups: **regular verbs, irregular verbs, mixed verbs**.

**The regular verbs** go back to the Germanic weak verbs. They constitute the largest group. They form the Past Simple and Participle II by adding **-ed** to the stem of the verb, or only **-d** if the stem of the verb ends in **-e**:  
*to open – opened – opened.*

**The irregular verbs** are more than 200 in number. They form their Past Simple and Participle II according to some fixed traditional patterns:

*to be – was/were – been,      to have – had – had,      to do – did – done.*

**IV. According to the type of object they take** English verbs are classified into **transitive** and **intransitive**. Verbs that do not require any object for the completion of their meaning are called **intransitive**.  
e.g. *We walked across the fields.*

Verbs that require some kind of object to complete their indirect meaning are called **transitive**.  
e.g. *Believe me, I'm telling the truth.*

**V. According to the role the verbs play in sentences** they are classified into **main**, or **notional verbs** and **auxiliary verbs**. **Main verbs** play a central role in the sentence. They are the most important element in the sentence because they determine the other elements of the sentence. e.g. *I went into the empty room.*

**Auxiliary verbs** are those which have lost their meaning and are used only as form words, thus having only a grammatical function. They occur before a main verb and qualify the meaning of the main verb. Here belong such verbs as *to do, to have, to be, shall, will, should, would*.

e.g. *Does he live in Kyiv?*

*I have lost my pen.*

### Grammatical categories of the English verbs

The verb has the following grammatical categories: **person, number, tense, aspect, voice and mood.**

**The Category of Person** expresses the relation of the action and its doer to the speaker, showing whether the action is performed by the speaker (the **first** person), someone addressed by the speaker (the **second** person) or someone/something other than the speaker or person addressed (the **third** person).

In Modern English the category of person is weakly expressed. The only personal inflexion of the verb in Modern English is the inflexion *-(e)s* of the third person singular in the present tense of the indicative mood (*he plays, she watches*). In the past tense there are no person distinctions. In the future tense we have auxiliaries *shall* (less common) and *will*. And in the conditional mood the auxiliaries *should* and *would*. It's necessary to note that in Modern English there is a certain tendency to use *will* and *would* for all persons.

The only exception is the verb **to be** which has the following person forms: *am, is, are*. The verb **to be** has three forms for person and number in the Present Simple: *I am, he (she, it) is, we (you, they) are*; and two forms for the Past Simple: singular – *was* (*I, he, she, it*), plural – *were* (*we, you, they*).

**The Category of Number** shows whether the action is performed by one or more than one person or non-person. In Modern English there are two numbers in the verb: **singular** and **plural**.

**Tense** is the form of the verb which indicates the time of the action. **The Category of Tense** is clearly expressed in the forms of the English verb. There are four groups of tenses: Simple, Continuous, Perfect and Perfect Continuous. Each of these forms includes four tenses: Present, Past, Future and Future in the Past. Thus there are 16 tenses in English:

Simple Tenses	Continuous Tenses	Perfect Tenses	Perfect Continuous Tenses
Present Simple	Present Continuous	Present Perfect	Present Perfect Continuous
Past Simple	Past Continuous	Past Perfect	Past Perfect Continuous
Future Simple	Future Continuous	Future Perfect	Future Perfect Continuous
Future Simple in the Past	Future Continuous in the Past	Future Perfect in the Past	Future Perfect Continuous in the Past

**The Category of Aspect.** In English the verb has two aspect forms: the Continuous Aspect and the Common Aspect.

**The Continuous Aspect:** *I am speaking, I was speaking, I have been speaking.*

**The Common Aspect:** *I speak, I spoke, I have spoken.*

**The Category of Voice** is the category of the verb, which indicates the relation of the predicate to the subject and the object. There are two voices in English: the Active Voice and the Passive Voice.

**The Active Voice** shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject is the doer of the action expressed by the predicate. e.g. *Ann speaks English very well.*

**The Passive Voice** shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject is acted upon.

e.g. *This film is much spoken about.*

**The Category of Mood** is a grammatical category, which indicates the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the verb from the point of view of its reality. The speaker may represent an action as a real fact or as a command (a request) or as something unreal, something that does not exist in reality.

There are three moods in Modern English. They are: **the Indicative Mood, the Imperative Mood and the Oblique Mood.**

Actions represented as real facts are expressed by **the Indicative Mood**, which is characterized by a great number of tense-aspect forms which may be used in the Active or the Passive Voice.

e.g. *Ann lives in Kyiv. She has been living there for ten years.*

The Indicative Mood is also used to express a real condition, i.e. a condition, the realization of which is considered possible. e.g. *If it rains we will stay at home.*

**The Imperative Mood** expresses commands, orders, requests, etc. In Modern English the Imperative Mood has only one form which coincides with the infinitive without the particle **to**. e.g. *Read the text!*

The negative form is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to do** followed by **not** (in spoken English – **don't**) and the infinitive of the notional verb without **to**. e.g. *Don't play football in the yard.*

If we wish to make a command or request more expressive, we use the emphatic form. In this case the auxiliary verb **to do** is placed before the notional verb, including **to be**. e.g. *Do be quiet!*

To make a request or an order more emphatic the subject expressed by the pronoun *you* is sometimes used. It is characteristic of colloquial speech. e.g. *You don't worry.*

A command addressed to the third person singular and plural is usually expressed with the help of the analytical form: **let ... + infinitive**. If the person addressed is denoted by the personal pronoun, it is used in the objective case. e.g. *Let Peter do it himself, let them not help him.*

With the first person plural the verb **to let** is used with the pronoun **us** (the contracted form is **let's**). This form is actually an invitation to a joint action. e.g. *Let's have a cup of coffee.*

Actions represented as unreal, problematic, imaginary, supposed, desirable, advisable, hypothetical, contradicting reality, etc. are expressed by **the Oblique Mood**. In Modern English there are four forms of the Oblique Mood: **Subjunctive I**, **Subjunctive II**, **the Suppositional Mood** and **the Conditional Mood**. Two of them (Subjunctive I and Subjunctive II) are synthetic and the other two (the Conditional Mood and the Suppositional Mood) are analytical. With the exception of Subjunctive I, all of them have tense, voice and aspect distinctions.

e.g. *Success **attend** you!* (Subjunctive I)

*I wish I **were** young again.* (Subjunctive II)

*But for the wind the weather **would be** nice.* (Conditional Mood)

*It is necessary that you **should come** in time.* (Suppositional Mood)

## 2. THE VERB TO BE

The verb **to be** belongs to the suppletive system, that is it forms different grammatical forms with the help of different roots:

Infinitive	to be
Present Simple	am, is, are
Past Simple	was, were
Participle II	been
Participle I	being

According to its meaning and syntactical functions the verb **to be** is used as:

a) notional, b) link, c) auxiliary, d) modal.

e.g. a) *"Mary **is** in the kitchen," I answered.*

b) *The fields **were** golden with evening.*

c) *The sun **was** rising.*

d) *You **are** to say nothing of this to anyone.*

The verb **to be** used as a notional verb means **to exist, to take place, to happen, to go** (to visit, to attend):

e.g. *Where **have** you **been**?*

*There **was** no one in the sitting-room.*

**Note:** When the verb **to be** has the meaning of **to go, to visit**, it is used only in the perfect tense:

e.g. *I **have been** to the theatre twice this month.*

Questions and negative sentences with the notional verb **to be** in the present and past (common aspect) are formed without the auxiliary verb **to do**. In questions the verb **to be** is placed before the subject. In negative sentences the particle **not** is placed after the verb **to be**.

e.g. ***Are** you at home?*

*I **am not** a student of this university.*

## 3. THE CONSTRUCTIONS THERE IS / THERE ARE

If we want to say that something exists or doesn't exist somewhere or at some time, we often use **there + be**. It is often used to talk about something for the first time in a conversation. We use **there is** for singular (a contracted form **there's** may be used) and **there are** for plural.

e.g. ***There is** one table in the classroom.*

***There are** three chairs in the classroom.*

We also use **there is** with uncountable nouns.

e.g. ***There is** some sugar on the table.*

With plural countable nouns we can either give the quantity ("five people") or use "**some**" if we don't know the exact quantity.

e.g. ***There are** five people in the office. (We can see five people exactly)*

***There are** some people in the office. (We don't know exactly how many people)*

With uncountable nouns we also use "**some**".

e.g. ***There is** some milk in the fridge. (We don't know the exact quantity.)*

***There is** some money in my wallet. (I don't know exactly how much money.)*

In the **negative** form the negative particle **not** is placed after the verb (a contracted form **there isn't**).

e.g. ***There isn't** a freezer in the kitchen. (singular, countable noun)*

***There isn't** any money in my wallet. (uncountable noun)*

When we want to indicate that a zero quantity of something exists, use **there isn't any** for uncountable nouns and **there aren't any** for plural countable nouns.

e.g. ***There isn't any** water in the swimming pool.*

***There aren't any** people at the party.*

In the interrogative form the verb **is/are** is placed before **there**. Use **there is / there are** in short answers.  
 e.g. **Are there** any dogs in the park? – Yes, **there are**.  
**Is there** a security guard in the shop? – Yes, **there is**.  
 We can use there + be with all tenses.  
 e.g. **There were** many poor people in the 16th century.  
**Will there** be a train at 6 p.m.?

#### 4. THE VERB TO HAVE (GOT)

According to its meaning and syntactical functions the verb **to have** is used as: a) notional, b) auxiliary, c) modal.

- e.g. a) **Have you got** a lot of friends here?  
 b) **I have** written nothing for seven days, not even a letter.  
 c) Steve **had** to leave that morning.

The verb **to have** used as a notional verb means **to possess, to hold, to experience**:

e.g. Ann **had** a lot of books at home.

There are two ways of expressing negation with the verb **to have**:

a) by means of the particle **not**:

e.g. **I haven't got** any books.

b) by means of the negative pronoun **no**:

e.g. **I have no** books.

*She had **no** money.*

#### **Have** and **have got** (compared):

a) We use **have got/has got** more often than **have/has** alone.

You can say:

*We've got (We **have got**) a new car or We **have** a new car.*

*Tom's got (Tom **has got**) a headache or Tom **has** a headache.*

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

**Have you got** any money?

**I haven't got** any money.

**Do you have** any money?

**I don't have** any money.

**Have you any money?** (less usual)

**I haven't any money.**

**Has she got** a car?

**She hasn't got** a car.

**Does she have** a car?

**She doesn't have** a car.

**Has she a car?** (less usual)

**She hasn't a car.**

We use both **have** and **have got** to talk about:

relationships: *I **have** two brothers. I **have got** two brothers.*

possessions: *They **have** a lot of money. They've **got** a lot of money.*

features: *She **has** blue eyes. She's **got** blue eyes.*

illness: *He **has** a cold. He's **got** a cold.*

appointments: *I **have** an interview tomorrow. I **have got** an interview tomorrow.*

With past and future tenses we do not use forms of **got**.

e.g. *When she was a child, she **had** long fair hair.*

In past questions and negative sentences we normally use **did/didn't**:

e.g. **Did you have** a car when you lived in London?

*I wanted to phone you, but I **didn't have** your number.*

We also use **have** to express some actions. **Have got** is not possible in these expressions:

**have** breakfast/lunch/dinner/a meal/a drink/a cup of coffee/a cigarette, etc.; **have** a swim/a walk/a rest/a holiday/a party/a trip, etc.; **have** a bath/a shower/a wash; **have** a look (at something); **have** a baby (give birth to a baby); **have** a talk/a conversation/an argument/a word (with someone)/a chat (with someone); **have fun/a good (bad) time**

e.g. *I usually **have** a big breakfast in the morning.*

*Let's **have** a break!*

In questions and negative sentences you must use **do/does/did**:

e.g. **I don't usually have** a big breakfast.

**Did you have** a swim this morning?

When you use **have** for actions, you can use continuous forms (**is having/are having/was having**, etc.):

e.g. *Where's Tom? – He's **having** a bath.*

*Our neighbours **are having** a party.*

Cf.: *I **have** a bath every morning. (I take a bath – this is an action.)*

*I've **got** a bath. (There is a bath in my house.)*



## 5. TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

### 5.1. PRESENT TENSES

#### The Present Simple

**The Present Simple** is formed from the infinitive without the particle **to**. In the third person singular it has the suffix **-s/-es** which is pronounced [z] after vowels and voiced consonants (*plays, opens, reads, sees*), [s] after voiceless consonants (*looks, asks, works*) and [ɪz] after sibilants [s], [z] (*closes, places, teaches, wishes*).

In writing the following spelling rules should be observed: a final “y” is changed into “i” if it is preceded by a consonant and then **-es** is added: *to study – he studies, to try – he tries*; but after a vowel “y” is kept unchanged and the suffix **-s** is added: *to play – plays, to stay – stays*.

The affirmative form of the Present Simple is a **synthetic form** (it is built up with the help of the suffixes). But the interrogative and negative forms are built up **analytically**, by means of the auxiliary verb **to do** in the Present Simple and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**: *Do you work? Does he work? I don't work. He doesn't work.*

#### The Use of the Present Simple

The Present Simple is used:

- 1) To state simple facts in the present:  
e.g. *I live in Kyiv.* *We study English.*
- 2) To denote customary, repeated actions in the present. This use of the Present Simple is often associated with such adverbials as *every day, always, often, seldom, never, usually, once, occasionally, etc.*  
e.g. *I get up at 7.* *I usually go to the library after the lessons.*
- 3) To state laws of nature, universal truths, something which is eternally true:  
e.g. *Snow melts at 0°C.* *Two plus two makes four.*
- 4) To express a succession of actions taking place at the time of speaking. In this meaning it is used in stage directions or by TV commentators in describing sports events, etc. It is stylistically restricted.  
e.g. *Now watch me closely: I take a match, light it, put it in to the glass and... oh, nothing happens. Now I peel the apples, slice them and put into the dish.*
- 5) To denote actions going on at the moment of speaking (with verbs not used in the Continuous form such as *to see, to hear, to understand, to want, to wish, to hate*, etc.):  
e.g. *I think you are right. I see George in the street.*  
*I quite understand what you mean.*
- 6) To express declarations, announcements, etc. referring to the moment of speaking:  
e.g. *I declare the meeting open.* *I agree to your proposal.*
- 7) To denote future actions:
  - a) in adverbial clauses of time, condition and concession, when the action refers to the future. These clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *if, unless, on condition (that), while, when, in case, till, until*:  
e.g. *When she comes, ring me up, please.* *She won't go to bed, till you come.*

**Note:** In object clauses introduced by the conjunctions *when* and *if* the Future Simple is used to denote future action: e.g. *I don't know when she will come.* (object clause)  
*I'm not sure if she will come at all.* (object clause)

  - b) to indicate a future action which is certain to take place according to a time-table, program, schedule. In this case the sentence usually has an indication of time. (With verbs of motion as *to go, to come, to start, to leave, to return, to arrive*):  
e.g. *The train leaves Kyiv at 9.00.* *The course starts in September.*
  - c) in some special questions with reference to the immediate future:  
e.g. *What do we do next?* *Where do we go now?*
- 8) To denote past actions:
  - a) in newspaper headlines, in the outlines of novels, plays, films, etc.:  
e.g. *Dog Saves its Master.*  
*Fleur meets John. They fall in love with each other.*
  - b) in narrative or stories to express past action more vividly (the so-called **historic present**):  
e.g. *It was so unexpected. You see, I came home late last night, turned on the light and – whom do you think I see? Jack, old Jack, sleeping in the chair. I give a cry, rush to him and shake him by the shoulder.*
- 9) To denote completed actions with the meaning of the Present Perfect (with the verbs *to forget, to hear, to be told*):  
e.g. *I forget your telephone number.* *I hear you are leaving for London.*
- 10) To denote a suggestion. We can say “*Why don't you...*”  
e.g. *I'm tired. – Why don't you go to bed early?*

## The Present Continuous

**The Present Continuous** is formed by means of the Present Simple of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. Participle I is formed by adding the suffix **-ing** to the stem of the verb; the following spelling rules should be observed:

- a) if a verb ends in a mute **-e**, the mute **-e** is dropped before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to give – giving*;
- b) if a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a vowel rendering a short stressed sound, the final consonant is doubled before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to run – running*.

A final **-l** is doubled if it is preceded by a vowel letter rendering a short vowel sound, stressed or unstressed: *to expel – expelling, to travel – travelling*.

- c) the verbs **to die, to lie** and **to tie** form Participle I in the following way: **dying, lying, tying**;

- d) a final **-y** is not changed before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to comply – complying, to deny – denying*.

In **the interrogative form** the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

In **the negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

**The contracted negative forms** are: **isn't, aren't**.

*She isn't reading.*

*We aren't reading.*

**The negative-interrogative forms** are:

*Am I not reading?*

*Isn't she reading?*

## The Use of the Present Continuous

**The Present Continuous** is used:

- 1) To denote an action going on at the time of speaking.

e.g. *She is waiting in the hall.*

*Julia!! Where are you going?*

**Note:** The Present Simple, not the Present Continuous, is used to denote actions going on at the present moment when the fact is important and not process:

e.g. *Why don't you read your examples?*

- 2) When we talk about something which is happening around the time of speaking or about a period around the present. Sometimes such adverbs or adverbial expressions as *today, this season*, etc. are used.

e.g. *I'm taking special courses in English.*

*Tom isn't playing football this season. He wants to concentrate on his studies.*

- 3) To express a continual process. In this case the adverbs *always, constantly, ever* are used.

e.g. *The sun is ever shining.*

*The earth is always moving.*

- 4) To denote actions permanently characterizing the subject and provoking certain emotions in the speaker (impatience, irritation, disapproval, praise, etc.). Sentences with such forms are emotionally coloured.

e.g. *You are always finding fault with me.*

*He is always laughing at everything.*

- 5) With the verbs of motion (**to arrive, to come, to go, to leave, to return, to start, to sail** and some others) to denote an action which will take place in the near future due to one's previous decision. The future action is regarded as something fixed. In Modern English any verb can be used in the Present Continuous Tense to denote a future action:

e.g. *They are coming to tea tomorrow.*

*I'm going away to Glasgow.*

*Are we playing poker tomorrow?*

**Note:** a) the expression **to be going to + Infinitive** (in informal conversation or in songs it is pronounced as *gonna*) also refers an action to the immediate future. We use this expression to talk about a) our future plans when we intend to do something but we have not made all the arrangements yet or b) about things we expect to happen because of something we know or can see now:

e.g. a) *Are you going to come to the party?*

*We are going to meet her next week, but we haven't arranged time yet.*

b) *I think it's going to rain, the sky is dark. It's raining. We are going to get soaked.*

- 6) When there are two actions one of which is in progress and the other is a habitual action, the first is expressed by the Present Continuous and the second by the Present Simple. In this case the Present Continuous is used for emotional colouring.

e.g. *I never talk while I am working.*

*When I see him he is always eating something.*

- 7) When we talk about trends and changing situations.

e.g. *The population of the world is rising very fast.*

*Is your English getting better?*

## The Present Perfect

**The Present Perfect** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to have** in the Present Simple and the Participle II of the notional verb: *I have worked. He has worked.* The same auxiliary is used to form the interrogative and the negative forms: *Have you worked? Has he worked? It has not worked. They have not worked.* In spoken English the contracted forms **I've, he's, she's, it's, we've, you've** and **they've** are used in affirmative sentences, and **haven't** and **hasn't** in negative sentences.

### The Use of the Present Perfect

**Present Perfect** is used:

1) to express a completed action before the present situation but connected with the present situation in its consequences. The time of the action is either not indicated at all, or only vaguely, by means of adverbials such as *just, not yet, already, before, seldom, always, ever, never, often, recently, lately, of late.*

e.g. *Have you arranged everything?* *I have just brought you a book.*

2) when there is an adverbial modifier of time in the sentence that denotes a period of time which is not over yet (*today, this morning, this week, this month, this year, etc.*), though the action is over:

e.g. *I've had a splitting headache this morning.* *This year we have taken only one assistant.*

**Note:** If the period is over or the action refers to some particular moment of time, the Past Simple is used:

e.g. *I wasn't very well this morning, but I'm perfectly all right now.* (This morning is over).

3) to open up conversations, to introduce a new topic in them, to sum up a situation.

e.g. *What has happened?* *You have been very good to me. Thank you.*

4) to denote an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on. In this case either the starting point of the action is indicated or the whole period of duration. The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration (*for an hour, for many years, for the last few days, for a long time, for ages, etc.*). Other expressions have no prepositions (*these three years, all this week, all along, so long, all one's life, etc.*). The starting point of the action is indicated by means of **since**.

e.g. *Where have you been since last Sunday?* *I've known her since we were children.*

In this meaning the Present Perfect is used:

- with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form: e.g. *I have known her for two years.*

- in negative sentences: e.g. *"She hasn't written to me for a year", said Roy.*

- with non-terminative verbs such as **to live, to work, to study, to teach, to travel, etc.** (in this case the Present Perfect Continuous is possible): e.g. *I have worked on the problem for a long time.*

We sometimes find in both parts of such complex sentences two parallel actions which began at the same time in the past and continue into the present. In this case the Present Perfect is used in both clauses.

e.g. *I've loved you since I've known you.*

**Note:** Care should be taken to draw the line between the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Simple when the period of duration is expressed by a prepositional phrase with **for**. If the period of duration belongs to the past time sphere, the Past Simple should be used. It is only if the period of duration comes close to the moment of speaking or includes it that the Present Perfect is used:

e.g. *"I have lived like this", he said, "for two years, and I can't stand it any more." / I teach History at a secondary school. I went to the University here for four years and got a degree.*

The same is true of questions beginning with **how long**:

e.g. *"Do you really think that?" – "I'm sure." – "How long have you been sure?" / "Hello. Haven't seen you about lately?" – "I only got back from Paris this afternoon." – "How long did you stay there?"*

5) in adverbial clauses of time introduced by the conjunctions **when, before, after, as soon as, till** and **until** to express a future action. It shows that the action of the subordinate clause will be accomplished before the action of the principal clause (which is usually expressed by the Future Simple).

e.g. *We'll talk when we've had a cup of tea.* *I am not going till you have answered me.*

**Note:** Verbs of sense perception and motion such as **to hear, to see, to come, to arrive, to return** in adverbial clauses of time are generally used in the Present Simple and not in the Present Perfect:

e.g. *I am sure he will recognize the poem when he hears the first line.*

But when the completion of the action is emphasized, the Present Perfect is used:

e.g. *He will know the poem by the heart when he has heard it twice.*

Present Perfect may be translated into Ukrainian by the present or by the past perfective or imperfective:

e.g. *How many pages have you translated today? Скільки сторінок ти переклав сьогодні*

**Note:** Care should be taken to draw the line between the use of **have/has been to** and **have/has gone to**.

e.g. *He has been to London.* (He has visited it and has returned)

*He has gone to London.* (He is there now)

## The Present Perfect Continuous

**The Present Perfect Continuous** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the Present Perfect and Participle I of the notional verb:

e.g. *I have been working.*

*She has been working.*

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. *Have you been working?*

*Has she been working?*

In the negative form the negative particle not is placed after the first auxiliary:

e.g. *We have not been working.*

*She has not been working.*

### The Use of the Present Perfect Continuous

**Present Perfect Continuous** is used:

1) to denote an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on. Present Perfect Continuous is generally used with *since* (denoting the starting point of the action), *for* (denoting the whole period of duration), *these two days*, etc. (If the conjunction *since* introduces a clause, the verb in this clause is in the Present Simple).

e.g. *I have been living here since 2010.*

*Ever since I saw her last I have been thinking, thinking.*

It is translated into Ukrainian by the present tense form:

e.g. *I have been teaching at this school for 20 years.* – *Я викладаю в цій школі протягом 20 років.*

2) to denote an action which was recently in progress but is no longer going on at the present moment.

e.g. *You are not well today. You look distressed. You have been weeping.*

It is translated into Ukrainian by the past imperfective:

e.g. *Your eyes are red. Have you been crying?* – *У тебе червоні очі. Ти плакала?*

It is often used with an emotional colouring:

e.g. *I suppose you have been telling lies again.*

*My dear Tony! How long you've been coming home.*

The Present Perfect Continuous cannot be used to denote a succession of actions and therefore cannot be used to describe the development of events.

If two actions denoted by the Present Perfect Continuous happen to come together it only means that they are parallel:

e.g. *He has been reading since he has been working in the library.*

### The Present Perfect Continuous and the Present Continuous

The Present Continuous is used to denote an action going on at the present moment, no previous duration is expressed. The Present Perfect Continuous is used when the previous duration of the action is expressed.

e.g. *I am reading "Dombey and Son".* – *Я читаю "Домбі і син".*

*I have been reading "Dombey and Son" for three days.* – *Я читаю "Домбі і син" три дні.*

As we can see, there is no difference in the translation.

### The Present Perfect Continuous and the Present Perfect

The Present Perfect denotes a completed action while with the Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive there is an implication of incompleteness.

e.g. *He has made some experiments.* – *Він зробив декілька досліджень.*

*He has been making experiments.* – *Він робив досліди (Він все ще робить досліди).*

*Why are your lips black?* – *I have been eating bilberries. I have eaten a whole plateful.* – *Чому твої губи чорні?* – *Я їв чорницю. Я з'їв повну тарілку.*

*She is walking up and down the room thinking of the letter she has been writing and wondering how she should finish it.* – *Вона ходить по кімнаті, думаючи про лист, який писала, та розмірковуючи, як його закінчити.*

## 5.2. PAST TENSES

### The Past Simple

**The Past Simple** is formed by adding **-ed** or **-d** to the stem (regular verbs) or by changing the root vowel, or in some other ways (irregular verbs).

The interrogative and negative forms are formed by means of the Past Simple of the auxiliary verb **to do** (**did**) and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**:

e.g. *He worked.*

*Did he work?*

*He didn't work.*

*Did he not work?*

*Didn't he work?*

*I wrote.*

*Did I write?*

*I didn't write.*

*Did you not write?*

*Didn't you write?*

The Past Simple may have a special form which is used for emphasis. This emphatic form is built up analytically, by means of the Past Simple of the auxiliary verb **to do** followed by the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**. The auxiliary verb has strong stress in this case: *I / He / We / They **did** insist on it.*

### The Use of the Past Simple

The Past Simple is commonly used to express a past action. Therefore it is primarily the tense of narration. The Past Simple is often associated with the adverbs and adverbial expressions of the past time: *yesterday, a week ago, last night, last year, in 2010, on Monday, on the 1st of September*, etc. Yet the Past Simple may also be found with such adverbial modifiers of time as *today, tonight, this evening, this morning* (when the morning or the evening is already past), etc.

**The Past Simple** is used in the following cases:

1. To express a single action completed in the past. The time of the action is often given.

e.g. *I only met her six months ago.*

*I saw them last Monday.*

2. To denote a succession of past actions.

e.g. *He got up, put on his hat and left the house.*

*The car stopped, the door opened and a very pretty girl got out of it.*

3. To denote a habitual or recurrent action in the past.

e.g. *All summer I got up at 7.*

*He went down to the ocean every day.*

**Note:** A habitual or recurrent action in the past is sometimes expressed by **used to + Infinitive** and **would + Infinitive**. Use **used to + Infinitive** to talk about states that existed in the past, but no longer exists, and for actions which were repeated in the past, but don't happen now. In such a way we want to emphasise a difference between the past and the present. To form the interrogative and negative forms the auxiliary verb **did** is used with the phrase **used to + Infinitive**. Use **would + Infinitive** to talk about things that happened regularly in the past, but not about states in the past. When we start description of past actions with **used to + Infinitive**, we usually continue with **would + Infinitive**. **Used to** is more colloquial and **would** is more literary.

e.g. *When I was a child I used to play there.*

*Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?*

*The girls would gather wild flowers, and press them afterwards.*

*When he was younger, he used to go on difficult expeditions and he would take risks.*

4. To express an action going on at a given past moment. Generally this meaning is rendered by the Past Continuous. But:

a) the use of the Past Simple becomes obligatory with stative verbs:

e.g. *She sipped her coffee and pulled a face. She thought it tasted horrible.*

b) the Past Simple may be used instead of the Past Continuous with certain durative verbs. They are **to sit, to stand, to lie, to hang, to shine, to gleam, to talk, to speak, to wear, to carry, to walk** and some others. In such cases the action as such is only named and it is often the circumstances under which it takes place that are really important:

e.g. *Her face was heavy: she spoke with deep emotion.*

*He walked between us, listening attentively to our conversation.*

5. To denote future actions in subordinate adverbial clauses of time, condition and concession. The Future-in-the-Past is usually used in the principal clause in this case. This case is found in reported speech.

e.g. *She said she would come when the film was over.*

*She said she would do if nothing unexpected happened.*

## The Past Simple vs The Present Perfect

1. The action expressed by the Past Simple belongs exclusively to the sphere of the past, while the Present Perfect shows that a past occurrence is connected with the present time.

e.g. *She is not well and **has changed** very much of late.*

*She **changed** very much a great many years ago.*

2. The Past Simple is used with such adverbial modifiers of the past time as *yesterday, the other day, last week/month/year, some days/months/years ago, on Monday, in 1995*, etc. With such adverbial modifiers as *today, this week, this year*, etc. both the Present Perfect and the Past Simple are used. The Present Perfect is used when the time of the action is not given or it is not important.

e.g. *I've **smoked** 20 cigarettes today.*

*I **smoked** 20 cigarettes yesterday.*

*I've **finished** my work.*

*I **finished** my work two days ago.*

3. In special questions with *when* only the Past Simple is possible, though the answer can be either in the Past Simple or the Present Perfect depending on the actual state of affairs.

e.g. *When **did** he come?*

*He **came** yesterday. / He **has** just come.*

4. In special questions beginning with *where* and *how* the Past Simple is also normally used. The Present Perfect is not common here because the attention in such sentences is drawn to the circumstances of the actions rather than to the occurrence itself, which means that the speaker has a definite action in mind.

e.g. *"Where **did** your uncle **receive** his guests?" – "Right here."*

*Where is my hat? Where **did** I leave my hat?*

**Note:** The question "*Where **have** you **been**?*" can be asked as soon as the person comes back or is located:

e.g. *"Hello, Mum. I'm sorry I'm late." – "Where **have** you **been**?"*

In all other cases it should be "*Where **were** you?*":

e.g. *"Did the party go off nicely?" – "I don't know. I **wasn't** there." – "Where **were** you?"*

5. In special questions beginning with interrogative words other than those mentioned above: *who, what, why, what... for* and others, both the Present Perfect and the Past Simple are possible. The choice depends on the meaning to be conveyed. If reference is made to an action which is past or definite in the minds of the people speaking, or if there is a change of scene the Past Simple is used; if reference is made to an action which is still valid as part of the present situation, the Present Perfect should be used.

e.g. *I know she gave him a good scolding." – "What **did** he do?"*

*Looking at her she said: "Dorothy's **gone** to a garden party." – "I know. Why **haven't** you **gone** too?"*

6. Questions beginning with *how long* may contain either the Past Simple or the Present Perfect depending on whether the period of time implied is already over or has not yet expired.

e.g. *"We really had a wonderful time in Brighton." – "How long **did** you **stay** there?"*

*He turned on the light and saw his brother sitting in the armchair. "How long **have** you **been** here?" he asked in surprise.*

7. The Present Perfect, not the Past Simple is used with the verb **to be** in the sense *to go, to visit* even though the adverbial of place are used. Mind the use of the preposition **to** after it. **To be** is followed by the preposition **to** only in the Present Perfect and the Past Simple only in the meaning *to visit, to go*.

e.g. ***Have** you **been** to London?*

*She **has been** to Paris three times.*

8. In the following cases the Present Perfect is not used:

*What **did** you say? – Що ви **сказали**?*

*I **did not hear** your question. – Я **не почув** вашого запитання.*

*I **heard** that Mary is in London. – Я **чув**, що Мери в Лондоні.* (In this case **to hear** is not a verb of sense perception. It means "*the rumour reached me.*")

Compare: *I **have forgotten** to ring her up.* (a certain action)

9. With the adverb *just* the Present Perfect is used. With the expression *just now* the Past Simple is used. *Just now* is less frequent than *just*.

e.g. *I **saw** you come in just now.*

10. It should be noted that the use of the Present Perfect is by no means obligatory with such adverbial as *yet, already, before, always, ever, never, often, seldom, recently, lately*, etc. because any other tense-aspect form may be used with these adverbs if it is required by the sense.

e.g. *He was studying to be a pianist, but he never **touches** the piano now.*

*His room **was not** yet furnished, and he felt that he would have liked it to remain empty.*

*I **have just opened** this window, to let in a little air and sunshine.*

11. Do not use the Present Perfect for happenings or actions which are not connected with the present (e.g. historical events).

e.g. *The Chinese **invented** printing.*

*Shakespeare **wrote** Hamlet.*

## The Past Continuous

**The Past Continuous** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the Past Simple and Participle I of the notional verb:

e.g. *I was reading.*

*We were reading.*

In the **interrogative form** the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. *Was I reading?*

*Were we reading?*

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb:

e.g. *I was not reading.*

*We were not reading.*

### The Use of the Past Continuous

The Past Continuous is used:

1. To denote an action which was going on at a definite moment in the past. The definite moment is indicated either by another past action expressed by a verb in the Past Simple or by an adverbial phrase.

e.g. *When I returned she was sweeping the floor.*

*At 10 it was still raining.*

The definite moment is often not expressed, but understood from the situation.

e.g. *He did not notice what was going on around him – he was reading.*

2. To denote a continuous action in the past.

e.g. *We were quarrelling all day yesterday.*

*All the morning the gardeners were bringing flowers.*

**Note:** the Past Simple is also often used after such phrases as *the whole day, all day long* when we do not consider the action in progress, but merely state the fact, that the action took place in the past:

e.g. *They worked in the garden all day long.*

*It rained all morning and turned the rain to slush.*

3. To express action generally characterizing the person. In this case the adverbs *always, ever, constantly* are used. Sentences of such kind are emotionally coloured.

e.g. *She was constantly complaining of being lonely.*

*She had rather poor health and was constantly complaining of headaches.*

4. When two actions are parallel in both the principal and the subordinate clause.

e.g. *I was preparing dinner while she was tidying the room.*

5. To denote future actions viewed from the past:

a) with the verbs *to start, to go, to leave, to come, to stay* to express an action in the immediate future. When that future moment is viewed from the past (the action is usually planned or expected):

e.g. *You wrote that you were coming this evening.*

*She said she was leaving in a week.*

b) in subordinate adverbial clauses of time after the conjunctions *when, while, as long as*, etc.:

e.g. *She said she would stay in the car while I was talking to the nurse.*

**Note:** The phrase *was going to* expresses unfulfilled arrangements or unfulfilled plans in the past. This phrase is used to denote actions one intended to do but did not or could not do.

e.g. *I was going to drink some coffee but there was none left.*

*He was going to buy some flowers but the shop was closed.*

The Past Continuous is rendered into Ukrainian by the past imperfective:

e.g. *When I came home, she was reading a book. – Коли я прийшов додому, вона читала книжку.*

### The Past Perfect

**The Past Perfect** is an analytical form which is formed by means of the Past Simple of the auxiliary verb **to have** and Participle II of the notional verb.

In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. *Had she worked? Had he worked?*

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb:

e.g. *She had not worked. We had not worked.*

The Past Perfect falls within the time sphere of the past and is mainly found in narration. **Past Perfect** is used:

1. To denote an action completed before a certain moment in the past. The moment may be indicated by another past action expressed by a verb in the Past Simple or by an adverbial phrase or can be understood from the situation. The Past Perfect is used with adverbs *just, already*, etc.

e.g. *I woke, and looked at my watch; it was 5 o'clock. I **had been asleep** four hours.*

*It was long afterwards that I found out what **had happened**.*

2. With the conjunctions **hardly... when, scarcely... when, no sooner... than**. For the sake of emphasis the word order may be inverted.

e.g. *They **had hardly gone** when aunt Julia wandered slowly into the room...*

*Hardly **had she sat down** when a very stout gentleman flopped into the chair opposite hers.*

3. To denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point or the whole period of duration of the action is indicated. To indicate the starting point the preposition *since* is used, to indicate the whole period of duration *for* is used.

The Past Perfect is used:

a) with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form;

e.g. *She told me she **had been ill** since she came back from the seaside.*

*He suddenly understood that he **had loved** her all his life.*

b) in negative sentences;

e.g. *Those two **had not spoken** to each other for three days and were in a state of rage.*

*They **had not met** since the day of her death.*

c) with non-terminative verbs such as **to work, to live, to study, to teach, to travel, to last**, etc. (in this case the Past Perfect Continuous is possible):

e.g. *When we first met she **had lived** in the country for 2 years.*

### The Past Simple and the Past Perfect

1. The Past Perfect is not used to denote a succession of actions. In this case the Past Simple is used.

The Past Simple is used with the conjunctions *after, before, when* if the relation between the actions approaches succession, when the idea of completion is of no importance.

e.g. *He went on with his work after he **had** a short rest.*

*He had a short rest before he **went** on with his work.*

2. Verbs of motion and sense perception such as **to come, to arrive, to return, to see, to hear** in adverbial clauses of time are generally used in the Past Simple when the action is practically simultaneous.

e.g. *When he **came down**, ... he found his mother scrupulous in a low evening dress...*

*When he **heard** the first line of the poem, he recognized it at once.*

When the completion of the action is emphasized the Past Perfect is used:

e.g. *He knew the poem by heart when he **had heard** it several times.*

### The Past Perfect Continuous

**The Past Perfect Continuous** is formed by means of the Past Perfect of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb.

In the **interrogative form** the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

In the **negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

#### Affirmative

*I had been writing.*

*He had been writing.*

*She had been writing.*

*We had been writing.*

*You had been writing.*

*They had been writing.*

#### Interrogative

*Had I been writing?*

*Had he been writing?*

*Had she been writing?*

*Had we been writing?*

*Had you been writing?*

*Had they been writing?*

#### Negative

*I had not been writing.*

*He had not been writing.*

*She had not been writing.*

*We had not been writing.*

*You had not been writing.*

*They had not been writing.*

### The Use of the Past Perfect Continuous

**Past Perfect Continuous** is used:

1) to denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment. Either the starting point of the action is indicated or the whole period of duration. The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration. **Since** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

e.g. *We could not go out because it **had been raining** for two hours.*

*We could not go out because it **had been raining** since early morning.*



As has been stated above, the Past Perfect is used with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form, in negative sentences and with certain non-terminative verbs. With verbs not admitting of the Continuous form the Past Perfect is the only tense possible. In negative sentences the Past Perfect Continuous can be used, but it is far less common than the Past Perfect.

With certain non-terminative verbs both the Past Perfect and the Past Perfect Continuous are used:

e.g. *He said he **had worked** for twenty years.* (the fact is emphasized)

*He said he **had been working** for a long time without achieving final results.* (the process is emphasized)

The Past Perfect Continuous is rendered in Ukrainian by the past imperfective:

e.g. *I **had been reading** about an hour when he came.*

*Я **читав** уже близько години, коли він прийшов.*

2) to denote an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the past, but which had been in progress not long before.

e.g. *I sobbed a little still, but that because I **had been crying**, not because I was crying then.*

### The Past Perfect Continuous and the Past Continuous

The Past Perfect Continuous should not be confused with the Past Continuous. The Past Continuous is used to denote an action going on at a definite moment in the past, no previous duration is expressed. The Past Perfect Continuous is used when the previous duration of the action is expressed:

e.g. *The magnificent motor-car **was waiting** at the kerb.*

*It **had been waiting** for two hours.*

## 5.3. FUTURE TENSES

### The Future Simple

**The Future Simple** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **shall** which is less common (for the first person, singular and plural) and **will** (for the second and the third persons, singular and plural) and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**:

e.g. *He **will see** them tomorrow.*

It should be mentioned that in present-day English there is a tendency to use **will** for all the persons. Besides, the difference in the use of **shall** and **will** disappears altogether in spoken English where the contracted form **'ll** is used with all the persons: *I'll see him tomorrow. She'll see him tomorrow.*

In the **interrogative form** auxiliary verbs are placed before the subject:

e.g. ***Shall we go** there tomorrow?*

***Will they see** him tomorrow?*

In the **negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb. In spoken English the contracted forms **shan't** and **won't** are commonly used.

e.g. *She **will not / won't go** with you.*

The Future Simple may be used to express:

1) a single point action that will be completed in the future as a prediction based on our personal opinion or knowledge. We often use expressions *I think, I don't think* or *Do you think?:*

e.g. *I think it **will ruin** her.*

*I don't think he **'ll marry** her.*

*I know I'm right, and you **'ll realize** it.*

*Do you think she **will come**?*

2) a permanent action occupying a whole period of time in the future and generally characterizing the person denoted by the subject of the sentence:

e.g. *I'm afraid he **'ll be** a bit lonely.*

*I think I **will remain** in love with you all my life.*

3) a succession of actions in the future:

e.g. *I'll wait in the next room and **come back** when she's gone.*

4) recurrent or habitual action in the future:

e.g. *I'll **come along** as often as possible.*

*I hope we **'ll see** something of you while you are in London.*

5) immediate decision, when we decide to do something at the same time as speaking:

e.g. *"The manager isn't here right now". – "Ok, I'll **come back** later".*

**Note:** To denote a future action the word combinations *to be going + Infinitive, to be about + Infinitive,* and *to be on the point of + Gerund* are often used. *To be going to* is colloquial, *to be on the point of* is literary.

e.g. *The runners **are about to start**.*

*I was **on the point of giving up** my research.*

**To be going to, to be about to, to be on the point of** denote an action which is expected to take place in the nearest future. The expression **to be going to + Infinitive** (in informal conversation or in songs it is pronounced as *gonna*) refers an action to the immediate future when we intend to do something but we have not made all the arrangements yet.

e.g. *I am going to be an actor one day.*

*We are going to meet her next week, but we haven't arranged a time yet.*

We use **to be going to + Infinitive** to talk about our future plans or about things we expect to happen because of something we know or can see now.

e.g. *This is going to be a cheerful evening.*

*Oh, no. It's raining. We are going to get soaked!*

When we have already made the arrangements to do something, we use The Present Continuous Tense.

e.g. *She's texting me. She is meeting us in front of the university.*

The Future Simple is rendered into Ukrainian by the future perfective and imperfective:

e.g. *I'll read ten chapters tomorrow. Я прочитаю десять розділів завтра.*

*I'll read the whole day tomorrow. Я буду читати завтра цілий день.*

### The Future Simple in the Past

The **Future Simple in the Past** is formed by means of the auxiliary verbs **should** (less common) and **would** and the infinitive without particle **to** of the notional verb (**should** is used for the first person singular and plural and **would** is used for the second and the third person singular and plural).

The Future Simple in the Past denotes an action which was future from the point of view of the past (for detailed treatment see "The Sequence of Tenses"):

e.g. *I said I would be delighted to see her.*

### The Future Continuous

The **Future Continuous** is formed by means of the Future Simple of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb.

e.g. *He will be reading.*

In the **interrogative form** the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. *Will he be reading?*

In the **negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb:

e.g. *He will not (won't) be reading.*

### The Use of the Future Continuous

1. The future tense of the continuous aspect denotes a concrete action going on at a given future moment:

e.g. *Don't disappoint me, I will be expecting you.*

*If I am late, Mother will be getting uneasy.*

2. The future moment at which the action will be in its progress may be fixed:

a) by an adverb or an adverbial expression of definite time such as *then, at 7 o'clock, by this time, etc.:*

e.g. *By this time tomorrow we will be nearing home.*

*What will you be doing at 7 o'clock? – I'll be preparing my lessons.*

b) by another action, which fixes the future moment is in the present tense of the common aspect:

e.g. *I will be sleeping if you come so late.*

*He will be taking his lesson if you come at seven.*

Sometimes the continuous aspect is used in both the principal and the subordinate clauses to represent actions going on at the same moment.

e.g. *I'll be preparing my lessons while he is typing his report.*

3. The future tense of the continuous aspect may, depending on the context, express an action characteristic of the subject at the given period of time in the future (compare with a similar function of the present and past tense of the continuous aspect).

e.g. *I'll be very busy at the end of May. I'll be preparing for my examination then.*

Sometimes the future tense of the continuous aspect is used to express an action filling up a whole period of time, but only when the action is considered in its progress:

e.g. *I'll be packing all day tomorrow.*

*He will be working in his garden from 9 till 12, so it's no use trying to get him on the telephone. (Compare: He will work in his garden from 9 till 12 and then go for a walk.)*

### The Future Continuous in the Past

The **Future Continuous in the Past** is formed by means of the auxiliary verbs **should** (less common) and **would**, the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb (**should** is used for the first person singular and plural and **would** is used for the second and the third person singular and plural).

The Future Continuous in the Past denotes an action which was future from the point of view of the past (for detailed treatment see “The Sequence of Tenses”):

e.g. *He said he **would be working** at 6.*

### The Future Perfect

The **Future Perfect** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to have** in the Future Simple and the Participle II of the notional verb:

e.g. *I **will have written** the letter by that time.*

In the **interrogative form** the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. ***Will you have written** the letter by that time? **Will you have written** the letter by that time?*

In the **negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb:

e.g. *He **will not / won't have written** the letter by that time.*

### The Use of the Future Perfect

1. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed before a definite moment in the future.

e.g. *By six o'clock I **will have finished** my translation.*

*I suppose before then we **will have made up** our minds whom we are going to elect.*

2. The future moment from which the completed action is viewed may be indicated:

a) by means of such adverbial expression as: **by that time, by the first of June, by seven o'clock, soon**, etc.:

e.g. *By the end of the term we **will have learnt** many new words and expressions.*

*I **will soon have finished** with the books.*

b) by means of another action:

e.g. *If you come at seven, I **will have done** my work.*

*If you ring me up after 7 o'clock, I **will have spoken** to the secretary.*

3. The Future Perfect can denote an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment. It is used with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form, in negative sentences, with non-terminative verbs such as **to work, to live, to study, to teach**, etc.

e.g. *She **will have been** in your service 15 years next year.*

*He **will have been** here for two hours by the time you come back.*

However this use of the Future Perfect is exceptionally rare nowadays.

### The Future Perfect Continuous

The **Future Perfect Continuous** is formed by means of the Future Perfect of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb.

e.g. *He **will have been working**.*

In the **interrogative form** the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject:

e.g. ***Will he have been working?***

In the **negative form** the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb:

e.g. *He **will not have been working**.*

The Future Perfect Continuous denotes an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.

e.g. *We **will have been working** at this problem for a month when you visit us a second time.*

*They **will have been sleeping** for two hours when we return home.*

### The Future Perfect / Perfect Continuous in the Past

The **Future Perfect in the Past** is formed by means of the auxiliary verbs **should** (less common) and **would**, the auxiliary verb **to have** in the Future Simple and the Participle II of the notional verb. The **Future Perfect Continuous in the Past** is formed by means of the Future Perfect of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb.

*He said he **would have finished** his translation by six o'clock.*

*He said he **would have been working** at this problem for a month when you visited us a second time.*

The Future Perfect in the Past and the Future Perfect Continuous in the Past denote an action which was future from the point of view of the past (for detailed treatment see “The Sequence of Tenses”):

e.g. *He said he **would have finished** his work by 6.*

*He said he **would have been sleeping** for two hours when we returned home.*

## 6. VERBS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

The **Passive Voice** serves to show that the person or thing denoted by the subject of the sentence is not the agent (the doer) of the action expressed by the predicate verb but is the object of this action. The subject of a passive verb does not act but is acted upon, it undergoes the action.

e.g. *They buy their clothes in the sales.*  
object

*Their clothes are bought in the sales.*  
subject

The **Passive Voice** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required tense-aspect form and the past participle of the notional verb:

		Active	Passive
<b>Indefinite Tenses</b>	Present	<i>write / writes</i>	<i>am / is / are written</i>
	Past	<i>wrote</i>	<i>was / were written</i>
	Future	<i>will write</i>	<i>will be written</i>
	Future-in-the-past	<i>would write</i>	<i>would be written</i>
<b>Continuous Tenses</b>	Present	<i>am / is / are writing</i>	<i>am / is / are being written</i>
	Past	<i>was / were writing</i>	<i>was / were being written</i>
	Future	<i>will be writing</i>	–
	Future-in-the-past	<i>would be writing</i>	–
<b>Perfect Tenses</b>	Present	<i>have / has written</i>	<i>have / has been written</i>
	Past	<i>had written</i>	<i>had been written</i>
	Future	<i>will have written</i>	<i>will have been written</i>
	Future-in-the-past	<i>would have written</i>	<i>would have been written</i>
<b>Perfect Continuous Tenses</b>	Present	<i>have / has been writing</i>	–
	Past	<i>had been writing</i>	–
	Future	<i>will have been writing</i>	–
	Future-in-the-past	<i>would have been writing</i>	–

The **interrogative form** is built up by placing the (first) auxiliary verb before the subject of the sentence. The **negative form** is built up by placing the particle **not** after the (first) auxiliary verb.

e.g. *When was it done?*

*The work was not done yesterday.*

The **Passive Voice** lacks the **Future Continuous**, the **Future Continuous-in-the-Past** and all the **Perfect Continuous forms**. The use of tense-aspect forms in the Passive voice is not parallel to those of the Active voice. This can be accounted for by two reasons:

- 1) the lack of certain tense-forms in the Passive;
- 2) the lexical character of the verb, namely the differentiation between terminative and durative verbs.

### Reasons for using the passive

The passive is often used when we want to talk about an action rather than the person or thing that does the action. We do this when

- it doesn't matter who does the action:  
e.g. *Have the parcels been delivered?*
- we know or can guess who does the action:  
e.g. *Here's your skirt. It's been dry-cleaned. (obviously by the dry cleaner's)*
- we don't know, or we don't want to say who does the action:  
e.g. *My bicycle has been stolen! (I don't know who stole it.)*
- we want to talk about general feelings or beliefs:  
e.g. *The building is believed to date from the thirteenth century. (Most people believe this.)*
- we want to be polite or we are in a formal situation:  
e.g. *Have the reports been typed yet? (more polite than Have you typed the reports yet?)*

## The Peculiarities of Using the Passive Forms

The lexical character of the verb affects the meaning of all the Indefinite Passive tenses. **The Indefinite Passive forms** denote an action if there are special indications in the sentence or in a wider context. These indications are as follows:

a) the action expressed by the Passive form is part of a succession of actions:

e.g. *The door opened and the doctor **was shown in**.*

b) the Passive form denotes a recurrent action. In this case there are indications of frequency in the sentence. They may be expressed in various ways, mainly by adverbs of frequency or by the use of nouns in the plural:

e.g. *He **is invited** to all the best dances.*

c) the time of the action expressed by the Passive form is indicated in the sentence by adverbial modifiers of time (including clauses):

e.g. *The novel **was written** during the summer of 1918.*

d) the manner in which the action is performed (occasionally the purpose of the action) is indicated by means of an adverbial modifier:

e.g. *The front door **was slowly closed**.*

e) if the doer of the action is indicated in the sentence, the passive verb, in most cases, also serves to express an action. Thus in the following sentences the Passive form would be understood as expressing a state if the doer of the action were not mentioned:

e.g. *He **was disturbed** by a series of explosions.*

**Note:** Yet sometimes we find sentences in which the Passive form denotes a state even when the doer is indicated:

e.g. *The two houses **were connected** by a gallery.*

If none of the above mentioned indications are found in the sentence or in a wider context, the Indefinite Passive forms generally express (with terminative verbs) a state resulting from a previously accomplished action.

e.g. *We **'re defeated**. Let's go back to New York and start all over again.*

**Note: The Future Indefinite Passive** tends, on the whole, to denote an action (and not a state) even if there are no special indications such as those described above:

e.g. *You needn't worry. Every precaution **will be taken**.*

The use of **the Present** and **Past Continuous Passive** is parallel to the use of the corresponding Active forms.

e.g. *What sort of research **is being done**, and who **is doing** it?*

The use of **the Perfect Passive forms** is also parallel to the corresponding Active forms.

e.g. *She **has taught** at a school in the north of England at two schools in Germany, and **has been given** an excellent characteristics.*

**Note:** As has been mentioned before, **the Future Perfect** is not of frequent occurrence in the Active. In the Passive its use is quite uncommon.

The sentences *The work **is finished*** and *The work **has been finished*** are somewhat similar in meaning. Yet there is a difference between them: the former serves to express a state in the present which is the result of the previously accomplished action; the latter denotes the action proper which took place before the present moment.

In spoken and informal written English, **get** is sometimes used instead of **be** to form the passive. It can be done to describe actions, not states:

e.g. *We **got stuck** in the lift for an hour.*

If we want to say who or what does the action when using a passive verb, we use **by + noun**. We usually put this at the end of the clause or sentence:

e.g. *Did you buy this sweater or was it knitted **by your mother**?*

Verbs with no object (intransitive verbs, e.g. *arrive, come, grow up, happen, wait*) cannot be made passive:

e.g. *I was grown up in Edinburg. I **grew up** in Edinburg.*

**Born** is always passive: e.g. *I was **born** in 1990. Where **were** your parents **born**?*

## 7. DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

**Direct speech** is the exact words a speaker used. **Indirect (reported) speech** reports what a speaker said without using the exact words.

### The rules for indirect speech

1. The grammatical form in which the speaker's words are reported is a subordinate object clause (for statements and questions) or an infinitive (for orders and requests).

2. The most frequent verbs of saying are the verbs **to say** and **to tell** for reported statements, **to ask** for reported questions, **to tell** and **to ask** for reported orders and requests.

**Say** is used in direct speech. It is also used in reported speech when **say** is not followed by the person the words were spoken to.

e.g. *"She won't come," he said. – He said (that) she wouldn't come.*

**Tell** is used in reported speech when it is followed by the person the words were spoken to.

e.g. *"She won't come," he said to me. – He told me (that) she wouldn't come.*

**Ask** is used in reported questions and commands or in direct questions.

e.g. *He said to me, "Please leave." – He asked me to leave.*

We use **say + to-infinitive** but never **say about**. We use **tell smb, speak/talk about** instead.

e.g. *Ann said to call her at 12.00.*

*He told them/spoke/talked about the incident.*

3. The subordinate clauses are joined to their principal ones by means of conjunctions, conjunctive pronouns or adverbs, or *asyndetically*.

4. The word order in these clauses is always **direct**.

5. If the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense, demonstrative pronouns and adverbials expressing nearness are replaced by words expressing distance: **this – that, these – those; here – there, now – then, at that time; today – that day; tonight – that night; tomorrow – the following day, (the) next day; yesterday – the day before, the previous day; ago – before; a year ago – a year before; last week (month, year) – the previous week (month, year); last night – the previous night.**

6. If the reporting verb is in the past tense, the shifting of tenses takes place (according to the rules of sequence of tenses).

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
"She <b>works</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>worked</b> hard.
"She <b>is working</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>was working</b> hard.
"She <b>worked</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>had worked</b> hard.
"She <b>was working</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>had been working</b> hard.
"She <b>will work</b> hard," he said	He said (that) she <b>would work</b> hard.
"She <b>will be working</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>would be working</b> hard
"She <b>has worked</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>had worked</b> hard.
"She <b>has been working</b> hard," he said.	He said (that) she <b>had been working</b> hard.

**Note:** The **past simple** usually remains unchanged when a definite past moment is indicated, and it is unchanged after **since**.

e.g. *Irene said, "I was born in 1990. I have been teaching English in this school since I graduated from the University". – Irene said that she was born in 1990 and had been teaching English in that school since she graduated from the University.*

**Note:** The **past perfect** or the **past perfect continuous** remains unchanged.

e.g. *He said, "I had been working for two hours by that time." – He said that he had been working for two hours by that time.*

When sentences containing the **subjunctive mood** are converted into indirect speech the form of the verb usually remains unchanged.

e.g. *"Oh, I wish he came here," she said. – She said she wished he came there.*

The modal verb **must**, as a rule, remains unchanged in indirect speech if it expresses advice (order) or supposition bordering on assurance (напевно).

e.g. *She said to him, "You must be more polite." – She told him he must be more polite. (advice)*

**Must** is generally replaced by **had to** if it expresses necessity arising out of circumstances, and by **was to** if it expresses arrangement or a kind of order.

e.g. *She said, "I **must** get up early on Sunday."* – *She said she **had to** get up early on Sunday.*  
*She said, "I **must** meet her at 5 o'clock."* – *She said she **was to** meet her at 5 o'clock.*

### Indirect statements

Indirect statements are generally introduced by the verbs **to say, to tell, to announce** and in official style by the verb **to inform**. The object clause is joined to the principal clause by means of the conjunction **that** or **asyndetically**.

If the person is mentioned the verbs **to tell** and **to inform** are used. With the verbs **to say** and **to announce** the person addressed may or may not be mentioned. If it is mentioned, the preposition **to** is used.

e.g. *She **said**, "I'll be back soon."* – *She **said (informed)** she **would be back soon**.*

Other verbs may also be used to introduce statements. It depends on the character of the statement. Such verbs as **to promise, to remark, to remind, to assure, to admit, to deny**, etc. are frequently used.

e.g. *The student **said**, "This text is rather difficult."* – *The student **remarked** that that text was rather difficult.*

### Indirect questions

Indirect general questions are introduced by the conjunctions **if** or **whether**; special questions begin with the corresponding conjunctive adverb or pronoun. (It is treated as a conjunctive word). Indirect questions have no inversion: the predicate follows the subject.

e.g. *"**Where** shall we go?" **said** Mor.* – *Mor asked **where** they would go.*

*"**Must** you really work today?" **said** Nan.* – *Nan asked **if** she really **must** work **that day**.*

**Note:** If an indirect question to the subject contains the link verb **to be**, the direct word order is not always strictly observed.

e.g. *Mother asked, "Who is this girl?"* – *Mother asked who that girl was/who was that girl.*

### Indirect orders and requests

Orders or requests are usually introduced by the verbs **to tell, to ask, to beg, to order, to command**.

The verb **to request** also may be used in official style, mainly in the passive voice. It is best rendered into Ukrainian **запропонувати**.

Emphatic requests may be introduced by the verbs **to implore** (просити, благати, молити), **to beseech** (благати, молити), **to entreat** (благати), **to urge** (наполягати, настійно прохати). It is the case when the emphatic requests begin with the emphatic **do**.

The **Imperative Mood** of the direct speech is changed **into the infinitive**.

e.g. *Helen **said** to the doctor, "**Do** save my daughter!"* – *Helen **implored** (благала) the doctor to save her daughter.*

*The teacher **said**, "Stop talking, Jane!"* – *The teacher **ordered** Jane to stop talking.*

### Indirect offers, suggestions and advice

Indirect offers and suggestions are introduced by the verbs **to offer** and **to suggest**. There is a difference between these two verbs: the person who makes **an offer** intends to do the action himself, and the action is an act of kindness. **A suggestion** may also be an act of kindness, but not necessarily; the person who makes a suggestion may or may not intend to do the action himself.

Sentences expressing **advice** are converted into indirect speech by means of the verb **to advise**.

e.g. *Mother **said** to her child, "Shall I read you this book?"* *The child **said**, "Do please."* – *Mother **offered** to read her son that book and the child accepted her offer.*

*The doctor **said** to his patient, "You had better stay in bed for some days."* – *The doctor **advised** his patient to stay in bed for some days.*

### Indirect exclamations

When exclamations are converted into indirect speech, it is not so much the verb as the adverbial modifier which shows the character of the exclamation – whether it expresses joy, sorrow, surprise, etc.

e.g. *"I'm so glad I found you!" **cried** Felicity.* – *Felicity **cried joyfully** that she was so glad she had found him.*

*Marry **said** to her friend, "Thank you for your help."* – *Marry **thanked** her friend for her help.*

### Greetings and leave-takings in indirect speech

When converting greetings and leave-taking into indirect speech, we usually use such verbs as **to greet, to welcome, to wish, to bid**, etc.

e.g. *Helen **said** to her parents, "Good night."* – *Helen **wished** her parents good night.*

*The teacher **said** to his pupils, "How do you do?"* – *The teacher **greeted** his pupils.*

## 8. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The rules of the sequence of tenses are one of the peculiarities of English. In English the tense of the verb in a subordinate clause (mainly object clause) depends on that of the verb in the principle clause.

So, the sequence of tenses is a dependence of the tense form of the predicate of a subordinate clause on the tense form of its principal clause.

The rules of the sequence of tenses are observed in the following cases:

**I.** If the predicate verb of the principal clause is in one of the present tenses, any tense required by the sense can be used in the subordinate clause. In this case their meanings are as follows:

1. The Present Simple or the Present Continuous in the subordinate clause denotes an action simultaneous with that of the principal clause.

e.g. *He is writing an e-mail while his sister is reading a book.*

2. The Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Simple, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect in the subordinate clause denote an action prior to that of the principal clause.

e.g. *He reports he has just received that letter.*

**II.** If the predicate verb of the principal clause is in one of the future tenses, any tense required by the sense can be used in the subordinate clause:

1. The Present Simple or the Present Continuous in the subordinate clause denotes an action simultaneous with that of the principal clause.

e.g. *I'll explain to you how you are to behave.*

2. The Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Simple or the Past Perfect of the subordinate clause denote actions prior to that of the principal one.

e.g. *All London will know how you did it.*

3. The Future tenses denote actions that follow that of the principal clause.

e.g. *I'll tell you what I'll do.*

**III.** If the predicate verb of the principal clause is in one of the past tenses, the predicate verb of the subordinate clause may be **only in one of the past tenses**. In such cases the past tense forms denote the time of the action of the subordinate clause from the point of view of its simultaneousness, priority or posteriority with regard to the action of the principal clause:

1. The Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense in the subordinate clause denotes an action simultaneous with that of the principal clause.

e.g. *John noticed suddenly that I was not reading.*

2. The Past Perfect or the Past Perfect Continuous in the subordinate clause denotes an action prior to that of the principal clause.

e.g. *I wasn't sure that I had ever seen him before.*

3. The Future-in-the-Past tense in the subordinate clause denotes an action following that of the principal clause.

e.g. *He promised they would tell everything in a day.*

**IV.** In complex sentences containing more than two subordinate clauses the choice of the tense form for each of them depends on the tense form of the clause to which it is subordinated:

e.g. *As far as I can see he did not understand that all had been finished already.*

Besides the complex sentences described above the rules of the sequence of tenses are also found in all types of clauses and simple sentences reproducing speech:

e.g. *And through it all he was now a little afraid. Had he no courage at all?*

**V.** The rules of the sequence of tenses may not be observed in the following cases:

1. Where the subordinate clause describes a so-called general truth or something which the speaker thinks to be one.

e.g. *The teacher told us that the earth moves round the sun.*

2. Where the subordinate clause describes actions referring to the actual present, future or past time, which usually occurs in dialogues or in newspaper, radio or TV reports.

e.g. *"Before the fliers crashed, " the operator said "he told that there are still a few alive in these mountains."*

3. Where the predicate verb of the subordinate clause is one of the modal verbs having no past tense form.

e.g. *He couldn't understand why he should do it.*

In the attributive and adverbial clauses the use of tenses depends wholly on the sense to be conveyed.

e.g. *She only liked men who are good-looking.*



## 9. THE OBLIQUE MOOD

### 9.1. SUBJUNCTIVE I

In form **Subjunctive I** coincides with the plain **verb stem** for all persons in both the Singular and the Plural.

e.g.	<i>I be (have, know, be kept)</i>	<i>We be (have, know, be kept)</i>
	<i>You be (have, know, be kept)</i>	<i>They be (have, know, be kept).</i>
	<i>He be (have, know, be kept)</i>	<i>She be (have, know, be kept)</i>

**Subjunctive I** represents an action as problematic, hypothetical, but not contradicting reality. It's used to express order, request, purpose, suggestion, supposition, wish or hope. Of these surviving forms only *be* is distinct from the indicative forms and is therefore rather current. Other verbs are rarely used because there subjunctive forms coincide with the indicative except in the 3rd person singular. They are confined mainly to formal style, elevated prose, poetry, the language of official documents and formulaic expressions – prayers, wishes. Besides, it's used also with optative meaning in some set expressions, which should be memorized as wholes.

The main cases of the use of Subjunctive I are as follows:

a) in exclamations, very often involving supernatural powers (usually in prayers):

e.g. *God **bless** you!* – *Благослови Вас Бог!* (*God*) ***save** the king!* – *Боже, бережи короля!*

*God (Heaven) **forbid**!* – *Не дай Боже! Боронь Боже!*

*(God) Heaven **help** us!* – *Нехай допоможе нам Бог!*

b) in some set expressions:

e.g. ***Be** it so! So **be** it!* – *Нехай буде так!*

*Far **be** it from me (to do something)* – *У мене і в думках не було...*

***Suffice** it to say that ...* – *Досить сказати, що ...*

c) in slogans:

e.g. *Long **live** our freedom!* – *Нехай живе свобода!*

*Long **live** heroes!* – *Слава героям!*

*Long **live** Ukraine!* – *Слава Україні!*

d) in oaths, imprecations, curses:

e.g. *The devil **take** him!* – *Прокляття! Хай його чорт візьме!*

*Manners **be** hanged!* – *До біса манери!*

***Confound** him!* – *До біса! Хай його чорт візьме!*

***Curse** this fog!* – *Чорт би побрав цей туман!*

**Note 1:** To express wish *may* + **Infinitive** is used:

e.g. ***May** success **attend** you!* – *Нехай тобі щастить!*

***May** yours **be** a happy marriage!* – *Нехай ваш шлюб буде щасливим!*

**Note 2:** To express concession parenthetical phrases with *may* and *let* can also be used:

e.g. ***Happen** what **may**.* – *Що буде, те й буде.*

***Let** it **be** so.* – *Нехай буде так.*

**Note 3:** **Subjunctive I** can also be used parallelly with the Suppositional Mood (see the chapter dealing with the Suppositional Mood).

e.g. *He required that all **be kept** secret.*

### 9.2. SUBJUNCTIVE II

**Subjunctive II** has two tense-forms: Present Subjunctive II and Past Subjunctive II.

**Present Subjunctive II** coincides in form with the **Past Simple Indicative** or the **Past Continuous Indicative**. The only exception is the verb **to be**, which has the form **were** for all persons. These forms are used to denote an unreal or hypothetical action referring to the present or future.

e.g. *If I **knew** his address!* *If I **were** there now!* *If it **didn't** rain tomorrow!*

**Past Subjunctive II** coincides in form with the **Past Perfect Indicative** or **Past Perfect Continuous Indicative**. These forms are used to denote unreal or hypothetical actions referring to the past.

e.g. *If I **had known** it before!* *If I **had been given** this chance then!*

#### The Use of Subjunctive II

##### Simple sentences

**Present Subjunctive II** is used in exclamatory sentences to express an unreal wish and **Past Subjunctive II** – to express the regret. In English such sentences usually begin with “*Oh, if only...*”, “*Oh, if...*”, “*Oh, that...*”. They are rendered into Ukrainian as “*Ох, якби...*”, “*Хоч би / хоча б...*”

(Oh), if only Oh, if Oh, that	smb it	were (were not) did (didn't do) smth were (weren't) doing smth were (were not) done could do/ could be done
		had (hadn't) done smth had (hadn't) been done could have done / could have been done

e.g. *If only I **were** there now! (I am sorry, I am not there now.)*  
*If he **hadn't been** late then. If only I **had been given** this chance last year!*

**Subjunctive II** is used to express **advice or admonition**.

To express some advice or admonition forms with **had better, had best** are used. Very often contracted forms (**d'better, d'best**) are used. Here some advisability of the action is expressed. It's implied that something may happen if somebody doesn't follow this advice. The action refers to the present or future. The Infinitive is used without particle **to**.

Smb	had better had best	do smth not do smth
-----	------------------------	------------------------

e.g. *You'd **better** go there immediately. You'd **best not** stay indoors but go for a walk.*

**Subjunctive II** is used to express **preference or wish**.

To express somebody's preference or wish set phrases **had rather, would rather, would sooner** are used. They lend the sentence a milder and more polite shade of meaning. Very often contracted forms (**'d rather, 'd sooner**) are used. The Perfect Infinitive is used to denote an unrealized action, unrealized wish. In negative responses the Infinitive can be omitted.

Smb	had rather would rather would sooner	do smth (not do smth) have done smth not have done smth
-----	--	---

e.g. *I'd **sooner** go nowhere but stay at home.*  
*I'm sure she **had rather** have stayed at home then (but she didn't stay).*  
*"Are you going to stay here?" – "I'd **rather not**."*

**Note 1:** Preference in the past is expressed by the verb **to prefer + the Gerund**.

e.g. *I **would** rather **read** than **watch** TV.* (preference in the present)

But: *I **preferred** **reading** to **watching** TV.* (preference in the past)

**Note 2:** Instead of the Infinitive the phrase may be followed by an object clause in which Present Subjunctive or Past Subjunctive II is used (it depends upon the time reference).

e.g. *I'd rather you **were** present at this meeting.* – Я б хотіла, щоб ти був присутнім на цьому зібранні.

*I'd rather you **spent** the week-end with us.* – Я б хотіла, щоб ви провели вихідні з нами.

*I'd rather you **didn't** ask so many questions.* – Я б воліла, щоб ви не ставили так багато запитань.

*I'd rather you **had not** invited him but nothing can be done now.* – Я б хотіла, щоб ви не запрошували його, але зараз уже нічого не поробиш.

*I'd rather she **were not** invited.* – Я б хотіла, що її не запрошували.

**Note 3:** In formal English the pattern "**Rather than + the Infinitive ... smb would + the Infinitive**" is possible:

e.g. ***Rather than** go to prison I **would** pay the fine.* – Я б охочіше заплатив штраф замість того, щоб потрапити у в'язницю.

**Subjunctive II** is used to express **possibility, advisability, desirability, intention** (with modal verbs). If the action refers to the present or future the modal verb is followed by the Simple Infinitive, but if the action refers to the past the Perfect Infinitive should be used.

Smb / smth	could / might / would	do smth be done have done smth have been done
------------	-----------------------	--

e.g. *Could you speak with him? He could be invited too.*  
*I would not answer such a question. You might have broken the vase.*

### Complex sentences

**Present Subjunctive II** is used in **Subject clauses** after the principal clause of the type “*It’s (high) time...*” – “*Пора... (Давно пора...)*”. In the principal clause the structure may be affirmative, interrogative, negative or negative-interrogative.

It’s (high) time It’s not time Is it time / Isn’t it time	smb smth	did smth were doing smth were done
---	-------------	--

e.g. *It’s time you knew such things. It’s not time yet they returned.*

**Note:** The same idea can be rendered by the Infinitive construction:

e.g. *It’s high time you returned these books to the library = It’s high time for you to return these books to the library. Тобі давно пора повернути ці книги в бібліотеку.*

However, there is a slight difference between these constructions: in the first case we simply state that the time has come, while in the second case we criticize somebody for not doing something, we imply that it is a little late to perform this action.

**Subjunctive II** is used in **Predicative clauses** after the comparative conjunctions *as if, as though* (неначе). The peculiarity of complex sentences with a predicative clause is that in the principal clause we find a **link verb** (*to be, to look, to seem, to feel, to taste, to smell, etc.*) which together with the predicative clause forms a **compound nominal predicate**. If the action in the subordinate clause is simultaneous with the action in the principal clause, in the subordinate clause **Present Subjunctive II** is used. If the action is prior to that in the principal clause, **Past Subjunctive II** is used.

It Smb	is/was/will be looks/looked/will look seems/seemed/will seem feels/felt/will feel	as if, as though	smb did smth smb were doing smth smb had done smth smb had been doing smth smb/smth were done smb/smth had been done smb/smth were being done
-----------	--	---------------------	---

e.g. *It is as if she knew something. It looked as if the house had been deserted for years.*

**Note:** To refer the action to the future the phrase *to be going + the Infinitive* is used.

e.g. *It looks as if the winter were going to be snowy. It looks as if they were not going to stay to have dinner with us.*

**Subjunctive II** is used in **Object clauses** after the verb *to wish*. If the action expressed in the object clause is simultaneous with that of the principal clause **Present Subjunctive II** is used. If the action expressed in the object clause is prior to that of the principal clause **Past Subjunctive II** is used. The verb *to wish* can be used in the affirmative, interrogative, negative, negative-interrogative forms which may be rendered into Ukrainian in two ways: a) *Добре було б, якби..., б) Шкода, що...*

Smb wishes/wished/will wish	smb did (didn't do) smth
Does smb wish?	smb were (were not) doing smth
Did smb wish?	smb had (hadn't) done smth
Doesn't smb wish?	smb had (hadn't) been doing smth
Didn't smb wish?	smb could/might do smth
I don't wish	smb could/might have done smth
I didn't wish	smth were (were not) done
I do/did wish	smth had (hadn't) been done

e.g. *I wish I **knew** German.* – а) *Добре було б, якби я знав німецьку мову.*

б) *Шкода, що я не знаю німецьку мову.*

*You will wish you **had gone** with us.* – *Ти пошкодуєш, що не пішов з нами.*

*I don't wish I **hadn't come**.* – *Я не шкодую, що прийшов.*

*I do wish I **had joined** you.* – *Я так шкодую, що не приєднався до вас.*

**Note:** If the desired action refers to the future and the subject of the subordinate clause and that of the principal clause do not denote the same thing or person one can use the form **would + the Infinitive**. In such cases the fulfilment of the wish usually depends on the will of the person denoted by the subject of the subordinate clause, so it denotes a kind of request.

e.g. *I wish you **wouldn't speak** so loudly.* – *Добре було б, якби ви не говорили так голосно.*

*I wish he **would stay** to dinner.* – *Добре було б, якби він залишився на обід.*

If the fulfilment of the wish depends more on the circumstances the forms **might + the Infinitive, could + the Infinitive** are used. In these cases the realization of the action is very unlikely.

e.g. *I wish he **might be** here.* – *Добре було б, якби він зміг бути тут.*

*I wish he **could understand** me.* – *Шкода, що він не може зрозуміти мене.*

**Subjunctive II** is used in **Adverbial clauses of Comparison and Manner** to express unreality, improbability or doubt. Such clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **as if, as though**. If the action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous with that in the principal clause, **Present Subjunctive II** is used. If the action in the comparative clause is prior to that in the principal clause, **Past Subjunctive II** is used. If the action of the subordinate clause follows the action of the principal clause, **would + the Infinitive** is used.

Smb	does did will do is doing was doing	as if, as though	smb did smth (didn't do smth) smb were (were not) doing smth smb had (hadn't) done smth smb had (hadn't) been doing smth smb/smth were (were not) done smb could (couldn't) do smth smb could (couldn't) have done smth smb/smth could (couldn't) be done smb/smth could (couldn't) have done smb/smth could (couldn't) have been done
-----	---	---------------------	---

e.g. *He behaves as if he **knew** something.* – *Він поводить себе так, нібито він щось знає.*

*He behaves as if nothing **had happened**.* – *Він поводить себе так, нібито нічого не трапилося.*

*I'll behave as if nothing **had happened**.* – *Я вестиму себе так, нібито нічого не трапилося.*

*He was singing gaily as if his heart **would just break** for joy.* – *Він весело наспівував, ніби його серце ось-ось розірветься від радості.*

### 9.3. THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

**The Conditional Mood** has two tenses: **the Present Conditional** and **the Past Conditional**.

In formation **the Present Conditional** coincides with **the Future Simple in the Past** of the Indicative Mood (common aspect) or **the Future Continuous in the Past** of the Indicative Mood (continuous aspect). **The Past Conditional** coincides with **the Future Perfect in the Past** of the Indicative Mood (common aspect) or **the Future Perfect Continuous in the Past** of the Indicative Mood (continuous aspect).

**The Present Conditional** is used to express an action referring to the present or future while **the Past Conditional** is used with reference to the past:

e.g. *He **would refuse**, I'm sure.* – *Він відмовився б, я впевнений.*

*But for your brother we **would have been sitting and waiting** for a car.* – *Якби не ваш брат, ми все ще сиділи б і чекали б на автомобіль.*

## The Use of the Conditional Mood Simple Sentences

**The Conditional Mood** is used in simple sentences **with implied condition**. The tense-form depends upon the time-reference: if the action refers to the present or future, **the Present Conditional** is used, and if the action refers to the past moment, **the Past Conditional** is used.

I, we, you, he, she, it, they	would (wouldn't) do smth would (wouldn't) have done smth
----------------------------------	---

*e.g. I wouldn't change anything. – Я нічого не змінював би.  
I wouldn't have come yesterday. – Я б не приходила вчора.  
He wouldn't answer such a question. – Він не відповів би на таке запитання.*

**The Conditional Mood** is used in simple sentences of **implied condition** expressed by an adverbial modifier of condition introduced by **but for, except for** (якби не, якщо не зважати на). They imply unreal condition with an opposite meaning. In this case both tenses can occur, everything depends on the time reference: if the action refers to the present or future moment **the Present Conditional** is used, but if the action refers to the past moment **the Past Conditional** is used.

But for smb/smith Except for smb/smith	smb would do smth smb wouldn't do smth smb would be doing smth smb wouldn't be doing smth smb would have done smth smb wouldn't have done smth smb would have been doing smth
---	---

*e.g. But for the rain I would go for a walk. – Якби не дощ, я б прогулявся.  
But for her illness she would have gone with you then. – Якби не її хвороба, вона тоді пішла б із вами.  
Except for the weather the picnic would have been a success. – Якщо не зважати на погоду, пікнік вдався б.*

## Complex Sentences

### Type I. Conditional sentences of real condition

Conditional sentences of real condition express future plans. The action of the if-clause is quite probable and the future outcome expressed in the principal clause is quite certain. In the if-clause **the Present Simple** and in the principal clause **the Future Simple** is used.

*e.g. If you finish your dinner, I'll buy you ice-cream. – Якщо ти доїсиш обід, я куплю тобі морозиво.  
If your wife doesn't like this purchase, I'll be happy to exchange it. – Якщо вашій дружині не сподобається покупка, я з охотою поміняю її на іншу.*

If instructions depending on a certain condition are given the Imperative Mood can be used.

*e.g. If you come across such a dictionary, buy one copy for me, please. – Якщо вам трапиться такий словник, купіть мені один примірник, будь ласка.*

If the action is not sufficiently certain, modals **may** or **can** are used in the principal clause to express possibility or permission.

*e.g. If you finish your dinner I may buy you ice-cream. (possibility is expressed) – Якщо ти доїсиш, я, можливо, куплю тобі морозиво.*

In the sentences which express completeness or result of the action in the if-clause **the Present Perfect** is used, and in the principal clause **the Future Simple** is used.

*e.g. If you have finished your dinner I'll give you ice-cream. – Я дам тобі морозиво, якщо ти доїсиш свій обід.*

## Type II. Conditional sentences of unreal condition referring to the present or future

The **Present Subjunctive II** is used in the subordinate clause and the **Present Conditional** in the principal clause.

If smb did (didn't do) smth If smb were (weren't) doing smth If smb could/might do smth If smb/smith were (weren't) done If smb/smith could/might be done	smb would do smth smb wouldn't do smth smb would be doing smth smb wouldn't be doing smth
---	--

e.g. *If you **thought** ill of me I **would be** sorry.* – Мені було б прикро, якби ти погано подумав про мене.  
*If he **were not working** now we **would take** him with us.* – Якби він не працював зараз, ми взяли б його із собою.

*If I **had** time I **would go** with you.* – Якби я мав час, я пішов би з тобою.

*If I **were** you I **would go** there.* (I advise you to go there.) – Якби я був на твоєму місці, я пішов би туди.

Modal verbs express different shades of modality:

e.g. *If I **knew** French I **could help** you to translate this text.* (ability) – Якби я знав англійську, я допоміг би тобі.

## Type III. Conditional sentences of unreal condition referring to the past

In the subordinate clause the **Past Subjunctive II** is used and in the principal clause the **Past Conditional** is used. Modal verbs are often used to express different modal meanings: ability possibility, permission.

If smb had (hadn't) done smth If smb had (hadn't) been doing smth If smb could/might have done smth If smb couldn't/mightn't have done smth If smb/smith had (hadn't) been done If smb/smith could/might have been done If smb/smith couldn't/mightn't have been done	smb would have done smth smb wouldn't have done smth smb would have been doing smth smth wouldn't have been done
---	---

e.g. *If you **hadn't been** late you **would have heard** much interesting.* – Якби ти не запізнився, ти почув би багато цікавого.

**Subjunctive II** is used in **adverbial clauses of concession** introduced by conjunctions *even if, even though*. In the principal clause the **Conditional Mood** is used.

Even if smb did smth Even if smb didn't do smth Even if smb had done smth Even if smb hadn't done smth	smb would do smth smb wouldn't do smth smb would have done smth smb wouldn't have done smth
---	--

e.g. *Even if it **were not** cold I **wouldn't join** you.* – Навіть якби не було так холодно, я не приєднався б до вас.

*Even if it **hadn't been** cold yesterday we **wouldn't have gone** to the forest.* – Навіть якби вчора не було так холодно, ми не пішли б до лісу.

Besides, there are also **mixed tense** sequences in conditional sentences.

The unreal condition may refer to the past and the consequence – to the present or future.

e.g. *If you **had taken** this medicine yesterday you **wouldn't be coughing** now.* – Якби ти прийняла ці ліки вчора, то не кашляла б зараз.

The condition may refer to the present and future or to no particular time, and the consequence may refer to the past.

e.g. *If I **knew** French I **would have spoken** with a Frenchman yesterday.* – Якби я знала французьку, то поговорила б із французом учора.

Since the majority of conditional clauses are introduced by the conjunction *if*, they are often called **if-clauses**. Other conjunctions used to introduce conditional clauses are: *unless, in case, supposing (that), providing (that), on condition (that), suppose (that), provided (that)*.

## 9.4. THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

The **Suppositional Mood** has two tense-forms: the **Present Suppositional** and the **Past Suppositional**.

The **Present Suppositional** is formed with the help of the auxiliary verb **should** for all persons + the **Simple Infinitive** or the **Continuous Infinitive**. It refers the action to the present or future.

The **Past Suppositional** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **should** for all persons + **Perfect Infinitive** or **Perfect Continuous Infinitive**. These forms are used with reference to the past:

e.g. *It's demanded that everybody **should be present**.* – Вимагається, щоб усі були присутні.

*I fear lest he **should be sleeping now**.* – Боюся, хоча б він не спав зараз.

These are the main cases of its usage.

1. The **Suppositional Mood** is used in **Object clauses** after the verbs and expressions of order, suggestion, request and decision such as: *to advise, to arrange, to decide, to demand, to insist, to move, to order, to prefer, to recommend, to request, to require, to suggest, to urge, to be anxious, to be determined, to give orders, to give instructions, to make up one's mind, to take care.*

The action of the subordinate clause follows the action of the principal clause. Therefore, only the **Present Suppositional** can occur in such cases. In other words, **should** is never combined with the Perfect Infinitive.

Object clauses after expressions of order and suggestion are generally introduced by the conjunction *that*; asyndetic connection is less frequent.

The rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed in object clauses of this type.

Smb	suggests/recommends	that	smb should do smth
	insists/demands/orders/requires/requests, etc. suggested/recommended/arranged/required/requested, etc.		smth should be done

e.g. *The doctor recommends/recommended that I **should go** to the south.* – Лікар рекомендує/рекомендував, щоб я поїхав на південь.

*He gave instructions that everything possible **should be done**.* – Він дав розпорядження, щоб усе можливе було зроблене.

The **Suppositional Mood** is used in **Subject clauses** introduced by the anticipatory **it**. These are sentences of the type:

e.g. *It's necessary that you **should come** as well.* – Необхідно, щоб ви також прийшли.

Subject clauses follow the principal clause, which is impersonal. The predicate of the principal clause expresses some kind of modality, estimate, or some motive for performing the action denoted by the predicate in the subordinate clause.

If some modality is expressed (necessity or recommendation) the predicative in the principal clause is expressed by adjectives *necessary, important, vital, imperative, essential, urgent, advisable, desirable* or by past participles of the verbs expressing suggestion, order, decision or request, such as *suggested, required, demanded, requested, recommended, decided, agreed, determined, arranged, etc.* In all these cases the action of the subordinate clause follows the action of the principal clause, therefore **should** is never combined with the Perfect Infinitive.

If some estimate is expressed the predicative in the principal clause may be expressed by adjectives *absurd, cruel, doubtful, funny, monstrous, natural, odd, sad, strange, terrible, wonderful*, or by Present Participles *surprising, disappointing, astonishing*. In these cases both tense forms are possible (it depends upon the time-reference).

It	is	necessary/important/urgent/essential/advisable/desirable/ suggested/required/demanded/ requested/recommended/agreed, etc.	that smb should do smth that smth should be done
	was will be	absurd/funny/natural/odd/strange surprising/disappointing/astonishing/puzzling	that smb should have done smth that smth should have been done

e.g. *It is necessary that you **should come** to this meeting.* – Необхідно, щоб ви прийшли на ці збори.

*It's surprising that the news **should have effected** her so much.* – Дивно, що новина так вразила її.

**Note 1:** With the expressions *it is possible, it is probable, it is likely* the Indicative Mood or a modal phrase is used after affirmative constructions, but after negative or interrogative constructions the Suppositional Mood is used, e.g. *It is possible that he **may come** tomorrow (he **will come**).*

But: *It's impossible/unlikely that he **should come**.*

*Is it possible that they **should have behaved** like that?*

**Note 2:** Parallely with the Suppositional Mood, Subjunctive I may be used, mostly in American English.

e.g. *It's required that all **be** ready by 6.*

**The Suppositional Mood** is used in **Object clauses** after expressions of fear, apprehension, worry (*to fear, to be afraid, to be terrified, to be fearful, to be in terror, to be frightened, to be nervous, to be anxious, to worry, to be troubled, to tremble, to dread, to have apprehension*). After these verbs and expressions we can find both the Indicative Mood and the Suppositional Mood.

In the Indicative Mood conjunction *that* is used after which the verb in the Indicative Mood or a modal phrase *may/might + the Infinitive* or *can/could + the Infinitive* occur. The rules of the sequence of tenses should be observed here.

Smb	fears is afraid is nervous worries is troubled ----- feared was afraid worried	that	smb smb	does/did smth will do smth have done smth can/may do smth can/may be done ----- had done smth could/might do smth would do smth could/might be done
-----	--	------	------------	--

e.g. *I am afraid that nothing **has been done** yet.* – Боюся, що ще нічого не зроблено.

*He was afraid that he **could be** late.* – Він боявся, що може запізнитися.

*I am afraid you **may miss** your chance.* – Боюся, що ти прогавиш свій шанс.

*I feared that he **wouldn't come**.* – Я боявся, що він не прийде.

*I feared that he **might be** late.* – Я боялася, що він може запізнитися.

In the Suppositional Mood the subordinate clause is introduced by the conjunction *lest* (*щоб не, хоча б не*). As the conjunction *lest* is negative in its meaning, the auxiliary verb *should* is used in the affirmative.

Smb	fears/ worries/is afraid feared/ worried/was afraid	lest	smb smth	should do smth should be done
-----	--	------	-------------	----------------------------------

e.g. *I feared lest I **should be** late.* – Я боялася, хоча б не запізнитися.

*He was afraid lest it **should rain**.* – Він боявся, щоб дощ не пішов.

Rarely Subjunctive I is possible, i.e. it's possible to say:

e.g. *I feared lest I **be** late.*      *He was afraid lest it **rain**.*

Subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunction *lest* with the verb in the Suppositional Mood are used in a literary style.

**The Suppositional Mood** is used in **Adverbial clauses of Purpose** introduced by the conjunction *lest*.

In clauses of purpose the form of the verb depends on the conjunction introducing the clause.

After the conjunctions *that, so that, in order that* the predicate is usually expressed by modal phrases *may/can + the Infinitive* and the rules of the sequence of tenses are to be observed. If the verb in the subordinate clause is in the negative form *should + the Infinitive* is preferred.

These structures can also be followed by a present tense with a future meaning.

In past contexts, *should* or *could* are normally used. **The Conditional** (*would*) is also possible, and *might* is occasionally used in a literary style, especially in American English.

The infinitive may be sometimes (though not often) preceded by *in order* or *so as* (*so as* is more often used to introduce a negative infinitive).

Smb	does will do did	that so that in order that	smb may/can do smth smb does/doesn't do smth smb would do smth smb might/could do smth
-----	------------------------	----------------------------------	---

e.g. *I tell you this so that you **may understand** the situation.* – Я кажу вам це, щоб ви могли зрозуміти ситуацію.

*I took my golf clubs so that I **could play** at the weekend.* – Я взяв з собою бити, щоб пограти в гольф у вихідні.

*We called them in order that they **would not worry**.* – Ми зателефонували їм, щоб вони не хвилювалися.



The negative purpose is expressed by *for fear that* or by the conjunction *lest* (rather archaic and very formal now). In this case **the Suppositional Mood** is used. As the conjunction is negative in meaning, the verb is used in the affirmative form.

Smb	does smth did smth will do smth	lest for fear that	smb should do smth
-----	---------------------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------

e.g. *She closed the window lest the children should catch cold.* – Вона зачинила вікно, щоб діти не застудилися.

*She buried her face in her hands lest we should notice her tears.* – Вона закрила обличчя руками, щоб ми не помітили її сліз.

*I will remind you lest you should forget.* – Я нагадаю вам, щоб ви не забули.

**The Suppositional Mood** is used in **Adverbial clauses of Concession** introduced by the conjunctions *though, although, however, whatever, whenever, whichever, wherever, no matter how, no matter when*.

In concessive clauses introduced by these conjunctions **the Suppositional Mood** is used with reference to the future. It represents the action as imaginary. The focus of the concessive meaning usually falls on the nominal or adverbial part of the clause.

Instead of the Suppositional Mood, *may/might + the Infinitive* (a modal phrase) is used when the concession is uncertain and refers to the present or future.

**The Indicative Mood** can also be used in subordinate clauses of concession when the concession is not regarded to be problematic or contrary to fact. And this tendency seems to be increasing steadily nowadays.

Though Although However Whatever Whoever Whichever Whenever Wherever No matter how No matter when	smb should do  smb may/ might do	smb does/doesn't do smth smb did/didn't do smth smb will/won't do smth smb can/can't do smth smb could/couldn't do smth smb must/mustn't do smth do smth! don't do smth!
--	---	---

e.g. *Though he should make every effort, he cannot succeed.* – Хоч як би він не старався, у нього нічого не вийде.

*No matter how he might try, he couldn't do it.* – Як би він не намагався, він не зумів би зробити це.

*Whoever he should be, he has no right to behave like that.* – Хто б він не був, він не має права поводити себе таким чином.

**Note:** Parallely with the Suppositional Mood, Subjunctive I can also be used.

e.g. *Though he make every effort, he cannot succeed.*

*However hard it rain, we shall have to go.*                      *Whatever he say, don't believe him.*

**The Suppositional Mood** is used in **Conditional clauses of Problematic Condition**. In these sentences the action of the conditional clause is presented as possible, but very unlikely. The reference is made to the future. They may be rendered into Ukrainian as “Якщо випадково...”, “На випадок, якщо...”. The Present Suppositional is used in the subordinate clause and the Future Simple Indicative or the Imperative Mood in the principal clause.

Conditional clauses of this type are sometimes joined to the principal clause asyndetically, by means of inversion.

If smb should do smth Should smb do smth	smb shall/will do smth do/don't do smth!
---	---

e.g. *If I should meet her tomorrow, I shall speak to her.* – Якщо я випадково зустріну її завтра, я поговорю з нею.

*Should you meet her tomorrow, speak to her, please.* – Якщо ти випадково зустрінеш її завтра, поговори з нею, будь ласка.

*Should I be late, don't wait for me.* – Якщо трапиться так, що я запізнюся, не чекайте на мене.

## 10. MODAL VERBS

We find the following modal verbs in English: **can, may, must, ought, shall, should, will, would, need** and **dare**. Besides, the verbs **to have** and **to be** in some of their uses are also classed among modal verbs.

Unlike other verbs, modal verbs do not denote actions or states, they show the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the infinitive in combination with which they form compound modal predicates. Thus **modal verbs show that the action indicated by the infinitive is considered to be possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, unnecessary, advisable, doubtful, certain, uncertain**, etc.

**Modal verbs** are called **defective** or **anomalous** as they lack some features characteristic of other verbs, that is:

- 1) they don't take the ending **-s** in the third person singular;
- 2) they have no verbals, so they have no analytical forms;
- 3) they are followed by a bare infinitive (except for **ought**);
- 4) they need no auxiliary verbs to build up the interrogative and negative forms (except for **to have**).

Most of the modal verbs have more than one meaning. Each of their meanings is characterized by a specific usage:

- 1) some of the meanings may be found in all kinds of sentences; others occur only in affirmative or interrogative or negative sentences;
- 2) different meanings may be associated with different forms of the Infinitive Simple and Perfect (both in the Active and Passive forms), Continuous and Perfect Continuous;
- 3) if the modal verbs have more than one form (**can – could, may – might, will – would**, also the verbs **to have** and **to be** used in modal meanings), their different meanings are not necessarily found in all those forms.

All modal verbs have two negative forms, full and contracted:

can – cannot / can't;	may – may not / mayn't;
must – must not / mustn't;	should – should not / shouldn't;
will – will not / won't;	would – would not / wouldn't;
need – need not / needn't.	

**Note:** Mind the peculiarities of the spelling and pronunciation of some negative forms:

can't [ka: nt], shan't [ʃa:nt], won't [wəʊnt].

Modal verbs have their **periphrastic phrases** – modal counterparts, ending in **to**, which function semantically much like true modals:

### Periphrastic phrases of Modal Verbs

Modal verb	Periphrastic modal
can	be able to
will	be going to, be about to
must	have to, have got to, be to
should, ought to	be to, be supposed to
may	be allowed to, be permitted to
would (= past habit)	used to

### The Modal Verb CAN

The modal verb **can** has two forms – **can** (for the Present tense) and **could** (for the Past tense and for the Subjunctive Mood).

e.g. *I can skate now, but I could not when I was five.* – Я вмію їздити на ковзанах, але я не вміла, коли мені було п'ять.

The modal verb **can** has the following meanings:

1. **Physical or mental ability or capability.** In this meaning it occurs in all kinds of sentences and is followed by the Simple Infinitive:

e.g. *I can read French, but I can't write it.* – Я вмію читати французькою, але я не вмію писати цією мовою.

*I can't swim.* Я не вмію плавати.

The form **could** is used in past-time contexts. In this case it is followed by the Simple Infinitive too.

e.g. *When I was young, I could run fast.* – Коли я був молодим, я умів бігати швидко.

*Could you read before schooling?* – Ти умів читати до школи?

The form **could** is also used in the Subjunctive Mood to express unreality. If the action refers to the present or future **could** is followed by the non-perfect Infinitive.

e.g. *You could be more attentive.* – Ти міг би бути уважнішим.

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive **could** indicates that the action was not carried out in the past.

e.g. *You could have met her at the station.* – Ти міг би зустріти її на станції.

**Be able to** is possible instead of **can**, but **can** is more usual.

e.g. *Can you speak any foreign language?* – Ти розмовляєш якою-небудь іноземною мовою?

**Are you able to speak** any foreign language? *Ти вмієш розмовляти якою-небудь іноземною мовою?*

As **can** has only two forms (**can** and **could**) so sometimes (in Future and Perfect tenses, for instance) the periphrastic phrase **to be able to** is used.

e.g. *I won't be able to come tomorrow.* – Я не зможу прийти завтра.

*I haven't been able to sleep recently.* – Я не можу спати останнім часом.

*Tom might not be able to come tomorrow.* – Том, мабуть, не зможе прийти завтра. (**Can** has no Infinitive)

Mind, please, that we use **could** (but not **was/were able to**) with the verbs of sense perception and mental activity (**to see, to hear, to smell, to taste, to feel, to remember, to understand**).

e.g. *I could feel her hand trembling.* – Я зміг відчувати, як затремтіла її рука.

But if you mean that someone managed to do something in one particular situation, you have to use **was/were able to** (but not **could**).

e.g. *Jack was an excellent tennis player. He could beat anybody* (= He had the ability to beat anybody).

*Once Jack had a difficult game against Alf. Alf played very well but in the end Jack was able to beat him* (= He managed to beat him in this particular game).

## 2. Possibility.

### a) Possibility due to circumstances.

In this meaning **can** (with reference to the present or future) and **could** (in past-time contexts) occur in all kinds of sentences and are followed by the Simple Infinitive.

e.g. *Anybody can make a mistake.* – Кожен може помилитися.

*I am sorry I couldn't come yesterday, I was ill.* – Мені шкода, але я не міг учора прийти: я був хворий.

To say that something was a possibility but didn't happen we use **could have (done)**.

e.g. *He was lucky when he fell off the ladder. He could have hurt himself.* – Йому пощастило вчора, коли він упав з драбини. Він міг би забитися.

### b) Possibility due to the existing laws.

e.g. *One can use either the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous in this sentence.* – У цьому реченні можна вживати і теперішній доконаний, і теперішній доконано-тривалий.

3. **Permission.** In this meaning **can** is used in affirmative sentences and is combined with the Simple Infinitive.

e.g. *Girls can marry at the age of 16.* Дівчата можуть виходити заміж у 16 років.

The form **could** occurs in the reported speech, i.e. in accordance with the rules of the sequence of tenses.

e.g. *The mother said that children could go for a walk.* – Мама сказала, що діти можуть піти погуляти.

**Note:** In Modern English **can** is more common than **may (might)** to express the idea of permission.

4. **Prohibition.** In this meaning **can** is used only in negative sentences and corresponds to the Ukrainian “не дозволяється”: e.g., *One cannot cross the street here.* – Тут не дозволяється переходити вулицю.

5. **Request.** In this meaning **can** and **could** followed by the Simple Infinitive are used in interrogative sentences (**could** suggests a greater degree of politeness). One should distinguish polite requests with “I” as the subject and polite request with “you” as the subject.

e.g. *Can I borrow your pen?* (the speaker is talking to someone she/he knows fairly well)

*Could I borrow your pen?* (a more polite request)

6. **Surprise, uncertainty.** In this meaning **can/could** is found only in interrogative sentences (in general questions). It corresponds to the Ukrainian “невже”. Depending on the time reference **can** is used in combination with different forms of the Infinitive. Thus, if reference is made to the present, the Simple Infinitive is found with stative verbs and the Continuous Infinitive with dynamic verbs.

e.g. *Can it be so late?* – Невже так пізно? *Can he be sleeping now?* – Невже він спить зараз?

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive **can** refers the action to the past or indicates that the action began in the past but still continued into the moment of speaking.

e.g. *Can he have said it?* – *Невже він сказав це?*

*Can he have known her before?* – *Невже він знав її раніше?*

If *can* is followed by a dynamic verb the Perfect Continuous Infinitive is used.

e.g. *Can he have been waiting for us so long?* – *Невже він чекає на нас так довго?*

*Could* expresses a greater degree of astonishment.

e.g. *Could it be true?*

*Could she have been sleeping so long?*

**Note:** The Ukrainian negative question of the type “*Невже... не...?*” can be translated into English in different ways:

a) by complex sentences:

e.g. *Can it be that she hasn't seen him?* – *Невже вона не побачила його?*

b) by different lexical means (by the verbs *to fail*, *to dislike* and other lexical units having the negative meaning in their semantics):

e.g. *Can you have failed to see him?* – *Невже ти не побачив його?*

*Can you dislike this film?* – *Невже тобі не подобається цей фільм?*

*Can nobody have seen him?* – *Невже ніхто не бачив його?*

*Can he have never come here?* – *Невже він ніколи не приходив сюди?*

c) by a statement with the modal word *surely*:

e.g. *Surely you have met him before.* – *Безсумнівно, ви зустрічалися з ним раніше.*

### 7. Strong doubt, improbability, incredulity.

In this meaning *can/could* occurs only in negative sentences (*could* expresses greater doubt or incredulity). The time-reference is indicated not by the form of the modal verb but by that of the Infinitive (perfect forms of the Infinitive should be used).

e.g. *He can't be ill.* – *Не може бути, щоб він був хворим.*

*He can't have said it.* – *Не може бути, щоб він сказав це.*

*He can't have been waiting for us so long.* – *Не може бути, що він чекав на нас так довго.*

*She couldn't be working now.* – *Не може бути, що вона працює зараз.*

It corresponds to the Ukrainian: “*Не може бути, щоб...*”, “*Навряд...*”

**Note:** Double negation of the type “*Не може бути, щоб... не...*” can be translated into English in different ways:

a) by complex sentences:

e.g. *It can't be you haven't noticed him.* – *Не може бути, щоб ти не помітив його.*

b) by different lexical means:

e.g. *You couldn't have failed to notice him.* – *Ти не міг не помітити його.*

*You couldn't have misunderstood him.* – *Ти не міг неправильно зрозуміти його.*

8. **Suggestion, reproach.** In this meaning *could* is used. It can be followed by the Simple or Perfect Infinitive (it depends upon the time reference).

e.g. *What could we do tomorrow?* – *We could go on a picnic. Що б ми могли робити завтра?* – *Ми могли б організувати пікнік.*

*I failed my math class.* – *You could have talked to your teacher. Я відстав з математики.* – *Ти міг би поговорити із вчителем.*

There are some **set expressions** with the modal verb *can*:

a) **Cannot/can't help (doing something).** – *Не можу не/неможливо не... (зробити щось).*

e.g. *One cannot help admiring this landscape.* – *Неможливо не захоплюватися цим ландшафтом.*

*I couldn't help crying.* – *Я не могла не розплакатися.*

b) **Cannot/can't but (do something).** – *Не можу не...; Мені нічого не залишається, окрім як... (зробити щось).*

e.g. *I could not but give him this book.* – *Я не міг не дати йому цю книжку. (It was a must for me.)*

*I couldn't but hope.* – *Мені нічого не залишалось, окрім як сподіватися.*

c) **As... as can be** – an intensifying expression.

e.g. *She's as pleased as can be.* – *Вона надзвичайно задоволена.*

9. *Can* and *could* followed by different forms of the Infinitive are found in special questions to express **puzzlement, impatience** or some other emotional colouring.

e.g. *What can/could he mean? Що, власне, він має на увазі?*

*What can/could he be doing now? Що, власне, він робить зараз?*

## The Modal Verb MAY

The modal verb **may** has two forms: **may** for the Present tense and **might** for the Past tense. The expressions **to be allowed** and **to be permitted** can be used to supply the missing forms of the modal verb **may**.

e.g. *You will be allowed to use a dictionary.* – *Ви зможете/вам буде дозволено користуватися словником.*

The modal verb **may** has the following meanings:

1. **Permission.** In this meaning **may** is found in affirmative sentences and is followed by the Simple Infinitive. The form **might** occurs in the Past tense contexts.

e.g. *You may go now.* – *Ви можете йти.*

*He told that we might smoke in that room.* – *Він сказав, що нам можна палити в тій кімнаті.*

2. **Request.** In this meaning it is found in interrogative sentences and is combined only with the Simple Infinitive. The form **might** is used when we wish to express a more polite request.

e.g. *May/might I help you?* – *Можна, я допоможу вам?*

3. **Prohibition.** In this meaning it is used only in negative sentences. The contracted form **mayn't** is very rare. It is usually rendered into Ukrainian as “*Не смій...*”.

e.g. *You may not go swimming (you are not allowed to...).* – *Не смій купатися.*

4. **Possibility** (due to circumstances). This meaning occurs only in affirmative sentences. The form **might** is used in past-time contexts in accordance with the rules of the sequence of tenses.

e.g. *You may order a taxi by telephone.* – *Ви можете замовити таксі телефоном.*

*He said that I might order a taxi by telephone.* – *Він сказав, що я можу замовити таксі телефоном.*

In this meaning **might** followed by the Perfect Infinitive indicates that the action was not carried out.

e.g. *Be more careful. You might have broken your leg.* – *Будь обережним. Ти міг би зламати ногу.*

5. **Supposition implying uncertainty.** In Ukrainian this meaning is usually rendered by means of the modal adverb “*можливо*”. In this meaning the verb **may** occurs in affirmative and negative sentences and is followed by different forms of the Infinitive depending on the time reference expressed.

In combination with the Simple Infinitive **may** usually refers the action to the future.

e.g. *He may come soon.* – *Він, мабуть, прийде незабаром.*

*He may not come to the party, as he is not feeling well.* – *Він, мабуть, не піде на вечірку, він погано себе почуває.*

In combination with the Continuous Infinitive of dynamic verbs **may** refers the action to the present.

e.g. *He may be sleeping now.* – *Він, мабуть, спить зараз.*

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive **may** refers the action to the past or may also indicate an action which began in the past and continued into the moment of speaking (usually with stative verbs).

e.g. *He may have fallen ill.* – *Він, мабуть, захворів.*

*He may have been ill for 2 weeks.* – *Він, мабуть, хворий протягом двох тижнів.*

However, if **may** is followed by a dynamic verb, the Perfect Continuous Infinitive is used.

e.g. *He may have been sleeping for two hours.* – *Він спить, мабуть, уже дві години.*

In the meaning of supposition implying uncertainty, the form **might** is also found (it emphasizes more the idea of uncertainty). It can be followed by the Simple, Continuous and Perfect Infinitive.

e.g. *It might rain this afternoon.* – *Після обіду, мабуть, піде дощ.*

*He might be having lunch.* – *Він, мабуть, якраз обідає.*

*He might be fallen asleep.* – *Він, мабуть, уже заснув.*

**Note 1:** *May/might* in the meaning of supposition is not used in questions. Uncertainty in questions is rendered by: “*Is it (he) likely...*” or “*Do you think...?*”.

e.g. *Is Mary likely to arrive tonight?* – *Мері, мабуть, прийде після обіду?*

*Do you think they have already arrived?* – *Як ви думаєте, вони, мабуть, уже приїхали?*

6. **Disapproval or reproach.** In this meaning only the form **might** is found in affirmative sentences. It may be followed by the Simple (if some hypothetical wish is expressed) or Perfect Infinitive (if a reproach or irritation is made that the action was not carried out).

e.g. *You might help me.* – *Ви могли б мені допомогти.*

*You might have helped me.* – *Ви могли б допомогти мені тоді.*

7. **Purpose.** In this case **may** is used after the conjunctions **so that, in order that.**

e.g. *I'll call him so that he **may know** when to expect us.*

**May/might** can be found in some **set phrases:**

a) **I may/might as well + Infinitive** – a very mild way of expressing an intention.

e.g. *I **may/might as well take** you with me.*

b) **It might have been worse.** It means “Things are not so bad after all”. In Ukrainian it is rendered as “Могло б бути і гірше”.

c) **If I may say so...** It has become a stereotyped phrase in which the meaning of permission is considerably weakened.

e.g. ***If I may say so,** I think you are not right.*

d) **Might just as well.** It is used to suggest alternative actions. It means “It would be equally good to”.

e.g. *You **might just as well** wait till Tuesday.*

### The Modal Verb MUST

The modal verb **must** has only one form. It is used in present-time contexts with reference to the present or future and in combination with the Perfect Infinitive it refers to the past. In past-time contexts this form is used only in reported speech, i.e. the rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed with **must**.

e.g. *I **must go** there too. – Я також мушу піти туди.*

*I knew I **must go** there too. – Я знав, що я також мушу піти туди.*

The modal verb **must** has the following meanings:

1. **Obligation** (from the speaker's point of view). There is no choice, this action is required and consequently inevitable. This meaning occurs in positive statements and questions.

e.g. *I **must go**, indeed. – Я дійсно мушу йти.*

***Must you really go** so soon? – Ви дійсно мусите йти так скоро?*

Obligation expressed by **must** refers to the present or future, but in reported speech it may refer to the past.

e.g. *James said he **must invite** the Stewards to dinner. – Джеймс сказав, що він повинен запросити Стюардів на обід.*

**Note 1:** Future obligation can be made more precise with the Future Simple of the verb **to have to**.

e.g. *You **'ll have to come** once again. – Вам доведеться прийти сюди ще раз.*

**Note 2:** The absence of necessity is expressed by **needn't**.

e.g. ***Must I come** tomorrow? – No, you **needn't**.*

In different contexts **must** may acquire additional shades of meaning, such as duty and necessity. In all these cases **must** is followed only by the Simple Infinitive.

2. **Prohibition** (as a rule associated with some circumstances). This meaning is expressed in negative sentences and **must** is followed by the Simple Infinitive.

e.g. *You **must not get up**. – Вам не можна вставати.*

*The girls **must not go** alone so late. – Дівчатам не можна ходити самим так пізно.*

3. **Emphatic advice, urgent (emphatic) request, invitation, command.** These meanings are found in affirmative and negative sentences.

e.g. *You **must come** and see us. – Ви мусите провідати нас.*

*You **must have** your hair cut. – Тобі треба підстригтися.*

*You **mustn't** worry. – Не варто хвилюватися.*

4. **Supposition bordering on assurance, implying strong probability, near certainty.** In this meaning **must** is found only in affirmative sentences and it may be followed by different forms of the Infinitive. In Ukrainian it corresponds to “напевно”, “очевидно”.

e.g. *He **must be** over fifty. – Йому, напевно, за п'ятдесят.*

*He **must be working** in the garden now. – Він, напевно, працює в саду зараз.*

*They **must have gone** home. – Вони, напевно, пішли уже додому.*

*It **must have been raining** all the night. – Дощ ішов, напевно, усю ніч.*

The same meaning can also be expressed by means of the modal words **probably** and **evidently**.

e.g. *He is **probably** ill.*

*They look tired. **Evidently** they have been working all the time.*

**Note 1:** With reference to the future *must* is not used. In this case we find adverbs *evidently, probably, to be likely, to be unlikely*.

e.g. *He will probably come tomorrow. She will evidently feel alone.*

*She is likely to come. They are unlikely to help us.*

**Note 2:** In the meaning of supposition *must* is never used in negative and interrogative sentences. To express supposition implying strong probability with negative meaning, the following means are employed: **negative affixes, negative pronouns, other lexical units having negative semantics**.

e.g. *You must have misunderstood me. – Ви, напевно, неправильно зрозуміли мене.*

*You must have disliked this film. – Тобі, напевно, не сподобався цей фільм.*

*They must have been inattentive. – Вони, напевно, були не уважні.*

*She must have failed to recognize you. – Вона, напевно, не впізнала тебе.*

*He must have had no chance to warn you. – У нього, напевно, не було жодного шансу попередити вас.*

*No one must have told him about it. – Йому, напевно, ніхто не сказав про це.*

*The letter must have never reached him. – Він, напевно, так і не отримав листа.*

The modal verb *must* occurs in some **set phrases**:

a) **Must needs** (it denotes obligation: *обов'язково, вкрай*).

e.g. *He must needs go there. – Йому вкрай необхідно піти туди.*

b) **I must be going. I must be off.** Both phrases mean “It’s time for me to go”.

e.g. *I’m terribly busy. I’m sorry but I really must be going.*

c) **I must tell you...; I must say...** These are stereotyped phrases in which the meaning of obligation is weakened.

e.g. *I must tell you it’s an attack of appendicitis. – Мушу сказати, це напад апендициту.*

### The Modal Phrase TO HAVE TO

The modal expression *to have* plus Infinitive with the particle *to* serves to express obligation and necessity. It is found in affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences and is combined only with the Simple Infinitive. It is rendered into Ukrainian as *змушений, доводиться*. This modal expression can have the category of person and number and all tense-aspect forms, as well as verbals. It builds up its interrogative and negative forms with the help of auxiliaries.

e.g. *We have to return. – Ми змушені повернутися.*

*She knew what she had to do. – Вона знала, що вона мусила зробити.*

*I see that I will have to reconsider my position. – Я бачу, мені доведеться переглянути мою позицію.*

*You don’t have to do what your sister tells you. – Ти не зобов’язаний робити те, що твоя сестра каже тобі.*

*Why does he have to go there? – Чому він повинен іти туди?*

*Did he have to tell them everything? – Йому довелося сказати їм все?*

**To have to** is similar in its meaning to *must*. Sometimes it doesn’t matter which one we use. We can use either to say that it is necessary to do something.

e.g. *Oh, dear, it’s later that I thought. I must (have to) go now. – О, батечки, уже пізніше, ніж я думав. Я мушу вже йти.*

But there is a difference between *must* and *have to*. With *must* the speaker is giving his own feelings, saying what he thinks is necessary.

e.g. *I must write to Ann. I haven’t written to her for ages* (= he personally feels that he must write to Ann).

With *have to* the speaker is not giving his own feelings. He is just giving facts.

e.g. *Ann’s eyes are not good. She has to wear glasses for reading.*

**Mustn’t** and **don’t have to** are completely different. “*You mustn’t do something*” means “*it is necessary that you do not do it*”:

e.g. *You mustn’t tell anyone what I said.* (= Don’t tell anyone.) – *Не кажи нікому те, що я тобі сказав.*

“*You don’t have to do something*” means “*it is not necessary to do it; you don’t need to do it*”:

*She stayed in bed this morning because she didn’t have to go to work. – Вона довше полежала в ліжку сьогодні, оскільки їй не потрібно було йти на роботу.*

## The Modal Phrase TO BE TO

**To be + Infinitive** is a modal expression. It is used in two tenses – the Present Simple and the Past Simple. It has the following meanings:

1. **An obligation** resulting from the arrangement or arising out of a plan. This meaning is found in affirmative and interrogative sentences in the Present and Past tenses. **To be to** is followed by the Simple Infinitive.

e.g. *I am to be at home at six.* – *Я маю бути вдома о шостій.*

*Who is to be the first?* – *Хто повинен бути першим?*

*When is the wedding to be.* – *Коли весілля?*

The Past tense of the verb **to be** in combination with the Perfect Infinitive denotes that the action didn't take place.

e.g. *I was to have met my mother.* – *Я повинен був зустріти маму. (But I failed to do so.)*

*She was to have arrived yesterday.* – *Вона повинна була прийти вчора. (But the action was not carried out.)*

2. **A strict order or an instruction** (given either by the speaker or some official authority). This meaning is found in affirmative sentences.

e.g. *You are to stay here until I return.* – *Залишайся тут, поки я не повернусь.*

*You are to do it as you are told.* – *Ти мусиш зробити так, як тобі кажуть.*

3. **Strict prohibition** (only in the negative form).

e.g. *You are not to tell anybody about it.* – *Нікому не кажи про це.*

*You are not to leave the room until I return.* – *Не смій виходити з кімнати, поки я не повернуся.*

4. **Something unavoidable, that is destined to happen.** In Ukrainian it is often rendered by “судилося”.

e.g. *He was never to see her again.* – *Йому не судилося побачити її ще раз.*

*He was to become a famous scientist.* – *Йому судилося стати відомим ученим.*

*It was not to be.* – *Цьому не судилося збутися.*

5. **Possibility.** This meaning comes very close to the meaning of the modal verb **can**. In this case the passive form of the Simple Infinitive is used (unless it is a question beginning with the interrogative adverb **how**).

e.g. *He is to be trusted.* – *Йому можна довіряти.*

*Where is he to be found?* – *Де його можна знайти?*

If a question begins with the interrogative adverb **how** the active form of the Infinitive is used.

e.g. *How am I to reply?* – *Що я маю відповісти?*

*How am I to repay you for your kindness?* – *Як мені відплатити вам за вашу доброту?*

The modal phrase **to be to** occurs in some **set expressions**:

*What am I to do?* – *Що ж мені робити?*

*What is to become of me?* – *Що зі мною буде?*

*Where am I to go?* – *Куди мені дітися?*

## The Modal Verb OUGHT TO

The modal verb **ought to** has only one form which is used with reference to the present or future. In reported speech it remains unchanged. **Ought** is always followed by the Infinitive with the particle **to**.

**Ought to** has the following meanings:

1. **Moral obligation, moral duty.** It corresponds to the Ukrainian “слід було б”. In this meaning **ought to** is possible in all kinds of sentences though it is felt to be awkward in questions where **should** is preferred.

e.g. *You ought to say a word about yourself.* – *Вам слід сказати декілька слів про себе.*

*Ought she to do that?* – *Чи слід їй робити це?*

*You oughtn't to mention it.* – *Вам не слід згадувати це.*

Generally **ought to** refers an action to the future. In this case it is followed by the Simple Infinitive.

e.g. *You ought to be more careful.* – *Вам слід бути обережнішим.*

With reference to the present **ought to** is used with the Continuous Infinitive, or with the Simple Infinitive if the verb is stative.

e.g. *You ought to be earning your living at your age.* – *У вашому віці слід заробляти гроші самому.*

With reference to the past **ought** is used with the Perfect Infinitive. In the affirmative form it shows that a desirable action was not fulfilled, and in the negative form it shows that an undesirable action was fulfilled.

e.g. *You ought to have helped him* (but you didn't). – *Вам слід було допомогти йому.*



You **oughtn't to have said** it (but you did). – Вам не слід було казати це.

**Note:** The opposite to **ought to** is **needn't** which means that the action is unnecessary.

e.g. We **ought to wash** the dishes but we **needn't dry** them. – Нам слід помити посуд, але витирати його немає потреби.

**2. Advisability** (which is sometimes understood as desirability).

e.g. You **ought to see** a doctor. – Вам слід піти до лікаря.

**3. Supposition, probability, something that can be naturally expected.** It corresponds to the Ukrainian “очевидно”, “напевно”.

In this meaning **ought to** is a weaker equivalent of **must**. The use of **ought to** in this meaning is not very common as this meaning is normally rendered by **must**.

e.g. Apples **ought to grow** well here. – Яблуни, напевно, ростуть добре тут.

### The Modal Verb SHOULD

The modal verb **should** has the following meanings:

**1. Moral obligation or duty which may not be fulfilled.** In this meaning **should** is found in all kinds of sentences.

e.g. You **should submit** your work by Saturday. – Вам слід подати вашу роботу на розгляд до суботи.

**Should I talk** to him about it? – Чи слід мені поговорити з ним про це?

**2. Advice, desirability.** Sometimes it's difficult to discriminate between the first and the second meaning.

e.g. He **should stay** in bed. – Йому слід лежати в ліжку.

You **shouldn't miss** this chance. – Вам слід не упустити цей шанс.

You **shouldn't be sitting** in the sun. It's dangerous for your health. – Вам не слід сидіти на сонці. Це небезпечно для вашого здоров'я.

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive **should** refers the action to the past. In affirmative sentences **should + Perfect Infinitive** shows that a desirable action was not carried out.

e.g. She **should have told** me about it earlier. – Їй слід було сказати мені про це раніше.

In negative sentences **should + Perfect Infinitive** indicates that an undesirable action was carried out; smth wrong has been done.

e.g. They **shouldn't have married.** – Їм не слід було одружуватися.

**3. Probability** (only with reference to the present or future).

e.g. The film **should be** interesting. – Фільм, очевидно, цікавий.

He **shouldn't come** for another hour. – Він навряд чи прийде раніше, ніж через годину.

**Should** may be used for emotional colouring. In this function it may be called **the emotional should**.

The use of the emotional **should** is structurally dependent. It is found in the following cases:

1) in rhetorical questions beginning with **why**:

e.g. **Why should I do** it? – А чому це я повинна робити це?

**Why shouldn't we go** there? – А чому б нам не піти туди?

2) in object clauses beginning with **why**:

e.g. I don't see **why we shouldn't meet** at 6. – Я не розумію, чому б нам не зустрітися о шостій.

3) in attributive clauses beginning with **why** after the noun **reason**:

e.g. I don't see any reason **why she shouldn't be** happy. – Я не бачу причини, чому б їй не бути щасливою.

4) in some **set phrases**:

**How should I know?** – Звідки мені знати?

**Why should I...?** – А чого це я повинен...?

**That it should come to this!** – І до чого діло дійшло!

**To think that it should have happened to me!** – Тільки подумати, що зі мною було!

### The Modal Verb SHALL

Historically **shall** and **should** were two forms of the same verb expressing obligation. But later they came to express different meanings and in present-day English their use is not parallel and they are treated as two different verbs.

**Shall** is not translated into Ukrainian, its meaning is usually rendered by emphatic intonation, with the help of the Infinitive, etc.

**Shall** is combined with the Simple Infinitive and expresses:

**1. Promise, strong intention.**

e.g. *You shall never know this.* – *Ти ніколи цього не дізнаєшся.*

**2. Threat or warning.**

e.g. *That day shall come.* – *Прийде той день.*

*You shall be punished.* – *Ти будеш покараний.*

**3. A suggestion, asking for instructions** (in questions with the first person singular and plural).

e.g. *Shall I read?* – *Yes, please.* *Мені читати?* – *Так, будь ласка.*

*Shall I open the window?* – *No, you needn't.* – *Відкрити вікно?* – *Немає потреби.*

*Shall we begin?* – *Yes, let's.* – *Розпочнемо?* – *Давайте.*

**4. Strict order, compulsion:**

e.g. *He shall do as I say.* – *Він зробить так, як я кажу.*

### The Modal Verb NEED

The verb **need** may be used either as a defective or as a regular verb.

As a defective verb **need** has only one form (the Present tense) and combines with a bare Infinitive. In reported speech it remains unchanged.

**Need** expresses **necessity** or **absence of necessity**. It is used in interrogative and negative sentences. It may be found in affirmative sentences too, but it is not typical.

In interrogative sentences **need** usually implies that there is no necessity of performing the action.

e.g. *Need she go there?* (hoping for a negative answer) – *Їй потрібно йти туди?*

*Need I repeat?* – *Чи потрібно мені повторити?*

In the meaning of **absence of necessity** (in negative sentences) **need** is used with the Simple and the Perfect Infinitive. “(You) **needn't (do)**” means that it is not necessary to do something.

e.g. *You needn't go there.* – *Не потрібно йти туди або Даремно ви йдете туди.*

*You needn't shout.* – *Не потрібно кричати.*

In combination with the Perfect Infinitive **need** expresses an action which has been performed though it was unnecessary. It implies a waste of time or effort.

e.g. *You needn't have come.* *The dean is off.* – *Даремно ви прийшли, декана уже немає.*

*We needn't have waited for her because she never came.* – *Даремно ми чекали на неї, вона так і не прийшла.*

As a regular verb **need** can have all necessary forms, including verbals. It is followed by the **to-Infinitive**. It may also be followed by a noun or a pronoun.

### The Modal Verbs WILL and WOULD

**Will** and **would** are looked upon as forms of the same verb, although in a few cases their meanings differ.

The form **will** is used for the Present tense and the form **would** – for the Past tense. The form **would** can express an actual fact in past-time contexts and unreality or can be used as a more polite form of **will** in present-time contexts.

**Will** combined with the Simple Infinitive expresses:

**1. Willingness, intention, determination** in affirmative and interrogative sentences and **refusal** in negative sentences. It is rendered into Ukrainian by *обов'язково, неодмінно, з охотою*.

e.g. *I will write as soon as I can.* – *Я обов'язково напишу.*

*I said I would do anything for him.* – *Я сказав, що я зроблю щось для нього.*

*They wouldn't listen to me.* – *Вони не послухають мене.*

**2. A polite request or an offer.** This meaning occurs only in questions.

e.g. *Will/would you pass me the salt, please?* – *Передайте мені сіль, будь ласка.*

*Will/would you have some tea?* – *Вун'єте чаю?*

In comparison with **will** the form **would** renders a greater degree of politeness.

**Note:** It is still more polite to use the combinations: **Would you mind (+ -ing form), Would you be so kind as to...**

e.g. *Would you mind passing me the salt?*

*Would you be so kind as to pass me the salt?*

**3. A command.**

e.g. *You will do as I say.* – *Робіть так, як я кажу.*

An impatient command can be with **will you**.

e.g. **Will you be quiet!** – *Замовкніть нарешті!*

**Will you** in the tag after a negative command is pronounced with the falling tone, but after a positive command **will you** has a rising intonation and expresses impatience. **Would** is never used in this meaning.

4. **Insistence.** **Will** is stressed when used in this sense.

e.g. **He will try to mend it himself** (he insists on mending it himself). – *Він відремонтує це сам.*

5. **Resistance.** In this meaning **will** and **would** occur in negative sentences; showing that a thing fails to perform its function. In Ukrainian it corresponds to “...ніяк не...”.

e.g. **The door will not open.** – *Двері не відчиняються.*

**The wound wouldn't heal.** – *Рана не заживала.*

6. **Inevitability, something naturally expected.**

e.g. **What will be will be.** – *Чому бути, того не минути.*

**Truth will out.** – *Правди не приховаєш.*

7. **Prediction, a certainty** (about the present or the future). In this meaning **will** and **would** occur. They can be combined with different forms of the Infinitive.

e.g. **That will be my wife.** – *Це, напевно, моя дружина.*

**That would be in 2005, I suppose.** – *Я думаю, це було в 2005 році.*

8. **Characteristic behaviour or quality:**

e.g. **Oil will float on water.** – *Олія легша за воду/Олія спливає на поверхню води.*

**This car will hold 5 persons.** – *Ця машина вміщає 5 осіб.*

### The Modal Verb DARE

The modal verb **dare** has two forms: **dare** for the present and **dared** for the past tense. It means **to have the courage, to venture**. Its use is very restricted. In present-day English it is mainly found in questions beginning with *how*, which are actually exclamations, and in negative sentences.

e.g. **How dare you say that!** – *Як ти смієш казати таке!*

**How dare she come here!** – *Як вона сміє приходити сюди!*

**He dare not look at her.** – *Він не відважується глянути на неї.*

Notice the colloquial set phrase “**I dare say**” which is rendered into Ukrainian as “*Насмілюся сказати*”.

e.g. **I dare say you look a little confused.** – *Насмілюся сказати, у вас збентежений вигляд.*

## 11. NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB

All English grammars distinguish between finite and non-finite forms of the verb. The non-finite forms, which are also called the verbals or the non-predicative forms of the verb, comprise, according to most grammars **the infinitive**, and **the participle (participle I and participle II)**. Some grammars however treat the gerund and participle I as a single form and refer to it as the “*ing-* form”.

The verbals are regarded in most grammars as forms of the verb because they have certain features in common with the finite forms. But at the same time they have their own peculiarities which distinguish them from the finite forms.

The characteristic traits of the verbals are as follows:

1. The verbals combine the characteristics of a verb with those of some other part of speech. Thus, the infinitive and the gerund have besides verbal characteristics also traits in common with the noun. For instance, they can be used in the sentence as subject or object, both syntactical functions being typical of the noun:

e.g. **To play chess** is his greatest pleasure. (*subject*)

He likes **to play chess**. (*object*)

The participle has the characteristics of both verb and adjective (compare with Ukrainian дієприкметник) and in some of its functions it combines the characteristics of a verb with those of an adverb (compare with Ukrainian дієприслівник):

e.g. The woman **standing** at the window is my grandmother. (*attribute*)

He stood **watching** the children (*adverbial modifier*) **playing** in the yard. (*attribute*)

2. The distinctions between the finite forms of the verb and the verbals are as follows: the finite forms of the verb have always a subject with which they agree in number and person: *I am a student, he is a student*; the verbals are not restricted in number and person by any grammatical subject:

e.g. **Coming** near, I found the door slightly ajar.

She stopped **to join** him.

Neither have the verbals mood distinctions. Accordingly, the verbals cannot express predication by themselves; they can be only part of the predicate and, as part of the predicate, they must always be in connection with finite forms of the verb:

e.g. She suddenly **began to speak**.

I **must ask** you to excuse me.

3. In common with the finite forms of the verb all the three verbals have voice distinctions: *to write* is the Active Voice of the Non-Perfect Infinitive, *to be written* is the corresponding passive form; *writing* is the participle I in the Active Voice, *being written* is the Passive Voice.

The tense distinctions of the verbals are not absolute (like those of the finite verbs), but relative. The tenses of the finite forms indicate the time of the action. The forms that are called tenses in the verbals comprise relative time indication; they usually indicate whether the action expressed by the verbal:

1) **coincides with the actions of the finite forms of the verb** (in the present, past or future):

e.g. I see him **run**. I saw him **run**. I shall see him **run**. (the Non-Perfect Infinitive)

We **look** at the **rising** sun. We **looked** at the **rising** sun. We **shall look** at the **rising** sun. (the Non-Perfect Participle I)

He **tells** me of his **taking** English lessons. He **told** me of his **taking** English lessons. He **will tell** me of his **taking** English lessons. (the Non-Perfect Gerund)

2) **is prior to the action of the finite forms of the verb** (in the present, past or future):

e.g. I know him **to have been** one of our students. I knew him **to have been** one of our students. I shall know him **to have been** one of our students. (the Perfect Infinitive)

**Having finished** my lesson, I usually go home. **Having finished** my lesson, I went home. **Having finished** my lesson, I shall go home. (the Perfect Participle I)

He **tells** me of his **having taken** English lessons. He **told** me of his **having taken** English lessons. He **will tell** me of his **having taken** English lessons. (the Perfect Gerund)

4. The verbals differ considerably from the finite forms in their functioning in the sentence. The finite forms always have the function of the predicate. But the verbals which lack the categories of predication fulfil a great variety of other functions in the sentence.

5. One more characteristic trait of the verbals is that all the verbals can form predicative constructions, i.e. constructions consisting of two elements, a nominal (noun or pronoun) and a verbal (infinitive, gerund or participle); the verbal element stands in predicate relation to the nominal element, in most cases forming syntactic units, serving as one part of the sentence:

e.g. They sat down to supper, **Manson still talking cheerfully**.

## 11.1. THE INFINITIVE

### The Verbal and Noun Characteristics of the Infinitive

The infinitive is historically a noun derived from a verb stem. In Modern English the infinitive is intermediate between verb and noun.

#### The Verbal Characteristics of the Infinitive

The infinitive has the following verb-characteristics:

1. It distinguishes **aspect: common** and **continuous**:

Common: *to write, to have written, to be written, to have been written.*

e.g. *I want you to give me some information.*

*She must have seen a change in my expression.*

Continuous: *to be writing, to have been writing.*

e.g. *It was pleasant to be driving the car again.*

2. The infinitive has **tense forms: non-perfect** and **perfect**. The tenses of the infinitive comprise relative time indication.

Common aspect:

**Non-perfect infinitive:** *to write, to be written;*

**Perfect infinitive:** *to have written, to have been written.*

Continuous aspect:

**Non-perfect continuous infinitive:** *to be writing;*

**Perfect continuous infinitive:** *to have been writing.*

**The non-perfect infinitive** indicates that the action expressed by the infinitive is simultaneous with the action of the finite form of the verb in the sentence:

e.g. *I am glad to see you.*

*I often heard him tell the tale.*

When associated with modal (defective) verbs and their equivalents (*to have* or *to be* followed by an infinitive), **the non-perfect infinitive** may also refer to a future action:

e.g. *I must go and see him in a day or two.*

*May I come again?*

**The non-perfect continuous form of the infinitive** shows an action in its progress at the time when the action expressed by the finite form of the verb takes place:

e.g. *She seemed to be listening.*

**The perfect infinitive** shows that the action expressed by the infinitive precedes the action indicated by the finite form of the verb:

e.g. *I'm sorry to have been of so little assistance.*

In Ukrainian this form of the infinitive is often rendered by a finite form of a verb:

*Шкода, що я так мало вам допоміг.*

After the past tense of verbs expressing hope, expectation, intention, **the perfect infinitive** is used to indicate that the action was not carried out:

e.g. *I meant (thought or intended) to have written a line to you.*

*I quite expected you to have been here before 6 o'clock.*

After the modal (defective) verbs *should, could, ought, might* (Subjunctive II) and the past indicative of the verb *to be* (when used as a modal equivalent) **the perfect infinitive** is used to show that an action considered desirable or planned was not carried out (a rejected action):

e.g. *You should have phoned me at once...*

*I ought to have done it.*

**The perfect continuous form of the infinitive** shows the anterior duration of an action still continuing; it is equivalent to a present or past perfect continuous:

e.g. *We must have been walking for two hours, let us have a rest (probably we have been walking for two hours).*

The infinitive of transitive verbs has **voice distinctions**:

**Active:** *to write, to have written*

e.g. *I'm glad to hear you say so.*

**Passive:** *to be written, to have been written*

e.g. *There is only one thing to be done.*

Cf.: *I cannot trifle or be trifled with.*

**Note:** At first the infinitive has only one form (active or indifferent) which had either an active or a passive meaning. In the course of time a passive form of the infinitive developed. Traces of the old indifferent form with a passive meaning are still found in the following sentences:

They were not **to blame** (= to be blamed). The reason is not far **to seek** (= to be sought). There is a lot **to see** there (to be seen).

Tense \ Voice	Active	Passive
Non-perfect	to write	to be written
Continuous	to be writing	
Perfect	to have written	to have been written
Perfect Continuous	to have been writing	

3. In common with the finite verb, **the infinitive may have an object**; if the verb is transitive, the infinitive has a direct object:

e.g. *He saw Irene **come in**, **pick up** the message, and **read** it.*

4. The infinitive **can be modified by an adverb**:

e.g. *I like **to walk** quickly.*

### The Nominal Characteristics of the Infinitive

The infinitive has the following syntactical characteristics of a noun:

1. It may be used as **a subject** of a sentence:

e.g. ***To talk** of those merry school days makes one young again.*

2. The infinitive may be used as **a predicative**:

e.g. *Her plan was now **to drive** to Bath during the night.*

*His duty then was **to go** to the red pillar boxes and **empty** them.*

3. It may have the function of **an object**:

e.g. *She promised **to take** me with her.*

### The Particle *to* before the Infinitive

In Modern English the infinitive is usually preceded by the particle *to*. Formerly this *to* was a preposition which was put before the infinitive (then a noun in a dative case) to indicate direction or purpose. In the course of time *to* has lost its meaning of direction or purpose, and became merely the sign of the infinitive. But in some cases it has still preserved its old meaning of purpose.

Cf.: *I like **to read**. – I went to the library **to read**.* (purpose).

The infinitive is used without *to* in the following cases:

a) after the auxiliary and modal (defective) verbs *shall, will, do, may, can, must*:

e.g. *I **must go** and **look** at the flowers at Hampton Court. **Will** you **come**?*

But after the modal (defective) verb *ought* the infinitive is always used with *to*:

e.g. *I **ought to have done** it.*

b) after some verbs expressing physical perception: *to hear, to see, to feel, to perceive, to watch*:

e.g. *They **felt** the boat **shudder** ...*

**Note:** if the verb *to feel* expresses mental perceptions, *to* is used before the infinitive:

e.g. *I **felt** this **to be** true... .*

c) after the verbs *to let, to make* (примушувати), *to bid*; also after the expression *I won't have*:

e.g. *He turned on Florence, ... and **bade** her **leave** the room.*

**Note:** In the passive voice these verbs require an infinitive with *to*:

e.g. *They **were heard to be** talking in the corridor.*

d) after the verb *to help* the infinitive is often used without *to*:

e.g. *I **helped** Mrs. Thompson **take off** her coat.*

When there are several infinitives with the same or similar function *to* is put only before the first infinitive. But if emphasis or contrast is intended, *to* is repeated before each infinitive:

e.g. *It was his delight **to run** into the garden after a shower of rain and **shake** the rose bush over him.*

***To be** or **not to be** – that is the question.*

The particle *to* is sometimes separated from the infinitive by an adverb or an emphatic particle; the construction is called a "Split Infinitive":

e.g. *They were seen **to just touch** each other's hands.*

## The Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence

The infinitive performs almost all syntactical functions characteristic of the noun, although in each of them it has certain peculiarities of its own.

### The Infinitive as a Subject

**The Infinitive as a Subject** may have different positions in the sentence. Sometimes it precedes the predicate, as in:

e.g. *To improve your phonetics is the main task of yours at the moment.*

When the subject of the sentence is an infinitive phrase, it is sometimes placed after the predicate. Then the sentence begins with the pronoun *it*, an introductory word called **the anticipatory it: it is necessary to..., it is important to..., it is good (better) to..., it is bad (worse) to..., it is useless to..., it is (of) no use to..., it is impossible to..., it is quite natural (useless, strange, annoying, difficult) to..., etc.:**

e.g. *It was pleasant to observe the fresh flowers in the room.*

The second of these structural patterns is more common than the first one.

The infinitive subject in both structural patterns is a *to*-infinitive. If there are two or more homogeneous subjects in a sentence, all of them keep the particle **to**:

e.g. *It was awfully difficult to do or even to say nothing at all.*

The function of the subject can be performed by the infinitive of any voice, aspect and perfect form, although the common aspect non-perfect active forms are naturally far more frequent.

### The Infinitive as a Simple Nominal Predicate

It may be used in exclamatory sentences expressing the speaker's rejection of the idea that the person to whom the action of the infinitive is ascribed is likely to perform this action, or belong to such sort of people.

e.g. *You – of all men – to say such a thing!*

*Me – to be a liar!*

As a rule the infinitive in exclamatory sentences is used with the particle **to**, although it occasionally occurs without it.

e.g. *Me – marry him! Never.*

The infinitive may be also used as predicate in interrogative why-sentences, both affirmative and negative, where it expresses a suggestion.

e.g. *Why not go away?*

### The Infinitive as a Predicative

The infinitive is used in predicates of several types, both nominal and verbal. In this function the *to*-infinitive is used in **compound nominal predicates** after the link verb **to be**:

e.g. *All I had now to do was to obey him in silence...*

With homogeneous predicatives the use of the particle **to** varies. If the infinitives are not linked by conjunctions, the particle is generally used with all of them:

e.g. *My intention was to see her as soon as possible, to talk to her, to calm her.*

If they are linked by the conjunctions **and** or **or** the particle **to** is generally used with the first infinitive only:

e.g. *Your duty will be to teach him French and play with him.*

### The Infinitive as Part of a Compound Verbal Predicate

The infinitive is used in compound verbal predicates of two types: a) in **a compound verbal modal predicate**; b) in **a compound verbal aspect predicate**.

The infinitive is used as a **part of a compound modal predicate** in combination with modal verbs, modal phrases, verbs which denote modality, the combinations which have modal meaning, the construction **to be going to...**, which has often modal force, the phraseological combinations: **had better (best), had rather, would rather, would sooner, would have** which impart modality to the action expressed by the infinitive:

e.g. *She must speak now or not at all.*

*He wanted to tell her of the incident.*

*What are you going to do with it?*

The infinitive forms part of a **compound verbal aspect predicate** with verbs denoting the beginning or the duration of an action: **to begin, to continue, etc.** The construction **used to + infinitive** and **would + infinitive** which express repeated actions in the past also belong here:

e.g. *She suddenly began to speak.*

*I used to see you looking at the flowers and trees, and those ducks.*

### The Infinitive as an Object

The infinitive can have the function of an object after verbs, adjectives and adjectivized participles.

After **verbs** the infinitive may be either the only object of a verb or one of two objects.

1. Verbs that take only one object are: *to agree, to attempt, to care (to like), to choose, to claim, to deserve, to expect, to fail, to hope, to intend, to learn, to long, to love, to mean, to neglect, to prefer, to regret, to remember, to swear, to tend, etc.*

e.g. *He likes to imagine this.*

2. Verbs that take two objects, the first of which is a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case (denoting a person (or, very seldom, a non-person) who is to perform the required action) and the second an infinitive. These are the verbs of inducement: *to advise, to allow, to ask, to beg, to cause, to compel, to direct, to encourage, to force, to induce, to let, to make, to order, to permit, to recommend, to require, to tell, to urge.*

e.g. *I begged my aunt to protect me for my father's sake.*

The verb *to help* can be used either with one or with two objects:

e.g. *She helped (to) pack.*

*She helped me (to) make up my mind.*

The infinitive can have the function of an object after certain **adjectives (adjectivized participles)**, mostly used as predicatives. Semantically and structurally they fall into two groups.

1. The most frequent adjectives of the first group are: *anxious, apt, bound, careful, curious, determined, difficult, eager, easy, entitled, fit, free, hard, impatient, inclined, interested, keen, prepared, quick, ready, resolved, set, slow, worthy:*

e.g. *She's determined to go on.*

When used with these adjectives, the infinitive denotes actions either simultaneous with, or posterior to, the states expressed by the predicates, and cannot therefore be used in perfect forms.

2. The most frequent adjectives (adjectivized participles), of the second group are: *amused, annoyed, astonished, delighted, frightened, furious, glad, grateful, happy, pleased, proud, sorry, surprised, thankful.* They express certain psychological states which are the result of the action expressed by the infinitive object, so the latter therefore always denotes an action slightly preceding the state expressed by the predicate, and can have both non-perfect and perfect forms. The non-perfect forms are used to express immediate priority:

e.g. *I'm glad to see you* (I see you and that is why I am glad).

The perfect forms are used to show that there is a gap between the action and the resulting state:

e.g. *I am glad to have seen you.* (I saw/have seen you and that is why I am glad)

The infinitive used as an object can be preceded by the introductory object *it*. The introductory object is not translated into Ukrainian:

e.g. *He found it utterly impossible to leave the spot.*

### The Infinitive as an Attribute

The use of the infinitive as an attribute is far more extensive in English than in Ukrainian: in Ukrainian it modifies only abstract nouns, whereas in English it can modify:

1) both abstract (*time, hope, love, hate, etc.*) and class nouns (*a patient, a doctor, a sportsman, etc.*).

e.g. *I have not had time to examine this room yet.*

*She is not a woman to suffer in silence.*

2) substantivized quantitative adjectives (*much, little, a good deal, plenty, no less, enough, etc.*):

e.g. *It's too much to lose.*

3) indefinite and negative pronouns in *-body, -thing, -one* (*somebody, something, anybody, anything*).

e.g. *I have nobody to say a kind word to me.*

4) substantivized ordinal numerals (*the first, the second, etc.*).

e.g. *The Cunninghams were the first to arrive.*

5) substantivized adjectives *next* and *last*.

e.g. *He was the last to come.*

6) the noun-substitute *one*.

e.g. *I'm not the one to run about and discuss my affairs with other people.*

The Ukrainian equivalent for this construction is a whole attributive clause with a compound verbal predicate:

e.g. *It is the chance not to be missed.* – *Це шанс, який не слід втрачати.*

*It is an article to be typed at once.* – *Це стаття, яку треба негайно надрукувати.*

The most common form of the infinitive functioning as an attribute is the non-perfect common aspect active voice form and non-perfect common aspect passive voice form.



### The Infinitive as an Adverbial Modifier

The infinitive can be used as an **adverbial modifier of: purpose, consequence, attendant circumstances, condition, time, cause**. In all these functions a *to*-infinitive is used.

1. **The adverbial modifier of purpose.** In this function the action denoted by the infinitive is always hypothetical one following the action denoted by the predicate. As such it can be expressed only by non-perfect common aspect forms of the infinitive (both active and passive):

e.g. *Young Jolyon rose and held his hand **to help** his father up.*

*We stood in the rain and were taken out one at a time **to be questioned and shot.***

In this function a *to*-infinitive is used, but if there are two or more homogeneous adverbials of purpose joined by **and**, usually, though not necessarily, only the first of them has the particle **to**:

e.g. *Mary, looking pale and worried, left him **to go down to the kitchen and start breakfast.***

The infinitive of purpose may be preceded by the conjunction **in order to** or by limiting participle (**just, only**):

e.g. *One had to pass through the scullery **in order to get** from the kitchen into the yard.*

*He came down **only to say** good-night to you.*

2. **The adverbial modifier of consequence.** In this function the infinitive depends on: a) adjectives and adverbs modified by **too**; b) adjectives, adverbs and nouns modified by **enough**; c) adjectives modified by **so**, and nouns modified by **such**. In the last two cases the infinitive is introduced by **as**:

e.g. *He was **too tired to argue.** (= He was so tired, that is why he couldn't argue.)*

*The story was **too interesting to be passed over** lightly.*

*He's old **enough to learn** this. (= He is old enough, so he can learn this.)*

*I thought I liked Letty well **enough to marry** her. (= I liked Letty, so I wanted to marry her.)*

*She was so kind **as to accept** my proposal. (= She was so kind, therefore she accepted my proposal.)*

In all these cases the infinitive denotes an action, which would become or became possible (**enough, so, such**) or impossible (**too**) due to the degree of quality or quantity expressed in the words it refers to.

The position of the infinitive is fixed, it always follows the words it modifies. The form of the infinitive is non-perfect, common aspect, active or passive.

3. **The adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.** The infinitive used in this function shows what other actions take place at the same time as the action of the predicate. In this function the infinitive is sometimes preceded by the adverb **never** or particle **only**:

e.g. *She was driven away, **never to revisit** this neighbourhood.*

*I am sorry to have raised your expectations, Mr. Blake, **only to disappoint** them.*

The infinitive thus used always follows the predicate verb it modifies. As to its form, it is non-perfect, common aspect, active and passive voice forms.

4. **The adverbial modifier of condition.** The infinitive used in this function denotes an action which pre-conditions the action expressed by the predicate. The conditional meaning is often supported by the subjunctive mood form of the predicate denoting the consequence of this condition.

e.g. ***To look at Montmorency you would imagine that he was an angel sent upon earth.** (If you looked..., you would imagine...).*

The position of this infinitive varies; it may either precede or follow the predicate verb it modifies. The only possible form of the infinitive is the non-perfect, common aspect, active voice form.

5. **The adverbial modifier of time.** The infinitive used in this function denotes an action which marks out the moment of time up to which or at which the action of the predicate is performed. Very often it has a secondary meaning of condition.

e.g. *His father lived **to be ninety.** (lived till he was...)*

*Go away! I shudder **to see you here.** (I shudder when I see...)*

The position of the infinitive is fixed, it always follows the predicate it modifies. Its form is non-perfect, common aspect, active.

6. **The adverbial modifier of cause.** The infinitive used as an adverbial modifier of cause refers to a compound nominal predicate with the predicative expressed by an adjective, a noun, or a prepositional phrase denoting someone's qualities (intellectual qualities, morals).

The infinitive denotes an action which serves as a cause on which this or that characterization is based.

e.g. *She was silly **to come here.** (She came here, and it was silly of her.)*

*They are out of their minds **to have sent you here!** (They have sent you here, so one can think them out of their minds.)*

The infinitive in this function follows the predicate. All the forms of the infinitive are possible.

## PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE INFINITIVE

### The Objective with the Infinitive Construction

The Objective with the Infinitive Construction is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relations to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case:

e.g. *I see **the boy (him) run.***

The Objective with the Infinitive Construction is used in the following cases:

1. After **verbs of sense perception and observation** (*to hear, to feel, to see, to notice, to observe, to watch* and some others). In this case the only possible form of the infinitive is the non-perfect common aspect active voice form, used without particle **to**:

e.g. *I felt **him take hold** of my arm.*

*I'm glad **to hear you say so.***

2. After **verbs of mental activity** (*to expect, to know, to believe, to deny, to prove, to consider, to think, to understand, to suppose* and some others). In this case in the objective with the infinitive construction the verb *to be* is generally used. Here the infinitive is used in any form, though the non-perfect forms are the most frequent (always with the particle *to*):

e.g. *I believe **him to have** no conscience at all.*

*We expect **you to help** us.*

The use of this construction after most verbs of mental activity is more characteristic of literary than of colloquial style.

3. After **verbs of emotion** (*to like, to love, to hate, to dislike* and some others). Here non-perfect, common aspect forms of the *to*-infinitive are most usual:

e.g. *I hate **him to behave** like that.*

*I cannot bear **you to speak** of that.*

4. After **verbs of wish and intention** (*to want, to wish, to desire, to intend, to mean* and some others). After these verbs only non-perfect common aspect forms of the infinitive with particle *to* are used:

e.g. *Do you wish **me to be** at home earlier?*

*I want **you to come and dine** with me.*

**Also with the expressions** *I won't have..., would you have...?*

e.g. *Would you have **me wait**?*

*I won't have **you do** such things.*

5. After **verbs of declaring** (*to declare, to pronounce, to report*). Here non-perfect and perfect common aspect forms of the *to*-infinitive are most usual:

e.g. *I declare **you to be** out of your mind.*

6. After **verbs of permission, request, intention, order, compulsion** (*to allow, to order, to command, to compel, to force to persuade, to request, etc.*) The verbs *to have, to make and to let* take a bare infinitive:

e.g. *He ordered **the cabman to drive on.***

*I hope you'll have **him sign** the papers.*

7. The Objective with the Infinitive Construction also occurs after certain **verbs requiring a prepositional object** (*to count (up)on, to rely (up)on, to look for, to listen to, to wait for*):

e.g. *Can I count **upon you to help** me?*

*I rely **upon you not to go over** to the opposition.*

The construction is translated into Ukrainian mainly by an object clause where the subject corresponds to the nominal element and the predicate – to the infinitive. The Ukrainian object clause may be introduced by the conjunctions *що, як, щоб*.

After the verbs *to hear, to see, to watch* in translation into Ukrainian the object clause is introduced by the conjunction *як – чути, як; бачити, як*. After the verb *to notice* the Objective with the Infinitive Construction is usually translated by an object clause introduced by the conjunction *що – помітити, що*:

e.g. *But right now he wanted **her to stop** crying. – Але зараз він хотів, щоб вона перестала плакати.*

*He stood where he was and watched **her go.** – Він стояв не рухаючись, і дивився, як вона йшла геть.*

*He noticed **the girl steal** into the room. – Він помітив, що дівчина прокралась в кімнату.*

After the verbs *to make, to cause, to get, to compel, to force, to have* (the so-called causative verbs) the objective with the infinitive construction is rendered into Ukrainian by a noun (a pronoun) in the accusative case and an infinitive (if the infinitive in English construction is in the active voice):

e.g. *He made **me wait.** – Він примусив мене чекати.*

*The circumstances forced **him to leave** the town. – Обставини примусили його поїхати з міста.*

## The Subjective Infinitive Construction

The **Subjective Infinitive Construction** (or traditionally **the Nominative with the Infinitive Construction**) consists of a nominal element – a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case, and a verbal element – an infinitive which denotes a state or an action performed by a person or non-person expressed by the nominal element.

The Subjective Infinitive Construction is used in the following cases:

1. With **verbs expressing permission, request, intention, order, compulsion** (*to allow, to order, to command, to compel, to force to persuade, to request, etc.*). When used in the Passive Voice the verbs *to make* and *to let* are followed by a to-infinitive:

e.g. *He must be made not to tell the truth.*

2. With **verbs of sense perception and observation** (*to hear, to feel, to see, to notice, to observe, to watch* and some others): When in the passive form these verbs are followed by a to-infinitive. With this construction they express the idea of evidence of some fact. Here also belong some other verbs which in the passive voice express the idea of evidence (*to find, to discover*):

e.g. *They were seen to leave the house early in the morning.*

*The door-bell was heard to ring.*

3. With **verbs of mental perceptions** (*to expect, to know, to believe, to deny, to prove* and some others). All of them express some kind of expectation, of opinion or of attitude to the action expressed by the infinitive. With the verb *to expect* the infinitive in this construction can refer to the future:

e.g. *He is supposed to take part in this conference.*

4. With **verbs of saying and reporting** (*to say, to report, to declare* and some others). They denote different kinds of judgement or comment on the action (state) expressed by the infinitive.

e.g. *Your mother is said to know two foreign languages.*

*These islands are said to have been discovered as early as 1762.*

5. With such **verbs as to seem, to appear, to happen, to prove, to chance, to turn out**. Here the predicate is in the active voice.

e.g. *She turns out to know French.*

*Our emails happened not to have been received.*

6. Also with some **modal phrases to be sure, to be certain, to be likely, to be unlikely**. With these modal phrases the infinitive denotes an action referring to the future, so they cannot be followed by a perfect infinitive with reference to the past:

e.g. *He appears to be very strong.*

*He is sure to come back.*

The Subjective Infinitive Construction is usually rendered in Ukrainian by a subordinate object clause depending on a principal clause with an indefinite subject implied (неозначено-особове речення), such as *говорять, повідомляють, чекають, etc.*:

e.g. *He is said to be very ill.* – *Кажуть, що він дуже хворий.*

*She was not expected to reply, but she did.* – *Не чекали, що вона відповість, але вона відповіла.*

Sentences with modal phrases *to be sure (certain, likely, unlikely)* are rendered in Ukrainian by a simple sentence with a modal word:

e.g. *He is sure to come.* – *Він обов'язково прийде.*

## The For-to-Infinitive Construction

In the **For-to-Infinitive Construction** the infinitive (usually an infinitive phrase) is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case introduced by the preposition **for** (that explains the name of the construction). The construction is used where the doer of the action (or the bearer of the state), expressed by the infinitive, is different from that of the finite verb (the predicate):

e.g. *It is necessary for you to go there.*

*It is high time for them to return.*

The For-to-Infinitive construction has the same functions as a single infinitive, though with some restrictions.

1. **Subject**. The for-to-infinitive construction in this function occurs in sentences with the introductory **it**, though it is occasionally placed at the head of the sentence:

e.g. *For you to come here is impossible.*

*It's extremely funny for me to be consoling you.*

2. **Predicative or part of a predicative**. In this function the construction is mostly used with link verb **to be**:

e.g. *The house was easy for us to find.*

3. **A complex object**. The construction functions as object of both verbs and adjectives:

e.g. *She had wanted to wait for the moon to rise.*

4. **A complex attribute**:

e.g. *Eppie was a suitable child for them to take into their home.*

5. A **complex adverbial modifier of purpose and consequence**. In the function of the adverbial modifier of consequence the construction is chiefly preceded by either the adverb **enough** or the adverb **too**:

e.g. *I left something under your door for you to find it.*

*But five minutes was enough for them to understand one another.*

*His home was too far west for anyone to come to meet him.*

The For-to-Infinitive construction is translated into Ukrainian by either a subordinate clause or an infinitive:

e.g. **For Mother to ask Philip for mercy** meant that she was upset. – *Попросити мамі співчуття у Філіпа, означало, що вона була засмучена.*

*It is useless for me to interfere.* – *Мені не варто втручатися.*

*The house was easy for us to find.* – *Нам було легко знайти цей будинок.*

## 11.2. THE GERUND

### The Verbal and Nominal Characteristics of the Gerund

The gerund is a descendant of the Old English verbal noun and the present participle; hence its double nature and its noun and verb characteristics.

#### The Verbal Characteristics of the Gerund

The gerund has the following verb-characteristics:

1. The gerund has tense and voice distinctions (see the table below).

	Voice	Active	Passive
Tense			
Non-perfect		writing	being written
Perfect		having written	having been written

As we see, it has tense forms – **non-perfect** and **perfect**. The tenses of the gerund comprise relative time indication.

**The non-perfect gerund** expresses the action which is simultaneous with the action of the finite form of the verb in the sentence:

e.g. *...she enjoyed sitting in the sun.*

**The non-perfect gerund** may refer to the future when it depends on such verbs as *to intend, to insist, etc.*:

e.g. *I intend going there tomorrow.*

**The perfect gerund** indicates that the action of the gerund precedes the action of the finite verb in the sentence:

e.g. *He was conscious of having acted very fairly.*

**The non-perfect gerund** is used instead of **the perfect gerund** after the prepositions *on (upon)* and *after* because the meaning of the preposition itself indicates that the action of the gerund precedes that of the finite verb:

e.g. *...my mother, after vainly trying to restrain herself, began to cry.*

But **the perfect gerund** may also be found after *on* and *after*:

e.g. *My bed at night was under another haystack, where I rested comfortably, after having washed my blistered feet in a stream, and dressed them as well as I was able, with some cool leaves.*

**The non-perfect gerund** is also often used after the verb *to remember* to indicate an action prior to the action of the finite verb:

e.g. *... I can still remember running down the sandhills in the morning.*

But also: *He did not remember ever having been in that room.*

The gerund of transitive verbs expresses voice:

e.g. *The rain showed no sign of stopping.*

*The need of being loved, the strongest need in poor Maggie's nature, began to wrestle with her pride.*

As the Passive Voice is of later development, we still find in Modern English instances when the active form of the gerund is passive in meaning; those constructions are survivals of the time when one and the same form was used with active and passive meaning.

The gerund is always used in the active form with passive meaning after the verbs *to need, to want, to require, to deserve*; also after the adjective *worth*:

e.g. *The car needs repairing* (=being repaired).

*The house wants painting* (=being painted).

2. In common with the finite forms of the verb, the gerund is modified by an adverb:  
e.g. *John had a passion for birds, and an aptitude for **sitting** very still to watch them.*
3. It may have an object; if the verb is transitive, it has a direct object:  
e.g. *She began **clipping** the flowers and **arranging** them in a vase.*

### The Nominal Characteristics of the Gerund

As a noun, the gerund is used as a subject, object (direct or prepositional) and a predicative of the sentence. When used as an attribute or adverbial modifier, the gerund also clearly shows its nominal character, it is always preceded by a preposition, which is a formal mark of the noun:

- e.g. ***Smoking** is forbidden here.* (subject)
- She enjoyed **sitting** in the sun.* (direct object)
- Excuse me **for interrupting** you.* (prepositional object)
- She has a habit of **interrupting** people.* (attribute)
- On coming home** she went to bed at once.* (adverbial modifier)
- Your duty is **cleaning** the flat.* (predicative)

### The Functions of the Gerund in the Sentence

#### The Gerund as a Subject

As a rule the gerund as a subject stands in front position.

e.g. ***Swimming** against the current was difficult.*

***Learning** rules without examples is useless.*

When the subject of the sentence is a gerundial phrase, it is sometimes placed after the predicate. Then the sentence begins with the anticipatory *it*, the meaning of the subject is accentuated and the predicate is a phrase such as *to be (of) no use (no good, useless), to make all the (no) difference*.

e.g. ***It** had been just splendid **meeting you here**.*

**Note:** The gerund may be used as a subject in sentences with the introductory *there*. In this case the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun *no*. Such sentences are usually emphatic.

e.g. ***There's no denying** the fact, he says.*

#### The Gerund as a Predicative

In this function the gerund may express either state or identity. In the second case the predicative of identity reveals the meaning of the subject.

e.g. *Her first job was **getting** him tea.*

*I don't feel like **going** for a walk.*

#### The Gerund as Part of Compound Verbal Predicate

With verbs and verbal phrases denoting modality (*to intend, to try, to attempt, and with can't help*) the gerund forms part of a **compound verbal modal predicate**:

e.g. *We **intended going** to Switzerland, and **climbing** Mount Blanc.*

With verbs denoting the beginning, the duration, or the end of an action (*to begin, to start, to continue, to go on, to keep on, to finish, to give up, to leave off, etc.*) the gerund forms a part of a **compound verbal aspect predicate**:

e.g. *A cuckoo **began calling** from a thorn tree.*

*She **went on sketching**, I **went on thinking**.*

#### The Gerund as a Direct Object

In this function the gerund follows a number of monotransitive verbs, some of which take only the gerund (*to admit, to appreciate, to avoid, to deny, to enjoy, to excuse, to fancy, to mention, to mind, to need, to practise, to put off, to recollect, to resent, to resist, to risk, to suggest, to understand, etc.*), while others may be followed either by gerund or by the infinitive (*to like, to dislike, to have, to plan, to prefer, to forget, to remember, to regret, can't bear, can't afford, etc.*).

e.g. *Avoid **making** mistakes.*

*This bookshelf needs **mending**.*

*Excuse my **interrupting** you.*

*I forget **doing** it (= that I did it).*

*I forget **to do** it (= that I must do it).*

*I remember **going** there (= that I went there).*

*I remember **to go** there (= that I must go there).*

The gerund may function as an object to the adjectives *busy, worth*:

*Ada was **busy writing**.*

### The Gerund as a Prepositional Object

In this function the gerund may follow:

a) monotransitive prepositional verbs (*to agree to, to consist in, to hear of, to insist on, to think of, to persist in, to count on, to depend on, to rely on, to succeed in, to look forward to, to object to, etc.*).

e.g. *My parents insist on my staying there.*

b) ditransitive verbs taking a direct and a prepositional object (*to accuse of, to suspect of, to prevent from, to stop from, to assist in, to help in, to thank for, to blame for, to punish for, to sentence for, etc.*).

e.g. *I had no difficulty in remembering which track to take.*

c) adjectives and stative verbs (*to be afraid of, to be aware of, to be capable of, to be fond of, to be proud of, to be sure of, to be responsible for, to be keen on, etc.*).

e.g. *He was afraid of being noticed.*

d) participle II, generally used as a predicative (*to be accustomed to, to be used to, to be absorbed in, to be engrossed in, to be (dis)pleased with, to be surprised at, to be tired of, etc.*).

e.g. *He was surprised at my being late.*

### The Gerund as an Attribute

In this function the gerund modifies nouns, mainly abstract ones. It is always preceded by a preposition. In the majority of cases it is the preposition *of* (*chance of, custom of, fear of, feeling of, gift of, habit of, hope of, idea of, importance of, means of, method of, necessity of, possibility of, right of, sign of, sound of, trouble of, way of, etc.*).

e.g. *We have no chance of seeing him today.*

In some cases the choice of the preposition depends on the requirements of the modified noun (*apology for, excuse for, explanation for, instruction for, plan for, preparation for, reason for; difficulty in, experience in, harm in, interest in*).

When it modifies an abstract noun, the gerund is often used to reveal its meaning, expressing the same notion in a more detailed way. In this case the gerund functions as a particular kind of attribute, called apposition. Thus in: *There is a chance of finding him at home* the gerundial phrase explains what the chance consists in.

When a gerund modifies a concrete noun it is preceded by the preposition *for* and the whole gerundial phrase as attribute expresses the purpose or destination of the thing mentioned: *The barometer is an instrument for measuring the pressure of the air.*

### The Gerund as an Adverbial Modifier

As an adverbial modifier the gerund is always used with a preposition. Owing to the variety of prepositions which may precede the gerund in this function, it may have different meanings.

1. **The adverbial modifier of time.** In this function the gerund may characterize the main verb from the point of view of **priority, simultaneity, or posteriority**. It may also indicate **the starting point of the action**. The prepositions used are *on, after, in, at, before, since*.

e.g. *On arriving at the hotel he phoned her.*

*Think everything over before answering.*

2. **The adverbial modifier of reason (cause).** As the adverbial modifier of cause the gerund is introduced by the prepositions *because of, for, from, for fear of, on account of, owing to, through*.

e.g. *I feel better for having spent a good deal of my time abroad.*

*He was sitting motionlessly for fear of waking her.*

3. **The adverbial modifier of manner.** In this function the gerund generally occurs with the prepositions *by, in* or *without*.

e.g. *She improved her pronunciation by reading aloud.*

4. **The adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.** In this function the gerund requires the preposition *without, besides, instead of*.

e.g. *He left without saying "good-bye".*

5. **The adverbial modifier of concession.** As the adverbial modifier of concession the gerund is preceded by the preposition *in spite of*.

e.g. *In spite of learning lessons she went for a walk.*

6. **The adverbial modifier of condition.** While performing this function the gerund takes the prepositions *without, but for, in case of*.

e.g. *He has no right to come bothering you and papa without being invited.*

*In case of being invited I'll accept the invitation.*

7. **The adverbial modifier of purpose.** In this function the gerund is introduced by the preposition *for*, though this pattern is rather rare.

e.g. *One side of the gallery was used for dancing.*

The above examples show that the gerund preceded by one and the same preposition may be used in different functions. The most common functions of the gerund are those of adverbial modifier of time, manner, and attendant circumstances.

### PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS (COMPLEXES) WITH THE GERUND

Like all the verbals the gerund can form predicative constructions, i.e. constructions in which the verbal element expressed by the gerund is in predicate relation to the nominal element expressed by a noun or pronoun. The nominal element of the construction can be expressed in different ways.

1. If it denotes a living being it may be expressed:

a) by a noun in the genitive (possessive) case or by a possessive pronoun.

e.g. *Do you mind **my smoking**.*

*I don't object to **Helen's going** there.*

b) by a noun in the common case.

e.g. *I remember **my brother-in-law going** for a short sea trip once for the benefit of his health.*

**Note:** In Modern English there are two parallel constructions of the type: *Fancy **David's courting Emily!*** and *Fancy **David courting Emily!*** They may be used indifferently, but sometimes there is a slight difference in meaning: in the first example the action (the verbal element of the construction) is emphasized, whereas in the second the doer of the action (the nominal element of the construction) is emphasized.

2. If the nominal element of the construction denotes a lifeless thing, it is expressed by a noun in the common case (such nouns, as a rule, are not used in the genitive case) or by a possessive pronoun.

e.g. *I said something about **my clock being** slow.*

*Peggoty spoke of my room, and of **its being** ready for me.*

3. The nominal element of the construction can also be expressed by a pronoun which has no case distinctions, such as **all, this, that, both, each, something**.

e.g. *Again Michael was conscious of **something deep and private stirring** within himself.*

Gerundial constructions may have **the function of a complex subject, predicative, object, attribute or adverbial modifier** (since the functions of these constructions are identical with those of a single gerund and gerundial phrases we shall not treat them separately).

e.g. ***Jim's coming** to that fishing village was a blessing.* (complex subject)

*Will you excuse **my being** late?* (complex object)

*There was little likelihood **of his meeting** anybody at that time.* (complex attribute)

*How did you get out **without his seeing** you?* (complex adverbial modifier)

A gerundial construction used as subject is often introduced by an anticipatory *it*:

e.g. ***It is not worth while your going** there today.*

***It's not much good my coming**, is it?*

### Rendering of the Gerund into Ukrainian

The gerund may be rendered in Ukrainian **by an infinitive, a noun, or a whole subordinate clause:**

e.g. *They got into the habit **of going** to the cinema together.* – Вони звикли **ходити** разом у кіно.

*Learning rules without examples is useless.* – **Заучування правил (заучувати правила) без прикладів – марна справа.**

*Don't you remember **meeting** me in Lviv?* – **Хіба ви не пам'ятаєте, що зустрічали мене у Львові?**

When the gerund is used as an adverbial modifier it is often rendered in Ukrainian by “дієприслівник”.

e.g. ***On returning** home I saw the doctor there.* – **Повернувшись** додому, я побачив там лікаря.

Complexes with the gerund are usually rendered in Ukrainian by whole subordinate clauses, introduced by **те, що; тим, що; як; після того, як**, etc.

e.g. *You may rely on **my setting** matters right.* – Ви можете розраховувати **на те, що я все владнаю.**

*Excuse **my interrupting** you.* – **Пробачте, що я вас перебиваю.**

*I insist on **your going** there immediately.* – Я наполягаю на **тому, щоб ви пішли туди негайно.**

### 11.3. THE PARTICIPLE

The participle is a non-finite form of the verb which has a verbal and adjectival or an adverbial character.

There are two participles in English: **Participle I** (traditionally called **the Present Participle**) and **Participle II** (traditionally called **the Past Participle**).

#### PARTICIPLE I

**Participle I** is formed by adding the suffix **-ing** to the stem of the verb. The following spelling rules should be observed.

1. If a verb ends in mute **-e**, the mute **e** is dropped before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to give – giving*.
2. If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a vowel rendering a short stressed sound, the final consonant is doubled before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to run – running, to forget – forgetting*.

The final letter **-l** is doubled if it is preceded by a vowel letter rendering a short vowel sound, stressed or unstressed: *to expel – expelling, to travel – travelling*.

3. A final **-y** is not changed before adding the suffix **-ing**: *to cry – crying, to deny – denying*.

4. The verbs **to die, to lie, to tie** form Participle I in the following way: **dying, lying, tying**.

#### The Verbal, Adjectival and Adverbial Characteristics of Participle I

##### The Verbal Characteristics of Participle I

The verbal character of participle I can be manifested morphologically and syntactically.

**Morphologically** the verbal character of participle I is manifested in the categories of voice and tense

The tense-forms of the Participle denote that the action of the participle is either simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb, prior or posterior to it.

**The non-perfect form of participle I** usually expresses that the action of the participle is **simultaneous with the action of the finite form of the verb** (in the present, past or future).

e.g. *I see Mr. Rochester **entering**.*

*The captain walked up and down **looking** straight before him.*

Participle I non-perfect may express present time absolutely without any reference to the time indicated by the finite verb:

e.g. *The tower **looming** in the distance was built in the XV century.*

Participle I non-perfect of terminative verbs such as **verbs of motion, of sense perception** and the verbs of **certain specific actions associated with motion** used in the function of an adverbial modifier of time usually indicates that the action of the participle is prior to the action of the verb-predicate. In these cases the action of the verb-predicate closely follows that of the participle:

e.g. ***Arriving** at home and **going** upstairs, we found that my guardian was out.*

When participle I non-perfect of a terminative verb expresses priority, it is rendered in Ukrainian by дієприслівник доконаного виду.

e.g. ***Passing** into the ante-room, he sat down on the edge of a chair. – **Пройшовши** до передпокою, він сів на край стільця.*

Participle I non-perfect always expresses simultaneousness when it is introduced by the conjunctions *when* and *while*:

e.g. ***While emptying** the buckets at the back of the house he could hear an animated conversation in progress within-doors.*

**The perfect form of participle I** denotes that the action of the participle precedes the action of the finite form of the verb in the sentence:

e.g. *One day he came in **having just received** some letters.*

The perfect participle I of the terminative verbs is used when there is a lapse of time between the two actions, or when the action denoted by the participle is durative:

e.g. ***Seeing** Jane, I rushed to greet her. – **Having seen** the girl only once, I didn't recognize her.*

Participle I perfect is rendered in Ukrainian by дієприслівник доконаного виду:

e.g. *One day he came in **having just received** some letters. – **Одного дня він прийшов, щойно отримавши** декілька листів.*

**Syntactically** the verbal character of participle I is manifested in its combinability. Thus, like the other non-finites, it may combine with **a noun or a pronouns direct, indirect or prepositional object**.

e.g. *She heard Justine **starting** a fire in the kitchen.*



## The Adjectival and Adverbial Features of Participle I

The adjectival and adverbial features of participle I are manifested in its syntactical functions as an attribute and an adverbial modifier.

As an adjective participle I is connected with a noun-word in the sentence, thus performing the function of an attribute. In its attributive function participle I corresponds to the Ukrainian attributive subordinate clause:

e.g. *The rising sun.* – *Сонце, що сходить.*

But as the English participle I (as all modern English attributes) has lost its forms of agreement with the noun with which it is connected, and is no longer formally bound to that noun, it is sometimes attracted by the verb, thus assuming the force of an adverbial modifier. In such case it corresponds to the Ukrainian дієприкслівник:

e.g. *Having finished my lessons I went home.* – *Закінчивши уроки, я пішов додому.*

*Having no time I couldn't get there.* – *Не маючи часу, я не міг ніти туди.*

Non-perfect participle I active has synonymous adjectives formed from the same verb stem, such as *resulting* – *resultant*, *convulsing* – *convulsive*, *abounding* – *abundant*, *deceiving* – *deceptive*. Some participles border on adjectives when used as attributes or predicatives, and have qualitative adjectives as synonyms: *amusing* – *funny*, *boring* – *dull*, *deafening* – (*very*) *loud*. There are some deverbal adjectives that have completely lost their meaning: *interesting*, *charming*.

When it loses its verbal character, participle I may be modified by adverbs of degree used with adjectives, such as *very*, *so*, *too*, as in *very* (*greatly*, *exceedingly*, etc.) *amusing*, *too boring*, *most exciting*.

Like an adjective, participle I forms adverbs with the suffix *-ly*: *laughingly*, *jokingly*, *surprisingly*, *admiringly*, *appealingly*, *feelingly*.

## The Functions of Participle I in the Sentence

Participle I performs the syntactical functions characteristic of the adjective and the adverb. It may be used 1) alone: *He drank his coffee standing*; 2) as headword of a participial phrase: *There are some people waiting for you*.

### Participle I as an Attribute

This function is peculiar to non-perfect participle I active. In this function it corresponds to the Ukrainian subordinate clause.

e.g. *The fence surrounding the garden is newly painted.* – *Огорожа, що оточує садок, щойно пофарбована.*

Non-perfect participle I passive is very seldom used as an attribute.

e.g. *The book being discussed in Room 25 now is a new novel of this young writer.*

Participle I perfect active and passive is not used attributively.

When a participial phrase is used as an attribute it follows the modified noun. Its verbal character is evident from its verbal combinability and sometimes from the passive form itself. A participial phrase may be 1) non-detached or 2) detached:

e.g. *We went along the street leading to the seashore.*

*Once a month Tommy, arriving separately, came in for a brief drink.*

A detached participial phrase is set off from the modified noun by a comma (or commas) in writing and by a pause (or pauses) in speech.

When a single participle is used as an attribute, it generally functions as a premodifier. Here we usually find only participle I active of intransitive verbs. Its verbal character is clear from the processual meaning of the verb itself: *living people*, *a sleeping dog*.

### Participle I as Part of a Compound Verbal Predicate

As a rule non-perfect participle is a part of a compound verbal predicate. Within this type of predicate the participle follows verbs of sense perceptions in the passive voice, such as *to see*, *to hear*, *to feel*, *to find*, *to catch*, also some causative verbs, such as *to keep*, *to leave*.

e.g. *Presently other footsteps were heard crossing the room below.*

Participle I non-perfect of verbs expressing motion such as *to run*, *to dance*, *to pour*, etc. combined with the verb *to come* in the past tense forms a special type of a compound verbal predicate. The participle is the notional part of the predicate denoting the action performed by the subject; the lexical meaning of the verb *to come* is greatly weakened. In some cases *to come* serves to impart perfective meaning to the action denoted by the participle:

e.g. *The little maid came running down.* (= збігла)

*Peggoty came running in.* (= вбігла)

### Participle I as a Predicative

In the position of predicative only non-perfect participle I active occurs, its adjectival character being predominant. Although keeping the form of the participle, it is treated as an adjective or an adjectivized participle, or a deverbal adjective.

The participle in this position gives the qualitative assessment of the subject (or the object, in the case of the objective predicative).

e.g. *The story is **amusing**. – I find the story **amusing**.*

The verbal traits of the participle are not manifested in these examples at all. In many cases participle I may have a synonymous adjective (*deafening – loud, amusing – funny*).

However, these *-ing* forms have one feature that keeps them within the sphere of participles, viz., their active meaning as opposed to the passive meaning of participle II (*amusing – amused, surprising – surprised*).

Participle I as predicative may be used with other link verbs, in which case it may keep its verbal character, as in:

e.g. *Isadora remained **standing**.*

### Participle I as Parenthesis

Participle I as parenthesis forms the headword of a participial phrase, the meaning of which is a comment upon the contents of the whole sentence or sometimes part of it. The commenting may take the form of a logical restriction or personal attitude. Here we find such participial phrases as *generally (properly, roughly, legally, strictly) speaking, putting it mildly, judging by (from), allowing for, taking everything into consideration*, etc.

e.g. ***Generally speaking**, I don't like boys.*

***Judging by appearances**, he is a rich man.*

### Participle I as an Adverbial Modifier

All the four forms of participle I can function as adverbial modifiers of different semantic types (time, reason, manner, attendant circumstances, condition, concession, comparison).

1. **The adverbial modifier of time.** In this function the non-perfect participle I active may denote a simultaneous or a prior action. When prior action is meant a participle of the verbs of motion (*to come, to walk, to go*), position in space (*to sit, to lie, to stand*), sense perception (*to see, to hear, to look out*) is used.

e.g. ***Coming near** I found the door slightly ajar.*

***Getting up**, I ran impulsively across the room and flung my arms round her neck.*

If the action expressed by non-perfect participle I active is simultaneous with action expressed by a finite verb conjunctions *when* and *while* are used.

e.g. *He showed enthusiasm **when talking** about his books.*

*While **waiting** for the water to boil, he held his face over the stove.*

**Note:** Non-perfect participle I of the verb *to be* is not used as an adverbial modifier of time. Clauses of the type *Коли він був дитиною ...*, *Коли він був в Лондоні...* may be translated *When a boy...*, *When he was a boy...*, *When in London...*, *When he was in London...*

Perfect participle I as adverbial modifier of time, always denotes a prior action.

e.g. ***Having closed** the drawing-room door on him, Isabel awaited a little, absorbed in her own thoughts.*

***Having reached** the classroom, she became the object of many questions.*

2. **The adverbial modifier of reason.** As an adverbial modifier of reason participle I can be expressed by all the four forms. The most frequently used non-perfect participles I are those of verbs denoting mental perception and emotions (*knowing, realizing, remembering, expecting, hoping, fearing*) also the participles *being* and *hearing*.

e.g. *It **being** a hot day, and all of us thirsty, she suggested that we should have a glass of beer.*

*I thought I should sleep well **being tired**; but I didn't.*

Another characteristic feature of participles functioning as adverbials of reason consists in their combinability with negation.

e.g. *Even then he hadn't been able to watch her, **not having eyes in the back of his head**.*

3. **The adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.** The meaning of attendant circumstances is one of the most characteristic of Participle I. It is considered to be the main grammatical meaning of non-perfect participle I. Participle I denotes some action or event parallel to the action or state denoted by the main verb.

e.g. *Deb was silent, **fidgiting with the spoon in her saucer**.*

4. **The adverbial modifier of manner.** Participle I as an adverbial modifier of manner is akin to an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances. The difference is that an adverbial of manner characterizes the action of the main verb.

e.g. *She balanced herself on the curbstone and began to walk carefully, **setting heel to toe, heel to toe, and counting her steps**.*

5. **The adverbial modifier of comparison.** As an adverbial modifier of comparison participle I is always preceded by the conjunctions *as if, as though*.

e.g. *I stood on the highest hill looking into the sky as if searching for some answer.*

6. **The adverbial modifier of concession.** When participle I is used as an adverbial modifier of concession the idea of concession may be understood from the relationship between the modified and modifying parts of the sentence. However the conjunction *though* makes the semantic relationship clearer.

e.g. *Somebody was waiting: a man who, though moving irregularly, was making quite a speed in my direction.*

7. **The adverbial modifier of condition.** Participle I as an adverbial of condition is recognized by its syntactical surroundings. It is either the subjunctive mood or the future tense form which allows a participial phrase to function as an adverbial modifier of condition.

e.g. *She ought to be there and her absence might be resented, but being there she wouldn't know what to say.*  
(...якби вона там була...)

## PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH PARTICIPLE I

Participle I may function as part of a predicative construction, entering into a predicative relationship with some nominal element and forming a syntactical unit with it.

### The Objective Participial Construction

The objective participial construction consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and participle I forming a syntactical complex, the two main components of which are in predicative relationship. Since the construction always follows transitive verbs, its syntactical function is that of a complex object. Thus in its meaning it corresponds to a subordinate clause and is usually translated into Ukrainian by a subordinate object clause.

e.g. *I saw John (him) playing tennis.* – *Я бачив, як Джон (він) грає в теніс.*

The nominal element usually refers to a person or a thing different from that denoted by the subject of the sentence. If it refers to the same person as the subject, a reflexive pronoun is to be used, as in: *He heard himself uttering the words.* The construction is generally used with non-perfect participle I active.

The objective participial construction is used:

1. With verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to notice, to observe, to perceive*)).

e.g. *He listened to his uncle talking to him.*

2. With various verbs of causative meaning (*to have, to get, to keep, to leave, to start, to set*)

e.g. *Don't keep me waiting. I'm in a hurry.* – *Не примушуйте мене чекати. Я поспішаю.*

3. With verbs expressing wish (*to want, to wish, to desire*).

e.g. *I don't want you talking to me.* – *Я не хочу, щоб ви зі мною розмовляли.*

### The Subjective Participial Construction

The subjective participial construction is a construction in which participle I is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case, which is the subject of the sentence.

In rendering this construction into Ukrainian a complex sentence is generally used. Its principal clause is called *неозначено-особове* in Ukrainian syntax.

The peculiarity of this construction is that it does not serve as one part of the sentence: one of its component parts has the function of the subject, the other forms part of a compound verbal predicate.

This construction is chiefly used after verbs of sense perception.

e.g. *At the same moment the carriage was heard rolling up the gravel-walk.*

### The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction

This construction consists of two interdependent elements, nominal and verbal, which are in a predicative relation. The nominal element is a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case (the noun or pronoun is not the subject of the sentence). The verbal element is participle I in any of its forms.

Unlike the objective participial construction it does not depend on a verb. The nominal and the verbal elements make a syntactical complex functioning as a detached adverbial modifier:

1. It may be an adverbial modifier of time.

In this case the construction is translated by a corresponding subordinate clause.

e.g. *The work being finished, the two girls brushed their dresses and went into the workshop.* – *Коли робота була закінчена, дівчата почистили сукні і зайшли в майстерню.*

2. An adverbial modifier of cause (reason):

Sentences with a nominative absolute participial construction as an adverbial of cause (reason) are translated by complex sentences with the corresponding subordinate clauses.

e.g. *I was nervous, there being something to report.* – *Я нервувався, оскільки було про що повідомити.*

As well as in sentences with participial phrases causal and temporal meanings may be combined, as in:

e.g. *Ice having thus been broken, the two former rivals grew still more affectionate.*

### 3. An adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances:

A nominative absolute participial construction of attendant circumstances usually stands in postposition, and is widely used in literature. It is translated into Ukrainian by a coordinate clause.

e.g. *We were both standing leaning against the mantelpiece, she admiring her fan of blotting paper, I staring at her.* – *Ми обоє стояли біля каміну; вона милувалась віялом із промокального паперу, а я дивився на неї.*

4. **An adverbial modifier of condition.** In this function the Nominative Absolute Participial Construction occurs but seldom and is almost exclusively used with the participles *permitting* and *failing*.

e.g. *Weather permitting we shall start tomorrow.*

## PARTICIPLE II

Participle II is a non-finite form of the verb with verbal and adjectival features.

### The Verbal and Adjectival Features of Participle II

Participle II stands apart from the other non-finites, in that it does not possess their morphological categories. Participle II has no tense forms. Nevertheless, being a verb form, it possesses the potential verbal meanings of voice and aspect, which depend upon the meaning of the verb it is formed from and which are realized in the context. The main meanings of participle II are those of a state as a result of some action and an action itself. Participle II of transitive verbs, when it is not part of a perfect form, is always passive in meaning. Having a passive meaning participle II of transitive verbs is opposed to common participle I active: *asking* – *asked*, *loving* – *loved*, *seeing* – *seen*, *writing* – *written*, *teaching* – *taught*, *watching* – *watched*, etc.

The verbal character of participle II is manifested in its combinability. Thus participle II of transitive verbs easily combines with an agentive by-object.

e.g. *Jane entered the room followed by her brother.*

Participles II of phrasal verbs retain their composite structure: *a boy brought up in a teacher's family.*

Participles II of prepositional transitive verbs are followed by the appropriate prepositions: *a book often asked for*, *the article referred to*, *a man much spoken of*.

The adjectival nature of participle II manifests itself in its function in the sentence, which is usually that of either **attribute** or **predicative**. It may combine with adverbs of degree peculiar to adjectives, such as *very*, *too*, *slightly*, *so*, *much*, *more*, as in:

e.g. *I am very pleased with you.*

Similar to adjectives and participle I, participle II may form adverbs by adding the suffix *-ly*: *fixedly*, *unhurriedly*, *admittedly*.

### The Functions of Participle II in the Sentence

#### Participle II as an Attribute

As an attribute participle II usually functions either as premodifier when it stands alone (a) or forms a very short participial phrase containing an adverb (b). The verbal character of the participle in the first case is made clear only by its lexical meaning:

e.g. *First of all she went to the bombed building.*

*It was a neatly written letter.*

As a postmodifier participle II manifests its verbal character more explicitly, even when it stands alone. It may be accompanied by a preposition, by an agentive by-object, an adverb and prepositional phrases as adverbial modifiers.

e.g. *Things seen are mightier than things heard.*

*These are cities inhabited by their creators.*

When participle II or a participial phrase is detached, its position is not fixed. It may occupy the initial position, the mid-position or the final position in the sentence.

e.g. *Seen now, in a broad daylight, she looked tall, fair and shapely.*

Detached attributes are separated from the noun by a comma in writing and by a pause in speech. They are confined to literary style only.

e.g. *The housekeeper had come out of the room, attracted by the violent ringing of the bell.*

### Participle II as an Adverbial Modifier

The adverbial function and meaning of participle II can be seen only from the general meaning of the sentence. Participle II is preceded by a conjunction, which indicates the type of the adverbial modifier.

1. **The adverbial modifier of time**, usually with the conjunction *when* or *until*.

e.g. *When questioned Annie had implied vaguely that she was anxious about her brother-in-law.*

2. **The adverbial modifier of reason**.

e.g. *Deprived of his wife and son by the Spanish adventure, Jolyon found the solitude intolerable.*

3. **The adverbial modifier of condition**, mostly with the conjunction *if* or *unless*.

e.g. *John will speak for hours, unless interrupted.*

4. **The adverbial modifier of concession**, with the conjunction *though* or *although*.

e.g. *Her spirit, though crushed, was not broken.*

5. **The adverbial modifier of comparison**, with the conjunction *as if* or *as though*.

e.g. *As if torn with inner conflict and indecision, he cried.*

### PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH PARTICIPLE II

Participle II forms the second (verbal) element of **the Objective with the Participle Construction** and of **the Absolute Participial Construction** in two variants: non-prepositional and prepositional.

#### The Objective Participial Construction with Participle II.

The objective participial construction with participle II consists of a noun in the common case or a personal pronoun in the objective case and participle II forming a syntactical complex, in which the two components are in a predicative relationship. The construction functions as a complex object to transitive verbs:

1) **of a causative meaning: to have, to get, to make**. In this case the construction shows that the action expressed by the participle is performed at the request of the person denoted by the subject of the sentence. Thus *I had the piano tuned* means *I made someone tune the piano*. Sentences with causative verbs are usually translated into Ukrainian by simple sentences.

e.g. *He had several bottles of wine brought.* – *Йому принесли декілька пляшок вина.*

2) **of physical perception: to see, to hear, to feel, to find**.

e.g. *The dog heard his name pronounced through the open door.*

*You will probably find your sister grown, Bella.*

3) **of wish: to wish, to want, to like, to prefer**.

e.g. *The governor wants it done quickly.*

*We prefer the letters answered by the chief.*

#### The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction with Participle II

The construction consists of the nominal component (a noun or a pronoun) and participle II which form a syntactical complex, the nominal component and the participle being in predicative relation. The nominative absolute participial construction with participle II has the syntactical **function of a detached adverbial modifier of:**

1) **attendant circumstances:**

e.g. *One morning he stood in front of the tank, his nose almost pressed to the glass.*

2) **manner:**

e.g. *He sat on the sofa, his legs crossed.*

3) **time:**

e.g. *The duty completed, he had three months' leave.*

4) **reason:**

e.g. *We began to talk, but my attention distracted by my surroundings, I took small notice of him.*

5) **condition:**

e.g. *He was a gentleman, but he was passionate, the cup once sipped, would he consent to put it down?*

#### The Prepositional Absolute Construction with Participle II

The construction differs from the nominative absolute participial construction with participle II in that it is introduced by the preposition *with*, its nominal element hardly ever presented by a pronoun; it is more closely related to the predicate verb and seldom set off by a comma.

The main syntactical function of the construction is that of an adverbial modifier of manner or attendant circumstances.

e.g. *It is unhealthy to sleep with the windows shut.*

**PART II.**  
**PRACTICE EXERCISES**

**1. THE VERB TO BE**

**Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with am, is or are.**

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ a student. 2. I \_\_\_\_\_ a student. 3. We \_\_\_\_\_ students. 4. His father \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor.  
5. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ your mother a teacher? – Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_. 7. They \_\_\_\_\_  
at home now. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ they at school now? – No, they \_\_\_\_\_ not. 9. I \_\_\_\_\_ twenty. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ you  
parents at home now? – Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden. 11. My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ a pensioner.  
12. \_\_\_\_\_ these girls students? – Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_. 13. Her mother \_\_\_\_\_ not a doctor, she \_\_\_\_\_ a  
nurse. 14. You \_\_\_\_\_ an actress, as far as I remember. 15. My husband \_\_\_\_\_ an actor. 16. \_\_\_\_\_ your  
children at school? – No, they \_\_\_\_\_ not. They \_\_\_\_\_ at home. 17. This \_\_\_\_\_ my friend. His name  
\_\_\_\_\_ Nick. 18. How old \_\_\_\_\_ she? – She \_\_\_\_\_ five. 19. How old are you? – I \_\_\_\_\_ twelve.  
20. My cousin \_\_\_\_\_ a pilot. He \_\_\_\_\_ forty.

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

1. Я студент. Мені двадцять. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. Твої батьки вдома? – Так. \_\_\_\_\_  
3. Твоя мама лікар? – Так. \_\_\_\_\_  
4. Ця дівчина – моя сестра. Їй десять. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. Моя бабуся пенсіонерка. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. Ми не медсестри, ми лікарі. \_\_\_\_\_  
7. Тобі двадцять? – Так. \_\_\_\_\_  
8. Він студент, він зараз в університеті. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. Це моя машина. Вона нова. \_\_\_\_\_  
10. Мій друг – пілот. Йому 30. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Read the information. Write sentences about these people.**

**1. Jamie Dornan**

an actor, model  
not English  
Irish  
from Belfast, Northern Ireland  
41  
1.8 metres tall  
married  
wife – Amelia Warner, an actress  
atheist

**2. Priyanka Chopra**

an actress, model  
not American  
Indian  
from Jumshedpur, India  
40  
1.67 metres tall  
married  
husband – Nich Jonas, an actor  
UNICEF Goodwill Ambassador

**Jamie Dornan** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Priyanka Chopra** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Write 5-6 sentences about some famous actor/actress.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2. THE CONSTRUCTIONS *THERE IS / THERE ARE*

### Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with *is* or *are*.

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ a table in this room. 2. There \_\_\_\_\_ a table and six chairs in this room. 3. There \_\_\_\_\_ six chairs and a table in this room. 4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a book on the table. 5. There \_\_\_\_\_ three books on the table. 6. There \_\_\_\_\_ three books and a pen on the table. 7. There \_\_\_\_\_ a pen and three books on the table. 8. There \_\_\_\_\_ a café not far from my house. 9. There \_\_\_\_\_ a café and several shops not far from my house. 10. There \_\_\_\_\_ several shops and a small café not far from my house. 11. There \_\_\_\_\_ some milk in our fridge. 12. There \_\_\_\_\_ some apples in our fridge. 13. There \_\_\_\_\_ not any freezer in the kitchen. 14. \_\_\_\_\_ there any dogs in the park? – Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_. 15. There \_\_\_\_\_ not any money in my wallet. 16. \_\_\_\_\_ there any money in my wallet? – Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_. 17. There \_\_\_\_\_ some sugar on the table. 18. There \_\_\_\_\_ some pencils on the table. 19. There \_\_\_\_\_ some salt and pepper on the table. 20. There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of museums in our city.

### Ex. 2. Translate into English.

- Олівець на столі. На столі олівець. \_\_\_\_\_
- На полиці книги. Книги на полиці. \_\_\_\_\_
- На столі є які-небудь книги? \_\_\_\_\_
- Біля стола є декілька стільців. \_\_\_\_\_
- На столі три книги і ручка. \_\_\_\_\_
- Що (є) на столі? – На столі книга, ручка й олівець. \_\_\_\_\_
- На нашій вулиці декілька будинків. \_\_\_\_\_
- Чи є кафе на вашій вулиці? – Так. Поряд з моїм будинком знаходиться миле тихе кафе. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Look at the information. Write sentences about Lutsk. Add some information about Lutsk.

schools – 27	churches – a lot
national universities – 2	cathedrals – 2
colleges – 10	castle – 1
hospitals – 4	theatres – 2
swimming pools – 2	museums – a lot
railway station – 1	cinemas – 3
airport - no	the longest apartment house in Europe – 1

**There** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 4. Write sentences with *There is/there are*.

- minutes / an hour \_\_\_\_\_
- days / a week \_\_\_\_\_
- months / a year \_\_\_\_\_
- days / August \_\_\_\_\_
- players / a football team \_\_\_\_\_
- players / a volleyball team \_\_\_\_\_
- players / a basketball team \_\_\_\_\_
- planets / the solar system \_\_\_\_\_
- the Sun / the solar system \_\_\_\_\_
- states / the USA \_\_\_\_\_







### 3. THE VERB TO HAVE (GOT)

**Ex. 1. Express the idea of possessing something, using the following proverbs in short situations. Give their Ukrainian equivalents.**

1. Every country has its customs. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Every man has his hobby-horse. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Every cloud has a silver lining. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Bad news has wings. \_\_\_\_\_
5. A cat has nine lives. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex.2. Write the negative and interrogative forms.**

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. (+) I have a headache.     | (+) I have got a headache.     |
| (-) _____                     | (-) _____                      |
| (?) _____                     | (?) _____                      |
| 2. (+) I have a daughter.     | (+) I have got a daughter.     |
| (-) _____                     | (-) _____                      |
| (?) _____                     | (?) _____                      |
| 3. (+) I have a lot of money. | (+) I have got a lot of money. |
| (-) _____                     | (-) _____                      |
| (?) _____                     | (?) _____                      |
| 4. (+) I have a friend.       | (+) I have got a friend.       |
| (-) _____                     | (-) _____                      |
| (?) _____                     | (?) _____                      |
| 5. (+) I have long hair.      | (+) I have got long hair.      |
| (-) _____                     | (-) _____                      |
| (?) _____                     | (?) _____                      |

**Ex.3. Fill in the blanks with *have (haven't) got* or *has (hasn't) got*.**

1. The child \_\_\_\_\_ a new beautiful toy.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of beautiful flowers.
3. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ a nice black dress.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ two beds in your room.
5. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice bag.
6. Tim \_\_\_\_\_ three bananas and an apple.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ seven cousins.
8. Diana and George \_\_\_\_\_ four children.
9. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ two uncles.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ five English books.
11. She \_\_\_\_\_ any pets.
12. A spider \_\_\_\_\_ eight legs.
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ any garden near my house.
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ any cousins.
15. They \_\_\_\_\_ two cars.

**Ex.4. Fill in the blanks with *have* or *has*.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ her parents got five sons?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the dog got a puppy?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Sue got friends?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ your sisters got toy elephants?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the bird got wings?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Ben got a new schoolbag?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the table got four legs?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the boys got bicycles?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ our friends got a new laptop?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ those boys got balls?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you got central heating in your house?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher got such a dictionary?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ his sister got dark hair?
14. \_\_\_\_\_ they got a lot of money?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ she got any friends at her new school?

**Ex.5. Fill in the blanks with *have (+,-,?)*.**

1. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ a large family.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ any relatives in Lviv.
3. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ any children.
4. Her little brother \_\_\_\_\_ any animals at home.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ he. \_\_\_\_\_ any children?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the students of your group \_\_\_\_\_ any friends abroad?
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful daughter.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you got a dog in the house?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ your brother \_\_\_\_\_ a large family?
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books, but I \_\_\_\_\_ any magazines.
11. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ a big breakfast in the morning.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ any book.
13. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books at home.
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ a comfortable house.
15. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ my classes in the morning.

**Ex.6. Put the words in the right order to make questions.**

1. got, the dog, how, many, puppies, has? \_\_\_\_\_
2. you, got, a, have, camera? \_\_\_\_\_

3. has, who, TV set, got, a ? \_\_\_\_\_
4. hasn't, Sue, a, pencil, why, got ? \_\_\_\_\_
5. his, what, has, brother, got ? \_\_\_\_\_
6. your, children, many, parents, got, how, have ? \_\_\_\_\_
7. brother, got, a, her, blue, has, ruler. \_\_\_\_\_
8. haven't, got, bicycles, they. \_\_\_\_\_
9. homework, got, he, hasn't. \_\_\_\_\_
10. many, got, their, have, friends, toys. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Complete phrases with words.**

*A shower, a son, a drink, a cup of coffee, two cups, a house, a brother, a party, a holiday, a bad time, fun, lunch, a car, a camera, blue eyes, dark hair, a haircut, a good job, a coffee machine, a shave, an argument, cousins.*

**have got**

**have**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

1. Я маю сестру. Її звали Олена. Олена – викладач англійської мови. Вона заміжня і має двоє дітей: сина та дочку. А в тебе є сестра чи брат? Ти маєш родичів в Луцьку? \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

2. Коли ти снідаєш? Ти часто снідаєш у їдальні? Ти п'єш каву чи чай на сніданок? \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

3. Катя зазвичай має уроки музики двічі на тиждень. Твоя сестра має уроки музики? \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

4. Ти обідаєш вдома чи в інститутській їдальні? – Я обідаю вдома після занять. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

5. Моя подруга має велику бібліотеку вдома. У неї сотні книг, серед яких багато книг англійських авторів. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

6. Ніколас Кейдж володіє островом у Карибському морі та замком в Англії. Також він має будинок на дванадцять спальень у місті Міделтон в штаті Роуд-Айленд, найменшому штаті США на Атлантичному узбережжі. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

7. Ніколас Кейдж має сина. Вони часто розважаються та гарно проводять час разом. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

## 4. TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

### 4.1. PRESENT TENSES

#### The Present Simple

**Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Present Simple.**

A. 1. It often **rains** in autumn in our region. 2. **Do** you always **play** chess in the evening? 3. Usually I **get up** at 7 o'clock in the morning. 4. You **prepare** your lessons at home as a rule, **don't** you? 5. Every Sunday I **visit** my grandparents. 6. The students **work** in the language laboratory every day.

B. 1. My mother **cooks** well. 2. Mr. White **smokes** a lot. 3. Our students **make** pronunciation mistakes. 4. Helen never **remembers** telephone numbers. 5. My friends **like** to pick up flowers in the forest. 6. Birds **return** from the South in spring.

C. 1. I **don't remember** his telephone number. 2. **Do** you **see** anybody in the street? 3. I **understand** you quite well. 4. It's too noisy in the corridor. What **do** you **hear**? 5. Your classes are over. What **do** you **want** to do now? 6. What articles of furniture **do** you **see** in the room?

D. 1. Money **doesn't buy** happiness. 2. Water **freezes** at 0°C. 3. Milk **contains** a lot of vitamins. 4. The sun **rises** in the east and **sets** in the west. 5. Matter **consists** of small particles.

E. 1. What time **does** your train **arrive** in Leeds? – It **leaves** London at 11 o'clock and **arrives** in Leeds at 2 o'clock. 2. The film **starts** at 12 o'clock.

F. 1. Our hero **goes** off to search for the treasure, which he eventually **finds** after many adventures. 2. So in the first scene we **see** him getting up and then he **goes out** and **meets** a strange woman.

**Ex. 2. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.**

1. My mother leaves home early. \_\_\_\_\_

2. They live beside the sea. \_\_\_\_\_

3. John likes fruit. \_\_\_\_\_

4. A lot of girls and boys enjoy dances. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I remember her address. \_\_\_\_\_

6. He knows the town well. \_\_\_\_\_

7. My father comes home at 8 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Children spend a lot of time out-of-doors. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Our grandmother grows potatoes. \_\_\_\_\_

10. It often snows in November. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple.**

1. Miss Gray \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) us English. 2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) in the street very often.

3. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) me in my French. 4. Mr. Green and his wife \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in London now. 5. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (to like) such films. 6. In winter we \_\_\_\_\_ (to ski) and \_\_\_\_\_ (to skate) a lot. 7. I often \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) to see my grandfather.

8. In England the traffic \_\_\_\_\_ (to keep) to the left but on the Continent it \_\_\_\_\_ (to keep) to the right. 9. He (to spend) much time in the open air. 10. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (to correct) our dictations in class. 11. John and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) good friends. 12. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) present at the lesson. 13. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) many toys in her room.

14. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) your books? 15. Her father \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) at this plant.

**Ex. 4. Write the opposite (positive or negative).**

1. They speak English. \_\_\_\_\_

2. John likes big cities. \_\_\_\_\_

3. He doesn't smoke. \_\_\_\_\_

4. I don't remember her. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I live in London. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Write yes/no questions.**

1. I work hard. And you? \_\_\_\_\_
2. They speak English. And you? \_\_\_\_\_
3. I play tennis. And your mother? \_\_\_\_\_
4. We like this city. And you? \_\_\_\_\_
5. He smokes. And your father? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't remember her. And you? \_\_\_\_\_
7. I don't live in London. And your mother? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I prefer the countryside. And your parents \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Correct the information. Write two correct sentences each time.**

1. The sun rises in the west. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Carpenters make things from metal. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The River Amazon flows into the Pacific Ocean. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mice catch cats. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The sun goes round the Earth. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Water boils at 50°C. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Water freezes at 10°C. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Write sentences about yourself and your friend.**

- I never* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend never* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I hardly ever* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend hardly ever* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I rarely* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend rarely* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I seldom* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend seldom* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I occasionally* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend occasionally* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I sometimes* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend sometimes* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I often* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend often* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I frequently* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend frequently* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I generally* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend generally* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I usually* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend usually* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I always* \_\_\_\_\_  
*My friend always* \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Write four questions of different types (1) Yes/No question, 2) Wh-question, 3) Alternative and 4) Tag questions to each sentence.**

1. I start work at 8.30 every morning.  
1) \_\_\_\_\_  
2) \_\_\_\_\_  
3) \_\_\_\_\_  
4) \_\_\_\_\_
2. A green light means "Go".  
1) \_\_\_\_\_

- 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_
3. She lives in Kyiv.  
 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_
4. They prefer the countryside.  
 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_
5. We go on holiday once a year.  
 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
 4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Translate into English using the Present Simple.**

1. На заняттях ми читаємо, перекладаємо англійські тексти, розмовляємо англійською мовою \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. Що ти переважно робиш після уроків? – Після уроків я переважно йду додому. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Цей чоловік не живе у нашому будинку, він живе у сусідньому будинку. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. Хіба ти не вивчаєш німецьку? – Ні, я не вивчаю німецьку, я вивчаю англійську. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Він працює чи вчиться? – Він працює в цьому офісі. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. Де живе ця дівчина? – Я думаю, вона живе на цій вулиці. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. Твої батьки працюють? – Ні, вони не працюють, вони пенсіонери. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. Чи часто ти їздиш до своєї бабусі? – Я їжджу до неї щотижня. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. Його брат не працює тут, він працює в лікарні. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
10. Коли ти переважно виконуєш домашнє завдання? – Зазвичай я виконую домашнє завдання ввечері. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
11. З якої платформи відходять поїзди до Одеси? – З другої платформи. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
12. Де працює її брат? – Він викладає математику в нашій школі. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
13. О котрій годині ти лягаєш спати? – Об одинацятій або навіть пізніше. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
14. Чия сестра знає іспанську мову? – Моя. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
15. Де ти зазвичай проводиш літо? – Я зазвичай їжджу до моря. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## The Present Continuous

### Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Present Continuous.

1. Ann and Mary are in the canteen. They **are having** breakfast. They **are not drinking** coffee. They **are drinking** tea. 2. The young people **are talking**. What **are they talking** about? They **are talking** about their life and studies. 3. All the guests in the room **are listening** to the music. 4. Helen's husband **is reading** a book. 5. Helen **is sitting** in the armchair and **talking** on the phone. 6. It's **getting** colder and colder every day. Autumn **is setting in**. 7. What **are they doing** here, in London? 8. They **are moving** into their new flat soon. 9. Mary and Kate **are coming back** from their trip next Wednesday. 10. They **are visiting** their Aunt Emily in May. 11. What **are you doing** tomorrow? – Robert and Jane **are coming**. 12. When **are you going** to come back? 13. You **are going** to spend a few hours on the bank of the river, **aren't** you? 14. My little nephew is such a naughty child, he **is continually worrying** his parents. 15. You **are shivering**. Are you all right?

### Ex. 2. Write four questions of different types (1) Yes/No question, (2) Wh- question, (3) Alternative and (4) Tag questions to each sentence.

1. The taxi is waiting near the front door.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

2. The builders are repairing the roof of our house.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

3. She is working from home this month.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

4. We are cooking pizza at the moment.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

5. He is having a shower now.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Use the verbs in brackets in the Present Continuous.

1. The clock \_\_\_\_\_ (to strike) in the next room. 2. Father and mother \_\_\_\_\_ (to get up). 3. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) tea. 4. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) breakfast. 5. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ continually \_\_\_\_\_ (to worry) about his wife's health. 6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) my assignments. 7. Mother \_\_\_\_\_ (to cook) dinner. Grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) her. 8. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) dark. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (not to shine). 9. You \_\_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) at the lessons. 10. Come and say "Good-bye". Our guests \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) in a minute. 11. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) a figure skating competition tonight. 12. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to receive) guests on Sunday. 13. Listen! Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) the piano in the next room. 14. Hurry up! The bus \_\_\_\_\_ (to come). 15. Look! She \_\_\_\_\_ (to wear) her new dress.

**Ex. 4. What is happening at the moment? Write *true* sentences.**

1. (it / snow) \_\_\_\_\_
2. (it / rain) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (the wind / blow) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (the sun / shine) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (I / sit / at the table) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (I / stand / by the window) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (I / have / an English lesson) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (I / learn / English) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (I / learn / Spanish) \_\_\_\_\_
10. (I / wear / shoes) \_\_\_\_\_
11. (I / wear / shorts) \_\_\_\_\_
12. (I / listen to / music) \_\_\_\_\_
13. (I / write / a sentence) \_\_\_\_\_
14. (I / translate / a text) \_\_\_\_\_
15. (I / speak / English) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Complete sentences with *to be going to* or *the Present Continuous*.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to give) a talk next Monday. Everything is arranged.
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to rain). The sky is dark and full of clouds.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to miss) the train. The traffic is terrible.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) a doctor one day.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) us in front of the university at 3pm.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) in the first row. I've got the tickets.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to miss) the event. My car has broken down.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) soaked. It's raining.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) tennis.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) tennis with my friends on Sunday.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to spend) the day with my grandparents, that's why I can't see you tomorrow.
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) next week, but we haven't arranged time yet.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) tomorrow at 6 p.m.
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) some series tonight or on Sunday.
15. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) "Stranger things" tonight.

**Ex. 6. Describe current trends using *the Present Continuous*. Add more current trends.**

1. People / read / fewer / novels / these days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. People / use / computers / a lot / these days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The internet / change / our lives / dramatically.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Stress in the workplace / increase / dramatically / these days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The world of communication / change / rapidly.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. People / text / more and more / these days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Technology / evolve / rapidly / these days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Artificial intelligence / become / more and more important.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Де Олена? – Вона читає у своїй кімнаті. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Що вона збирається робити потім? – Її тітка їде до своїх друзів і бере її з собою. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Ігор пишається, що він студент університету. Він постійно всім про це говорить. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Куди ви поїдете у літню відпустку? – Ми поїдемо до наших знайомих в Одесу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Хто це їде вулицею? – Ти не знаєш цю дівчину? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Що ти пишеш? – Я не пишу, я читаю. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Що ти читаєш? – Я читаю роман англійського письменника. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Якою мовою вони зараз говорять? – Вони говорять французькою. – Ти розумієш, про що вони говорять? – Трохи. Вони говорять про наші традиції. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Що роблять твої діти? – Старший син обідає, а молодший спить. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Я зайнятий сьогодні. Я готуюсь до іспиту. Я складаю іспит з англійської у четвер. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Тато в Києві зараз. Він повертається з Києва наступного тижня. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Чим вони займаються? – Вони обговорюють якусь книгу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Що ти збираєшся робити в неділю? – Я збираюся кататися на лижах. – Ти любиш кататися на лижах? – Дуже. Взимку я люблю проводити свої вихідні на свіжому повітрі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Дощ їде? – Ні, дощу немає, але дме сильний вітер. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Чим ти зараз займаєшся? – Планую новий проєкт. Саме тому я дуже зайнятий, зовсім не маю вільного часу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Як ваша дитинка? – Дякую, добре. Сьогодні її доглядає няня. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Ви збираєтесь відвідати виставку завтра в художній галереї? – Так, звісно, ми вже маємо квитки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Present Simple vs The Present Continuous

### Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. I always \_\_\_\_\_ (to like) to get post but I never \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) to have the time to reply. 2. The heroine \_\_\_\_\_ (to prefer) to be with Paul because James always \_\_\_\_\_ (to argue). 3. Maria always \_\_\_\_\_ (to forget) what time the soap \_\_\_\_\_ (to start). 4. You always \_\_\_\_\_ (to moan) about the state of the flat but you never \_\_\_\_\_ (to help) me. 5. Turtles always \_\_\_\_\_ (to lay) their eggs on the same beach; however, they never come in winter. 6. Whether I \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) swimming or not always \_\_\_\_\_ (to depend on) the weather. 7. I never \_\_\_\_\_ (to shop) again, they \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) always so rude. 8. We always \_\_\_\_\_ (to smell) cooking when we \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) your house. 9. He always \_\_\_\_\_ (to borrow) money but he always \_\_\_\_\_ (to pay) me back. 10. I always \_\_\_\_\_ (to complain) if the service is bad in restaurants.

### Ex. 2. Put the verbs in the brackets into the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ that man over there? (to know) – Actually, I do. He \_\_\_\_\_ Muriel's husband. (to be) 2. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ anything tomorrow evening? (to do) – Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ Jack at nine o'clock. (to see) 3. I \_\_\_\_\_ you're feeling better. (to see) – Yes, thank you. 4. What's the noise? – The people next door \_\_\_\_\_ a party. (to have) 5. This dress \_\_\_\_\_ me anymore. (not to fit) – Why don't you buy a new one? 6. Your perfume \_\_\_\_\_ nice. (to smell) What is it? – It's a new perfume called Sunshine. 7. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (to look at) – Some photos I took during my holidays. 8. You \_\_\_\_\_ very pretty today. (to look) – Thank you. I have just had my hair cut. 9. This fabric \_\_\_\_\_ like silk. (to feel) – It is silk indeed, and it's very expensive. 10. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (to do) – I \_\_\_\_\_ the radiator to see if it's getting warm. (to feel) 11. The children are making lots of noise today. – I know, but they \_\_\_\_\_ fun. (to have) 12. This cake \_\_\_\_\_ awful. (to taste) – I think I forgot to put the sugar in it! 13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to look for) John's mobile phone because I left mine at home. 14. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) very hard nowadays. 15. This juice \_\_\_\_\_ (to taste) good.

### Ex. 3. Use the Present Simple or the Present Continuous instead of the infinitives in brackets.

State	Action
I _____ (think) he is rich.	I _____ (think) about this plan.
The coffee _____ (taste) awful.	He _____ (taste) his coffee.
He _____ (have) a dog.	He _____ (have) dinner now.
This _____ (feel) like velvet.	He _____ (feel) his way in the dark.
The cake _____ (smell) delicious.	Why _____ you _____ (smell) your food?
It _____ (look) great	What _____ you _____ (look) at?

### Ex. 4. Translate into English using the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

1. Якою мовою вони розмовляють зараз? – Мені здається, вони розмовляють французькою. – Ти знаєш французьку? Ти розумієш, про що вони говорять? – Я погано знаю французьку, але я розумію, що вони обговорюють якусь проблему стосовно бізнесу. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Погода змінюється. Теплішає. – Так, дійсно теплішає. Весна наближається. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Ти відчуваєш цей запах? Це мама готує обід. Ми матимемо щось смачненьке на обід. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Я думаю, нам варто відпочити. – Так, ти однозначно правий. Я якраз обдумую план нашого відпочинку. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## The Present Perfect

### Ex. 1. Read the situations. Remember the way you are to comment on the use of the Present Perfect.

1. Ann is a student. Her working day begins rather early. Ann **has taken** a shower. Now she is having breakfast. She must leave for the university at half past seven because her classes begin at eight o'clock today.

The verb **to take** is used in its Present Perfect tense forms to denote a completed past action connected with the present in its result.

2. Kate is in the library. She **has been** here **since** four o'clock. Kate is very busy, as she is getting ready for her exams.

The verb **to be** is used in its Present Perfect tense form to express an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on. The starting point of the action is indicated by the preposition **since**.

3. Mr. Brown's house is not very large, but it's rather comfortable and modern. Mr. Brown must pay a lot of money for the house. After he **has paid** all the money, he can call the house his own.

The verb **to pay** is used in the adverbial clause of time in its Present Perfect tense form to denote the completion of the future action.

### Ex. 2. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Present Perfect.

1. Don't play in the yard until you have done your work. 2. You may go for a walk after you have read this article. 3. Nick has studied at the university for two years. He is a second-year student now. 4. My elder sister is an English teacher. She has taught children for ten years already. 5. I have known him since we were children. 6. My brother has lived here for ten years. 7. You haven't worked at your pronunciation for a long time. 8. Have you bought a new flat yet? – Yes, we have. It's very comfortable. 9. My dream has come true. I am a student of the university. 10. The students have read in their text-books that ecology is the most important problem in the world. 11. She will know the poem by the heart when she has heard it twice. 12. What has happened? 13. Have you arranged everything? 14. They have gone to New York. 15. They have been to New York.

### Ex. 3. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. My mother has lived here for ten years. \_\_\_\_\_

2. I have known him for many years. \_\_\_\_\_

3. They have been to New York. \_\_\_\_\_

4. He has passed his driving test. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I've just washed my hair. \_\_\_\_\_

6. My dream has come true. \_\_\_\_\_

7. I have already made coffee. \_\_\_\_\_

8. We have studied at the university for two years. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Our grandmother has grown potatoes. \_\_\_\_\_

10. We have watched this film twice. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 4. Write four questions of different types (1) Yes/No question, (2) Wh- question, (3) Alternative and (4) Tag questions to each sentence.

1. They have just arrived in New York.

1) \_\_\_\_\_

2) \_\_\_\_\_

3) \_\_\_\_\_

4) \_\_\_\_\_

2. I have made several phone calls this morning.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

3. He has won the London Marathon.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

4. We have already cooked a pizza.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

5. Children have spent a lot of time out-of-doors.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Ask questions beginning Have you ever...?**

<b>You: Have you ever...?</b>	<b>Maria</b>
1. be / London	No, never.
2. be / Kyiv	Yes, a few times.
3. visit / another country	Yes, once.
4. play / tennis	Yes, a few times.
5. play / golf	No, never.
6. eat / Japanese food	Yes, twice.
7. break / your leg	No, never.
8. break / your arm	Yes, once.
9. ride / a horse	No, never.
10. ride / a bike	Yes, a few times.

**Write sentences about Maria.**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Write sentences about yourself.**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Use the Present Simple or the Present Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. "I'll hand the book over when I \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) it", he said. 2. Nobody knows we are here. We may stay here till we \_\_\_\_\_ (to die). 3. All right. I'll come down when I \_\_\_\_\_ (to put on) a fresh collar. 6. She just \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) a porter to carry her bags as they \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) too heavy for her. 4. "No more", she said to the dog, "but when I \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) you may have the bone". 5. This is the house where I \_\_\_\_\_ (to live). I \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) here since I was a child. 6. As a rule I \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) ham and eggs for breakfast, but this time I \_\_\_\_\_ (to order) an omelette. 7. You'll find it lonely here after the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (to set).

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Хто взяв мій телефон? Я його завжди залишаю на столі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Пообідай з нами. – Дякую. Я щойно пообідала. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Ти бачила прогноз погоди? – Ні. Останнім часом я не дивлюся прогноз погоди. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Ти бачив його сьогодні? – Так, тільки що. Зараз він обідає в їдальні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Дощ тільки що припинився, і знову світить сонце. Давай продовжимо свою прогулянку парком.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Я ще ніколи не бачив її такою сердитою. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Які твої плани на канікули? – Я збираюся поїхати до Одеси. Я там ще ніколи не була. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Ти уже прочитав цю статтю? – Ні ще, я якраз читаю її зараз. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Я дуже щаслива. Я щойно одержала повідомлення від моєї сестри. Вона навідає нас. Ми не бачилися цілу вічність. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Ти була коли-небудь у Франції? – Ніколи. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Уже шоста година. Наш автобус все ще не прибув. Таким чином ми спізнаємося на потяг. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Як довго у вас ця застуда? – Я хворію вже протягом двох тижнів, починаючи з початку жовтня. Я провів багато часу поряд з людьми із застудою. Думаю, я підхопив хворобу від них. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Ви одружені? – Так. – Як довго ви одружені? – Ми одружені вже 10 років. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Present Perfect Continuous

### Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Present Perfect Continuous.

1. He has been working here since 2020. 2. She has been calling on clients since this morning. 3. He has been working all day. 4. He has been walking all morning. 5. Who has been drinking my orange juice? 6. He has been watching TV since 6 o'clock. 7. I've been searching for a house for a week now but so far I haven't found anything suitable. 8. Jack has been working on the project since its inception two months ago. 9. He has been talking on the phone for more than half an hour. 10. I have been trying to study for the last hour but something always seems to interrupt me.

### Ex. 2. Translate the following sentences into English and comment on the use of the Present Perfect Continuous in them.

1. Ви довго чекаєте? – Я чекаю з п'ятої години. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Джон плаває на кораблі уже місяць. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я багато працюю останнім часом. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Як довго ти вивчаєш арабську? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Чому твої очі такі червоні? Ти плакала? \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous.

1. How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to know) Alison? 2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) friends since we were children. 3. What are Andrew and David doing? – They \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) in the garden for three hours. 4. Why is Sally upset? – She \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) her bag. 5. Emily \_\_\_\_\_ (to teach) Maths since she left university. 6. Fred \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) a new shop. – Really? Where is it? 7. This pie is delicious. – Is it? I \_\_\_\_\_ (not to taste) it yet. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (you / to find) your umbrella yet? – No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to look for) it for an hour now. 9. You look exhausted. – Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to clean) the windows since 8 o'clock this morning. 10. You have got new neighbours, haven't you? – Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ (just / to move) to our area.

### Ex. 4. Underline the correct tense form.

1. Lizzy and I are good friends. We **know** / **have known** each other for four years. 2. Sarah is very tired. She **has been working** / **is working** hard all day. 3. Where is John? – He is upstairs. He **does** / **is doing** his homework. 4. I can't go to the party on Sunday. I **am leaving** / **have been leaving** for Spain on Friday night. 5. Jane **has finished** / **is finishing** cleaning her room and now she is going out with her friends. 6. I don't need to wash my car. Nick **has washed** / **is washing** it for me already. 7. Peter **has been talking** / **is talking** to his boss for an hour. 8. Claire's train **arrives** / **has arrived** at 3 o'clock. I must go and meet her at the station. 9. Would you like to borrow this book? – No, thank you. I **have read** / **have been reading** it before. 10. Have you seen my bag? I **am searching** / **have been searching** for it all morning.

### Ex. 5. Translate into English using the appropriate present tenses.

1. Ви не бачили мого kota? Я ніде не можу знайти його. – Гляньте, він сидить на лавці. Він сидить тут, між іншим, уже давно. – О, Боже! А я шукаю його уже півгодини. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Одягайся тепліше. Холоднішає. Зима наближається. Схоже, піде сніг. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Мій чоловік дбає про своє здоров'я. Ось уже 10 років він бігає підтюпцем кожного ранку. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ви давно його знаєте? – Я знаю його з дитинства. Ми з ним друзі. \_\_\_\_\_

## 4.2. PAST TENSES

### The Past Simple

#### Ex. 1. Read the situations. Remember the way you are to comment on the use of the Past Simple.

1. Henry likes to travel very much. Last year he **made** a tour of France and Spain. These countries **impressed** him greatly.

The verbs **to make** and **to impress** are used in their Past Simple tense forms to denote actions performed within a period of time which is already over. The time of the action is indicated by the adverbial phrase **last year**.

2. It was Sunday yesterday and I did not have classes. I **got up** later than usual, **did** my morning exercises, **washed** and **had** breakfast. After breakfast I **went** to the park with my best friend Nick. We **played** football there and **walked** about the park to admire its beauty.

The verbs **to get up**, **to do**, **to wash**, **to have**, **to go**, **to play**, **to walk** are used in their Past Simple tense forms to denote repeated actions in the past.

3. When Nick was a child he often went to his grandparents. He made a lot of friends there. He **used to get up** early and **go** to the forest or river with his friends.

The expression **used to** is used to denote repeated action in the past.

#### Ex. 2. Form the Past Simple of the following verbs.

to appear		to plan	
to become		to put	
to carry		to quarrel	
to come		to read	
to cry		to refer	
to do		to ring	
to dress		to rob	
to drop		to run	
to eat		to show	
to enjoy		to shut	
to go		to sing	
to hop		to speak	
to hurry		to swim	
to jump		to translate	
to make		to travel	
to occur		to wrap	
to peel		to write	

#### Ex. 3. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. My mother left home early. \_\_\_\_\_

2. They lived beside the sea. \_\_\_\_\_

3. John got up at 7. \_\_\_\_\_

4. She called an hour ago. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I decided to go for a walk. \_\_\_\_\_

6. He knew the town well. \_\_\_\_\_

7. My father came home at 8 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Children spent a lot of time out-of-doors. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Our grandmother died in 2020. \_\_\_\_\_

10. It was cold in November. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Past Simple.**

1. After breakfast I **cleared** the table, **washed up** the dishes and did the room with the vacuum cleaner. 2. Yesterday I **came** home late. 3. When my mother was young she **used** to play piano beautifully. 4. I often **helped** my grandparents when I **visited** them. 5. George and Nick **planned** to go to Italy after their exams. 6. Mr. Brown **did not speak** Spanish well two years ago. 7. I **used** to work in the language laboratory every day last year. 8. Kate **passed** her entrance exams to the university with excellent marks. 9. Ann **was** very good at English and always **helped** her fellow students. 10. The performance **ended** very early.

**Ex. 5. Write four questions of different types (1) Yes/No question, 2) Wh-question, 3) Alternative and 4) Tag questions to each sentence.**

1. They arrived in New York on Monday.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

2. I made several phone calls this morning.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

3. He won the London Marathon in 2018.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

4. We cooked two pizzas yesterday.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

5. Children didn't spend a lot of time out-of-doors in January.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple. Comment on the use of the Past Simple.**

1. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin) her studies in Paris. 2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in a poor quarter in Paris. 3. Her father \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a teacher of science. 4. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not to see) him again that night. 5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit down) on the bench and \_\_\_\_\_ (to stare) into the water. 6. After a few minutes she \_\_\_\_\_ (to get up) and \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the park. 7. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) meals at home, as a rule. 8. His first question to the girl \_\_\_\_\_ (to be): "Where you \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) the man?" 9. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) her native land many years ago. 10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) this text once more. 11. Olha \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the library after classes. 12. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) tired. 13. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) their work at 9 sharp. 14. The pupils \_\_\_\_\_ (to understand) the rule very well. 15. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not to obey), she \_\_\_\_\_ (to refuse) to go to bed.



**Ex. 7. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple or the Past Simple.**

1. Nick and Tom often \_\_\_\_\_ in the yard. They \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. (to play)
2. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ rather late. Yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ at 7. (to get up)
3. In the evening she \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk with her sister. On Sunday they \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre. (to go)
4. We generally \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 7. On Sunday we \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 9. (to have)
5. I sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ books. I \_\_\_\_\_ a very interesting book yesterday. (to read)

**Ex. 8. Translate into English using the Past Simple.**

1. Два роки тому вони не жили в Києві. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Він працював у вашому офісі минулого року? – Ні, він прийшов у наш офіс два тижні тому. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Коли вони повернулися? – Три тижні тому. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ти подзвонився до Петра вчора? – Так. – І що він сказав? – Він пообіцяв допомогти нам. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Чому ви були відсутні на заняттях вчора? – Я погано себе почував. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ви допомогли йому вчора, чи не так? – Звичайно. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я відвідав Макса вчора. Він показав мені свою нову квартиру. – Вона сподобалася тобі? – Так. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Write sentences with *used to*.**

	<i>in the past</i>	<i>now</i>
phones	attached to wires	mobile
films	in black and white	in colour
transport	ride horses	drive cars
computers	big and heavy	light and small

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Ex. 10. Write true sentences about yourself with *used to*.**

**What did you use to do?**

*e.g. I used to live in a small house in the country, but now I live in a flat.*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## The Past Simple vs The Present Perfect

### Ex. 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Present Simple, the Present Perfect or the Past Simple.

1. I hear that you \_\_\_\_\_ (to give up) the idea of going there. 2. Stratford-on-Avon \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a small town in central England where Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ (to be born). 3. The rain \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) but a cold wind still \_\_\_\_\_ (to blow). 4. Some two centuries ago, when there \_\_\_\_\_ (not to be) trains, cars and trams, people \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel) in carriages. The mail coach \_\_\_\_\_ (to take) both people and the post from town to town. In some carriages the driver \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand) or \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) behind the carriage. Even, when the train \_\_\_\_\_ (to appear) some English writers still \_\_\_\_\_ (to prefer) to make their heroes travel by cabs and mail coaches. 5. What books you \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) when you \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in the country? 6. Latin \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a dead language now, but it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) an international language some four centuries ago. 7. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to keep) you waiting long? – Oh, quite a long time. 8. Why you \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) the door open? You will catch cold sitting in the draught. 9. A week and a half \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass) since I \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at this place, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) hardly a single fine day. 10. The Metric system \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a system of measures and weights which \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) first adopted in France. 11. Are you keen on golf? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (not to play) myself. I somehow never \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) the time. 12. How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) him? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) him since 2015. 13. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in Kyiv for two years and then he \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to Odesa. 14. The performance \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin) at 7 p.m. and \_\_\_\_\_ (to last) for 3 hours. We all \_\_\_\_\_ (to enjoy) it.

### Ex. 2. Translate into English, using the Present Simple, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous or the Past Simple.

1. Де ти був учора ввечері? – Я ходив у кіно. – Тобі сподобався фільм? – Так.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Коли твій брат почав вивчати німецьку мову? – Місяць тому. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ти вже прочитала цю книжку? – Так, книжка дуже цікава. – Коли ти її прочитала? – Два дні тому. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ти можеш дати мені свою ручку? Я загубив свою. – Коли ти загубив свою ручку? – Думаю, вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я постукала у двері, але ніхто не відповів. Тоді я відчинила двері й побачила, що в кімнаті нікого не було. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Де Олег? Чому він не прийшов на заняття? – Я не бачив його сьогодні. Боюся, він захворів. – Ти помиляєшся. Я бачила його дві години тому в університеті. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ви вже відвідали виставку картин цього молодого художника? – Так, я побувала там декілька разів. Я ніколи не бачила нічого прекраснішого. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Покажи мені книгу, яку ти нещодавно читала. – Я не маю її. Я віддала її своїй сестрі вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Микола дуже змінився відтоді, як я бачила його востаннє. – Так, я зустріла його на вулиці два дні тому й не впізнала. Він був дуже блідий. \_\_\_\_\_

## The Past Continuous

### Ex. 1. Comment on the use of the Past Continuous.

1. Around us people **were talking** German, Italian and English. 2. Robert **was talking** to some of the other guests on the terrace when Hardy came in. 3. Michael **was** continually **looking** at his watch. 4. He **wasn't staying** in the house, was he? – No, but he **was dining** there that evening. 5. All night long the stars **were glittering**. 6. Lizzie **was** busy **eating** and didn't raise her head. 7. She **was** always **saying** that only Belinda knew how to treat men. 8. I saw Irene yesterday at the Stores; she and Mr. Bosinney **were having** a nice little chat in the Groceries. 9. A few minutes later Dixon **was hurrying** through the streets to his bus stop. 10. They moved across the room which **was starting** to fill up, to a vacant corner.

### Ex. 2. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. My mother was making dinner at 2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They were having dinner when we came. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. John was watching TV at 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She was playing tennis from 5 to 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I was speaking to a client. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He was having a shower at 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. My father was cleaning his car at 8 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Children were running in the yard. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The wind was blowing. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The sun was shining. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Write four questions of different types (1) Yes/No question, 2) Wh- question, 3) Alternative and 4) Tag questions to each sentence.

1. When the phone rang, I was having a bath.
  - 1) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) \_\_\_\_\_
2. I was making coffee when she came.
  - 1) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) \_\_\_\_\_
3. He was reading when the doorbell rang.
  - 1) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) \_\_\_\_\_
4. We were cooking pizzas while they were laying the table.
  - 1) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) \_\_\_\_\_

5. Children were going to spend some time out-of-doors but it started to rain.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Put the verbs in the brackets into the Past Continuous, the Past Simple or the Present tenses.**

1. I just \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) breakfast when the telephone \_\_\_\_\_ (to ring). When I \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) back to my coffee it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) almost cold.  
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) in silence when he suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) me if I \_\_\_\_\_ (can) help him. 3. I'm angry with Helen; she \_\_\_\_\_ (to keep) me waiting at the university for a long time this evening. 4. Alison and Cassia \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) on the staircase as I went down. 5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a picnic yesterday, but the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (to spoil) the whole pleasure. 6. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) down at the crowds as he \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) down the platform. 15. You \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) unusually elegant. 7. At last I \_\_\_\_\_ (to translate) this article; now I'll have a little rest. 8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) what \_\_\_\_\_ (to go on) around me: fast cars \_\_\_\_\_ (to rush) in both directions, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) impossible to cross the street. 9. The old man who \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) on the bench beside me \_\_\_\_\_ (to keep) silent for some time. Then he \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask) me if I \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) him. 10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to stand) at the window for some time; the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (to shine), and I \_\_\_\_\_ (to decide) to go for a walk.

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using appropriate tenses.**

1. Я бачила Олену вчора. Вона була вдягнена у легку гарну сукню. Вона поспішала до університету й не мала часу поговорити зі мною. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Що робила твоя молодша сестра, коли ти прийшла додому? – Вона гралася своєю улюбленою іграшкою. – А мама була вдома? – Так. Вона займалася садівництвом.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Коли я вийшла з дому, сонце світило яскраво і пташки весело щебетали на деревах. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Я бачила тебе вчора на вулиці з Миколою. Ви стояли і весело розмовляли. Про що ви розмовляли? – Ми обговорювали план нашої поїздки до Львова. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Вони поверталися додому пізно. Погода була погана. Дощу не було, але дув сильний вітер. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. Було пізно, темніло. Ми поверталися додому. Коли ми підійшли до нашого будинку, у дворі гралася діти. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Коли ми прибули на вокзал, на пероні було багато пасажирів. Одні стояли біля вагонів, інші поспішали до своїх вагонів. Було дуже гамірно. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Past Perfect

### Ex. 1. Read the situations. Remember the way you are to comment on the Past Perfect.

1. Last year we went to London. Our guide showed us round the city. By 2 o'clock we **had seen** Westminster Abbey and Trafalgar Square.

The verb **to see** is used in its Past Perfect tense form to denote an action completed before a certain moment in the past. This moment is indicated by the adverbial phrase **by 2 o'clock**.

2. Yesterday I made up my mind to go to the river. The weather was especially fine. But when I called for my friend Nick, he **had** already **gone** to the river with his brother.

The verb **to go** is used in its Past Perfect tense form to denote an action completed before a certain moment in the past. This moment is indicated by another past action expressed by the verb **to call for** in the Past Simple.

3. Last Sunday I had my birthday. I made up my mind to go for a picnic with my friends. Some hours **had passed** before we decided to sit down on the green grass to have a bite. I **had** hardly **spread** the table-cloth when a nasty-looking cloud appeared behind us. But no sooner **had** some ten minutes **passed** than the cloud disappeared and the sun was shining again.

The verb **to spread** is used in its Past Perfect tense form with **hardly...when** and the verb **to pass** is used in its Past Perfect tense form with **no sooner...than** to denote an action completed before a certain moment in the past.

### Ex. 2. Comment on the use of the Past Perfect.

1. Jane **had lived** in a village before she moved to this town. 2. Nick **had worked** at the plant before he joined the army. 3. Mother **had cooked** the cake before the guests came. 4. It was a beautiful spring day. A heavy rain **had fallen** before sunrise. 5. The Hiltons **had bought** tickets before they took the train. 6. Alice and Roger **had chosen** a nice place when their parents joined them. 7. The trip wasn't going to become too expensive as the family **had bought** cheap weekend tickets. 8. By 11 o'clock the Hiltons **had got** to the seaside. 9. Hardly **had** Olha **laid** the table when the guests entered the room. 10. Some 10 minutes **had** no sooner **passed** than it stopped raining and the sun appeared in the cloudless sky again.

### Ex. 3. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. My mother had made dinner by 2. \_\_\_\_\_

2. They had had dinner before we came. \_\_\_\_\_

3. John didn't want to go to the cinema because had seen this film before. \_\_\_\_\_

4. By the end of the tour we had visited all the museums in the city. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I had spoken to the client by 3. \_\_\_\_\_

6. He had had a shower by 7. \_\_\_\_\_

7. My father had cleaned his car when we came. \_\_\_\_\_

8. She was unhappy- her husband hadn't bought her a birthday present. \_\_\_\_\_

9. It was the worst meal I had ever eaten. \_\_\_\_\_

10. It was the best film I had ever seen. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 4. Change the Past Simple into the Past Perfect.

1. I read this book on Monday. \_\_\_\_\_ by Monday.

2. We bought our house in 2010. \_\_\_\_\_ by 2010.

3. She passed her exam in June. \_\_\_\_\_ by June.

4. Everybody went to bed at 11. \_\_\_\_\_ by midnight.

5. When she was 16, she decided on a career. By the time she was 16, \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Use the Past Simple or the Past Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets.**

1. No sooner she \_\_\_\_\_ (to open) the drawer than she \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) the photo which she \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) she \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) long before. 2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) friends for some 10 years before I \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet) them. 3. When she \_\_\_\_\_ (to enter) the house at dinner-time and \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) Tom gone she \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) what \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen). 4. Hardly he \_\_\_\_\_ (to touch) the pillows when he \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall) asleep. 5. Everybody was at the bus station but the guide \_\_\_\_\_ (not to come) yet. 6. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ (to choose) the hotel. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) never there before but he \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear) his mother speak of it once. 7. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) pleased to meet Dave again. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) him for 10 years, and they \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) tennis together. 8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to glance) up and down the beach to see if she \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) anything. 9. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to decide) to wait till he \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) to the man himself. 10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) and \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) until the train \_\_\_\_\_ (to pass). 11. By midnight, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) the magazine article. 12. By the end of the show, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall) asleep. 13. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at the party, he \_\_\_\_\_ already (to go) home. 14. The house \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) dirty as we \_\_\_\_\_ (not to clean) it for weeks. 15. There \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a car by the side of the road, it \_\_\_\_\_ (to break) down. 16. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) his first driving lesson. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) very nervous because he never \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) before.

**Ex. 6. Put the verbs in the brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Perfect.**

1. Montanelli \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) in lighter spirits than Arthur \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) him in for a long while. After the first shock of the conversation in the garden, he \_\_\_\_\_ gradually (to recover) his mental balance, and now \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) upon the case more calmly. Arthur \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) very young and inexperienced; his decision could hardly be, as yet, irrevocable. Surely there \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) still time to win him back by gentle persuasion and reasoning from the dangerous path upon which he \_\_\_\_\_ barely (to enter). 2. After a fortnight beside the Lake of Lucerne Arthur and Montanelli \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) to Italy by the St. Gothard Pass. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) fortunate as to weather and \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) several very pleasant excursions; but the first charm \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) gone out of their enjoyment. 3. When Gemma \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) reading the letter she \_\_\_\_\_ (to understand) that she \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) Arthur forever. She hardly \_\_\_\_\_ (to slip) the letter into her pocket when Martini \_\_\_\_\_ (to enter) the room and seeing her tear-stained face \_\_\_\_\_ (to run) up to her and \_\_\_\_\_ (to fling) his arms round her. But Gemma \_\_\_\_\_ (to hurry) to the window and \_\_\_\_\_ (not to notice) even that Martini \_\_\_\_\_ (to betray) his feelings. Steadying himself, Martini \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (to bring) sad news: "Cardinal Montanelli \_\_\_\_\_ (to die) suddenly at Ravenna that morning".

**Ex. 7. Complete sentences.**

1. She was happy because \_\_\_\_\_
2. She was unhappy because \_\_\_\_\_
3. He was sad because \_\_\_\_\_
4. He was annoyed because \_\_\_\_\_
5. I was disappointed because \_\_\_\_\_
6. It was the best book \_\_\_\_\_
7. It was the best museum \_\_\_\_\_
8. It was the best car \_\_\_\_\_
9. It was the worst film \_\_\_\_\_
10. It was the worst town \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

1. Я не знав, що він ще не прийшов. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Викладач зрозумів, що Олена не прочитала книгу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Він подумав, що він загубив свої гроші. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Вона поставила у вазу квіти, які збрала на лузі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Катя пригостила нас пирогом, який приготувала сама. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Перед тим, як поїхати у відрядження, я замовив номер у готелі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Я гадала, що вони уже приїхали додому. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Була нестерпна спека. Дощу не було з травня. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Ледве встигла я зайти в потяг, як він рушив. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Після того як мій товариш пішов додому, я згадав, що забув віддати йому книжку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Діти повернулися додому до того, як розпочався дощ. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Раптом він згадав, що свій підручник з англійської мови він забув у школі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Ледь ми встигли сховатися від дощу, як почалася злива з громом і градом. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Я був голодний оскільки не поснідав. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Коли Марія запізнилася на роботу вчору, її колеги були дуже здивовані, оскільки вона ніколи не запізнювалася раніше. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Я не впізнав її, вона дуже змінилася. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Він їздив до Єгипту два роки тому. Це було вперше, коли він побував закордоном. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Вона не захотіла приєднатися до нас, оскільки вже бувала у цьому музеї раніше. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Це була найгарніша сукня, яку вона коли-небудь бачила. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Ми зайшли в кафе і замовили каву. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. Я запізнювалася, друзі чекали мене в кафе. Коли я зрештою прийшла, вони вже замовили мені каву. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. Обабіч дороги стояла машина. Водій намагався відремонтувати її. Очевидно вона зламалася. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Past Perfect Continuous

### Ex. 1. Comment on the use of the Past Perfect Continuous.

1. I **had been sleeping** for an hour when he came. 2. She **had been waiting** for 20 minutes before she left. 3. We **had been reading** it for half an hour. 4. He went to the theatre to see the play which **had been running** for a week. 5. Alice threw down the book she **had been holding** since she came into the room. 6. John got tired as he **had been hunting** since early morning. 7. The travellers looked tired because they **had been travelling** since the beginning of the month. 8. I told him I had been in all evening. I **had been waiting** to talk with him. 9. They **had been having** a picnic lunch for a few hours when we joined them. 10. Roger and Alice **had been watching** an interesting television programme for half an hour when their mother told them that it was high time for everybody to go to bed.

### Ex. 2. Use the required past tense forms instead of the infinitives in brackets.

1. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) the poorest room Hilary ever \_\_\_\_\_ (to see). 2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) in the car for many hours before they \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) to the crossroad. 3. No sooner she \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at the station than a fast London train \_\_\_\_\_ (to come in). 4. The scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (to carry out) dozens of experiments before they \_\_\_\_\_ (to achieve) satisfactory results. 5. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) decided to say nothing to Sidney until the answer \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) received. 6. The violinist \_\_\_\_\_ (to practise) the passage hour after hour until he \_\_\_\_\_ (to master) it at last. 7. No wonder he \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) very tired. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) too hard for the last 3 months. 8. He told me he \_\_\_\_\_ (not to see) much of her since he \_\_\_\_\_ (to move) to another place. 9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to tremble) like a leaf. 10. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) he \_\_\_\_\_ (to stay) at the same hotel where we first \_\_\_\_\_ (to meet). He \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) me he \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for me for some time already. 11. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) it in a voice he never \_\_\_\_\_ (to hear) before. 12. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to consult) his watch nervously several times before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) her at the end of the platform. 13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) fifteen and just \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) back from school for the summer holiday. 14. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) into the kitchen. Mary-Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (to put) the supper on a tray to take it into the dining-room. 15. At the end of the week the fishermen \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) they \_\_\_\_\_ (to sail) long enough to reach the shore, and there \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) no land in sight, they \_\_\_\_\_ (to understand) that they \_\_\_\_\_ (to lose) their course and \_\_\_\_\_ (to follow) the wrong route. 16. Soon I \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) a letter from her that she \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) from the South of France; she \_\_\_\_\_ (to want) me to meet her. 17. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to rain) heavily since the morning and she \_\_\_\_\_ (not to allow) the children to go out. 18. It \_\_\_\_\_ (not to rain) for more than 2 months, and the fruits \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall) before they \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) ripe, when one August night the people \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) raised by the sound of heavy drops beating against the roofs and window-panes. With the rain there \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) hope.

### Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Він упізнав мене лише після того, як я нагадав йому, що ми навчалися в одному класі протягом двох років. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми вже пробули в Лондоні два дні, коли вирішили відвідати картинну галерею. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ми знали, що він займається тенісом уже два роки. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Коли ми приїхали до Києва, наші сусіди жили вже там декілька років. Вони розповіли нам багато цікавого про історію міста. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Коли я закінчила університет, моя мама вже 20 років викладала англійську мову в школі. \_\_\_\_\_



### 4.3. FUTURE TENSES

#### The Future Simple

**Ex. 1. Comment on the use of the Future Simple.**

1. Soon summer **will come**. The weather **will be fine**. I'll **swim** in the river and **lie** in the sun. 2. Take your umbrella or you **will be soaked** to the skin. 3. Tell the mother that I'll **come** in time. 4. If the weather is fine we'll **go** for a walk. 5. If it doesn't rain I'll **go** to the library to prepare for my exam. 6. We are leaving for Kyiv tomorrow. I think we'll **have** a good time there. 7. When I have my day off I'll **spend** it in the country. 8. Do you know if the weather **will be fine** tomorrow? 9. I'll **go** boating if the weather is fine. 10. **Will** you **go** to the country as soon as you pass your exams? 11. Where **will** you **go** when Jane joins you? 12. They say the frost **will** soon **become severe**. 13. The rivers and lakes **will freeze over**. 14. When summer comes I'll go to the forest to pick berries and mushrooms. 15. He **will return** tomorrow. 16. On Sunday I'll **come** and **tell** you everything. 17. I hope you'll **do** it successfully. 18. I think you'll **like** this picture all your life. 19. I'll **tell** him if he comes, but I don't know when he **will come**. 20. I don't know if he **will do** it at all.

**Ex. 2. Write four types of questions to each sentence: (1) Yes/No questions, 2) Wh-questions, 3) Alternative and 4) Tag questions.**

1. In the future people will work in space.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

2. Her mother will be 40 next year.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

3. There will be elections in three months.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

4. We won't go to Spain this summer.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

5. The library won't be open during the holiday.

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Make predictions, use *I think* or *I don't think*.**

*I think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I don't think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I don't think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I don't think* \_\_\_\_\_  
*I don't think* \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Future Simple or the Present Simple.**

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) at 5 o'clock, we \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) an interesting programme on TV. 2. Jane will look after her little brother till her mother \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) back. 3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to the theatre the day after tomorrow if we \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) tickets. 4. Before you \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) home, ring me up. 5. If nothing \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen) I'll be back on the 3<sup>rd</sup> of May. 6. We cannot wait till you \_\_\_\_\_ (to make up) your mind. 7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (to be busy) on Sunday afternoon, we \_\_\_\_\_ (not to go) to the stadium. 8. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (to blow) from the east, we'll have rain. 9. There \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) no picnic tomorrow unless the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) clear. 10. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (to enter) the University I \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) three foreign languages. 11. Wait for me till I \_\_\_\_\_ (to return). 12. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not to go) on an excursion tomorrow, if the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) bad. 13. When you \_\_\_\_\_ (to be tired) we \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) working. 14. You will excuse me if I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a little late. 15. Before he \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin) to read a book, he \_\_\_\_\_ (to look through) it.

**Ex. 5. Match sentences with phrases denoting future actions.**

**will (the Future Simple)**  
**shall**  
**be going to**  
**the Present Simple**  
**the Present Continuous**

1. Our English course \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) on the 1<sup>st</sup> of October.
2. Can you come to lunch on Sunday? – I'm afraid, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on Sunday.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you (to rent) a tent at our campsite? – No, we \_\_\_\_\_ (to stay) in a beach house, I've just booked it.
4. I can't see you tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to spend) the day with my parents.
5. Don't phone me, please. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) the Wimbledon Championship.
6. Let's go to the cinema. \_\_\_\_\_ I (to book) tickets?
7. The sky is dark. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to rain).
8. I promise, I \_\_\_\_\_ (to call) you when I \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) there.
9. Hurry up! The meeting \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) at 12.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) a doctor. – I think, you \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a good doctor.
11. It's very hot in here. \_\_\_\_\_ I (to open) the window?
12. Do you want some tea? – No, thank you. I'm too tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to bed now.

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using the Present Simple in the subordinate clauses of time and condition.**

1. Якщо ви не поспішите, ви запізніться. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Якщо вона не працюватиме наполегливо, вона не здасть іспит. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Якщо ви повернетесь хвилини через десять, я зачекаю вас. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якщо не буде дощу, ми гарно проведемо час за містом. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я зателефоную тобі, як тільки повернуся додому. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Як тільки він з'явиться, дайте мені знати. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Ти підеш на концерт сьогодні ввечері? – Так. Я піду на концерт, якщо куплю квитки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Через 2 тижні йому буде 18. Він запросив тебе на свій день народження? – Ще ні, але я думаю, запросить обов'язково. Він завжди запрошує мене на свій день народження. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Що ти робитимеш, коли закінчиш університету? – Я працюватиму вчителем англійської мови. – Ти поїдеш у село? – Якщо я не знайду роботу в місті, я поїду в село. Я дуже люблю сільську місцевість. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Вночі буде прохолодно. Відчуваєш цей холодний вітер з півночі? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Що ти збираєшся робити ввечері? – Ми вечеряємо у друзів, ми домовилися зустрітися о 6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Думаєш, вони одружаться? – Звісно, вже все домовлено. Вони одружуються в липні. Думаю, їх подружнє життя буде щасливим. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Я не зможу користуватися телефоном, поки літак не приземлиться. Але як тільки я доберуся туди, я зателефоную вам. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Вона щойно перевірила розклад, її наступний іспит – в понеділок. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Давай сходимо у той новий ресторан в центрі міста. – Добре. Мені замовити столик на сьогоднішній вечір? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Ми збиралися відвідати бабусю вчора, але плани змінилися. Ми їдемо до неї завтра, вже купили квитки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. В будинку дуже холодно, ми замерземо. – Не переживай, я зара увімкну опалення. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Збирається на дощ. Якщо ми не візьмемо парасольки, ми змокнемо до нитки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Він поїде до моря, коли назбирає достньо грошей на поїздку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Я сподіваюся, що вона знайде шлях до того ресторану, якщо скористається GPS. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Якщо садженець прийметься, через десять років тут буде квітуче дерево. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Думаю, що в майбутньому штучний інтелект буде виконувати всю розумову діяльність людей. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Future Continuous

### Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and comment on the use of the Future Continuous.

1. Don't call on me this evening. I'll be revising for my exam in English. 2. It's so sunny and warm today. I suppose we'll be boating and fishing all day long. 3. Tomorrow at this time Helen will be enjoying sunshine on the beach. 4. Jane will be giving a party on Sunday. 5. A year from now I'll be earning more. You wait and see. 6. "The birds will be going to the South in a couple of days", Mary said. 7. When you come back, look out for me. I'll be waiting. 8. Carrie tells me you'll be going up to town in a few weeks to stay with them. 9. You won't be alone, Ann. I'll always be coming to see you, he'll always be coming too. 10. After Bill goes I'll be sitting here alone night after night.

### Ex. 2. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative.

1. My mother will be making dinner at 2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They will be having dinner when we come. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. John will be watching TV at 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She will be playing tennis from 5 to 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Don't call me. I will be speaking to a client. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He will be having a shower at 7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. By this time next year I will be living in my own flat. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I'll be meeting my friends after work. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. If you come at 3 I'll be studying. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I will be working all day on Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Answer the questions as in the model.

**Model:** – What will Ann be doing at twelve o'clock? (to have classes) – She'll be having classes.

1. What will Nell be doing tomorrow afternoon? (to drive to the seaside) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What will you be doing at this time next week? (to swim in the Black Sea) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What will Nick be doing at this time tomorrow? (to type business letters) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What will Jill be doing in the afternoon? (to do experiments in the laboratory) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What will Bob be doing tomorrow evening? (to read a book) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What will Mary be doing at 11 o'clock? (to guide an excursion) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What will Peter be doing the day after tomorrow? (to go through medical examination) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What will he be doing next term? (to learn German) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What will grandfather be doing when you arrive? (to work in the garden) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What will she be doing at the concert tomorrow? (to sing folk songs) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Continuous tense forms where necessary.**

1. Don't ring her up at 12 o'clock. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) her essay then.  
2. "Hush", \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) Amelia when Dobbin  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to enter) the room. His boots  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to creak). "I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) here  
to say good-bye, Amelia," \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) Dobbin. "Tomorrow at this time I  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to sail) across the Channel". Soon Dobbin's carriage  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to run) along the drive, but Amelia  
\_\_\_\_\_ (not to hear) the noise of the wheels. She  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to look) at her sleeping son, who \_\_\_\_\_  
(to smile) in his sleep. 3. What you \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) tomorrow at six o'clock?  
4. It is nearly autumn, soon the leaves \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn) colour. 5. I must be  
off now. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to wonder) what has happened to me. 6. Will you,  
please, wait a little? He \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) home soon. 7. Don't phone us  
between 7 and 9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to watch) tennis. 8. Can I call you at 9 in the  
morning? – Oh, no. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to sleep) then. – If I phone you at noon  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) at home? – No, I'm afraid not. I  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) my brother in hospital. Call me tomorrow evening. I  
\_\_\_\_\_ (not to do) anything special then. 9. Come to the main door when you  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive) at the hotel. Your guide \_\_\_\_\_  
(to wait) there. 10. You \_\_\_\_\_ (not to find) me at the office. Next week I  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to work) from home. 11. I'm afraid the manager  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to be able) to meet you tomorrow. He \_\_\_\_\_  
(to attend) a conference.

**Ex. 5. Translate into English.**

1. Я мушу йти, мама буде чекати на мене. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
2. Яка чудова погода! Давай поїдемо на озеро. Поки ти будеш купатися, я буду готуватися до  
екзамену в затінку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
3. Ми вже все приготували до поїздки. У цей час завтра ми будемо їхати машиною до моря. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
4. Не приходьте до мене з 3-ї до 5-ї години. У цей час я буду працювати в саду. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
5. Ви можете доставити холодильник у будь-який час завтра. Завтра я працюю з дому. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
6. Якщо ви підійдете завтра о 10, менеджер чекатиме на вас. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
7. Час нашого польоту складе приблизно три години. Ми летітимемо на висоті в 35 тисяч футів.  
Бажаємо вам гарного польоту. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
8. Приходь до нас увечері. З 7 до 9 ми дивитимемось футбольний матч. Принось горішки й чіпси.  
Гарно проведемо час разом. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
9. Ми з сестрою вже запланували прибирання квартири на суботу. Поки я чистиму килими, вона  
повитиратиме пил з меблів і поливатиме квіти. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## The Future Perfect. The Future Perfect Continuous

### Ex. 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Future Simple, the Future Perfect or the Present Perfect.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not to be able) to start the experiment before we \_\_\_\_\_ (not to obtain) the necessary data.
2. I'll come to your office as soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ (to get) their idea of the plan.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) home before you \_\_\_\_\_ (to arrive).
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) the exercises by 7 o'clock.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to go on) reading when the noise \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop).
6. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (to set) by the time we reach home.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) the exercises by the afternoon.
8. I am afraid we \_\_\_\_\_ (not to discuss) all the questions by the time they \_\_\_\_\_ (to come).
9. The secretary \_\_\_\_\_ (to look through) all the papers by the time the manager \_\_\_\_\_ (to come).
10. Let me know as soon as you \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) an appointment with him.
11. When you finish this book, you \_\_\_\_\_ (to learn) over a thousand words.
12. By the end of the month the committee \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) to some conclusion.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) at 5 if it \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop) raining by that time.

### Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect or the Future Perfect Continuous.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) painting your house by the time you get home.
2. By 9.00 pm they \_\_\_\_\_ (to play) the game for two hours.
3. The author \_\_\_\_\_ (to write) five chapters by the end of this year.
4. By the end of this year I \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in Lutsk for three years.
5. By the time he arrives in Lutsk, he \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) for three hours.
6. By Saturday I \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on the report for a week.
7. I hope he \_\_\_\_\_ (to cook) some meal for us by the time we get home.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to read) this book by 10.00 pm.
9. How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) English by the end of this term?
10. How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in Lutsk by the end of this year?
11. By 8 o'clock he \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) his work.
12. By 10 o'clock he \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) on his essay for two hours.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to skate) all day so we'll be exhausted.
14. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) since 9.00 am so they'll be tired.
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) back by 7.
16. When he retires he \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) here for twenty years.
17. You can come at 6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to finish) my work by then.
18. Don't worry! They \_\_\_\_\_ (to repair) it within the next few minutes.
19. They want the picture tomorrow, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not to finish) it by then.
20. You can't stay here next week as we \_\_\_\_\_ (not to finish) the decorating.

### Ex. 3. Open the brackets expressing the idea of future actions, using the Future Simple, the Future Continuous, the Future Perfect, the Future Perfect Continuous.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) by train for two days by the time we get there.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) tired by the time we come as she \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) all day.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) at school for ten years by 2030.
4. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ (to study) for five years when she gets her degree.
5. Don't be late! They \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for you at four o'clock at the bus stop.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in this house for some months by the time we find a new flat for them.
7. My husband \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for me at the airport when our plane lands.
8. Tomorrow at this time we \_\_\_\_\_ (to sit) at the table and \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) coffee.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to translate) this text by the time you come.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to translate) this text for an hour when you come.

**Ex. 4. Translate into English.**

1. Гості придуть рівно о п'ятій годині. До того часу я приготую обід і поставлю на стіл. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. У липні в студентів починаються канікули. До того часу вони складуть усі экзамени. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. О восьмій годині ми йдемо в кіно. До того часу я зроблю всі справи по господарству. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Ганна їде на південь сьогодні. Маргарита приєднається до неї через тиждень. До того часу, коли приїде Маргарита, Ганна вже вдосталь накупається і засмагне. Маргарита сподівається, що погода буде гарна і вона зможе добре відпочити та засмагнути до кінця відпустки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Ти вже написав твір? – Ні ще. Але я напишу до того часу, коли ти прийдеш. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Поїзд уже відправиться до того часу, як ми приїдемо на вокзал. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Він уже написав свою книгу? – Ще ні. Він усе ще пише. Я думаю, він напише її до кінця цього року.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Я сподіваюся, що я закінчу малювати цю картину до кінця вересня. Як тільки я закінчу малювати, я покажу її тобі. Мені буде цікаво почути твою думку на рахунок цієї картини. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Мої батьки святкуватимуть своє срібне весілля наступного місяця. Вони будуть одружені вже 25 років до того часу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Завтра о четвертій годині я працюватиму над доповіддю. Коли ти прийдеш до мене, я працюватиму над нею уже дві години, і, думаю, я закінчу писати ту доповідь до того часу, і ми підемо прогулятися.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Не приходь до мене о шостій. Я ще не повернуся додому до того часу. О шостій я якраз їхатиму в автобусі додому. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Якщо ви подзвоните йому о другій, його не буде вдома. Він працюватиме в саду в цей час. Він працюватиме там уже дві години до того часу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. Мій дідусь захоплюється садівництвом. Завтра він працюватиме в саду цілий день. Думаю, він буде стомлений увечері. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. На жаль, я не побачу свого друга завтра. Завтра він їде у відпустку. Він відпочиватиме на березі моря. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. Ми матимемо зустріч випускників школи наступного тижня, але моя найкраще шкільна подруга не прийде на цю зустріч, оскільки вона у відпустці зараз. Вона на морському узбережжі зараз. Вона відпочиватиме там уже два тижні, коли відбудеться ця зустріч. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

16. Моя бабуся піде на пенсію через рік. Вона пропрацює тридцять років у цій установі до того часу, як піде на пенсію. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

17. Наступного року вона закінчить університет і почне викладати англійську мову у нашій школі. Коли я закінчу університет, вона викладатиме англійську уже п'ять років. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. Я не впевнена, що закінчу роман до кінця цього року. Думаю, що коли ти нас навідаєш на Різдво, я все ще писатиму його. До речі, я працюватиму над ним уже більше двох років. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

19. Я пишу вам стосовно ремонту даху, який проводить ваша компанія. Хоча ремонтні роботи почалися в березні, вони все ще не закінчилися. На кінець цього місяця ваші працівники працюватимуть на нашому даху вже більше чотирьох місяців. Ми страждаємо від постійного шуму протягом всіх цих місяців. Сподіваємося, що ваша компанія завершить роботу до кінця місяця. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

20. Ми з друзями хочемо сходити в кіно. Фільм починається о 19.00. Зараз 18.30 і у нас займе приблизно 35-40 хвилин добратися до кінотеатру. Коли ми зрештою туди дістанемося, фільм вже почнеться. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Write your own sentences using By the end of this ... .**

By the end of this year I \_\_\_\_\_

By the end of this year we \_\_\_\_\_

By the end of this year ... \_\_\_\_\_

By the end of this year ... \_\_\_\_\_

By the end of this year ... \_\_\_\_\_



## 5. VERBS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

### Ex. 1. Give the passive transforms of the following sentences.

**Model 1:** Nick **opens** the door. – The door **is opened** by Nick.

1. They **speak** English in Great Britain. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I usually **finish** my work at 5. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The student **answers** the teacher's questions. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 2:** They **translated** the article with a dictionary. – The article **was translated** with a dictionary.

1. My sister **broke** the plate. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ann **wrote** a letter. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We **discussed** an interesting book yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 3:** We **shall sign** the treaty tomorrow. – The treaty **will be signed** tomorrow.

1. I'll **finish** my work at 6. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The teacher **will examine** the students in spring. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mr. White **will teach** us tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 4:** The students **are discussing** an interesting subject. – An interesting subject **is being discussed** by the students.

1. The teacher **is explaining** a new rule. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My sister **is washing** the dishes. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The girls **are cleaning** the room. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 5:** Mother **was cooking** supper when I came. – Supper **was being cooked** by mother when I came.

1. When I returned my sister **was washing** the dishes. \_\_\_\_\_
2. When I entered the students **were discussing** a book. \_\_\_\_\_
3. When I came into the class-room the teacher **was explaining** a new rule to the pupils. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 6:** They **have** already **translated** the text. – The text **has** already **been translated** by them.

1. Mum **has made** a tasty cake. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We **have shown** the guests around the city. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My sister **has** already **cleaned** the room. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 7:** They **had done** the work before we came. – The work **had been done** by them before we came.

1. They **had finished** the work by 6 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The teacher **had examined** all the students before I returned. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They **had discussed** all the questions before we returned. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 8:** They **will have published** this article by the end of May. – This article **will have been published** by the end of May.

1. We **shall have cleaned** the flat before Mum returns. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The teacher **will have examined** all the students before 4 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The students **will have translated** the text by the end of the lesson. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 2. Change the following sentences into the Passive Voice. Do not change the tense.

**Model:** Bill **mailed** the parcel. – The parcel **was mailed** by Bill.

1. The children have eaten the pie. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Louis wrote a letter. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mrs. Brown will teach our class. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Our company hired Mary. \_\_\_\_\_
5. My mum washed the windows. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Nick will send a telegram. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He told us many interesting things. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The students are discussing the report. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They will have finished the experiment by the end of this week. \_\_\_\_\_
10. People receive a lot of greeting cards on Christmas. \_\_\_\_\_
11. They presented a girl with a beautiful doll for the New Year. \_\_\_\_\_
12. He will publish a new textbook next year. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The teacher is explaining a new rule to the students. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Mary has watered the flowers. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Put questions to the underlined words and expressions.**

1. These newspapers were bought yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
2. This text will be translated at the next lesson. \_\_\_\_\_
3. A new theatre will have been built by the end of this year. \_\_\_\_\_
4. This foreign delegation was met at the airport. \_\_\_\_\_
5. This film is demonstrated in our cinema. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The book is being read now. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The telegram will be sent by his parents. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Yesterday we were invited by them to their evening party. \_\_\_\_\_
9. These exercises must be done by me. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The home task will have been prepared by tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Write sentences in the passive, as in the example.**

1. (The floor/not clean/yet). *The floor hasn't been cleaned yet.*
2. (The politician/interview/now) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (The Mona Lisa/paint/Leonardo da Vinci) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (My flat/burgle/last night). \_\_\_\_\_
5. (All the tickets/sell/before we got there) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (The dog/not feed/yet) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (The prizes/award/president/tomorrow) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (Tee/grow/India) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Rewrite the sentences in the passive voice.**

1. They are going to paint the house tomorrow. *The house is going to be painted tomorrow.*
2. She cleans the office every evening at 5:00. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He sent the party invitations yesterday afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They will award him a Nobel prize. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Volunteers are planting trees in the forest. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They hold the Summer Olympics every four years. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Did they discover America in 1492? \_\_\_\_\_
8. They have closed the road due to an oil spill. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They saw a dolphin swimming in the sea. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You should handle this package carefully. \_\_\_\_\_
11. They include tax in the bill. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Has she watered the plants? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct passive tense.**

1. A: When *is breakfast served* (breakfast/to serve)?  
B: From 7:00 to 10:00 in the morning.
2. A: I think this is the best bakery in town.  
B: I agree. Fresh bread \_\_\_\_\_ (to bake) here every morning.
3. A: Can I eat my sandwich here?  
B: Certainly not, sir. Food \_\_\_\_\_ (not/to allow) in the library.
4. A: There are not enough bins on our streets.  
B: I know. Something \_\_\_\_\_ (should/to do) about this problem.
5. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ (rubbish/to collect)?  
B: On Mondays and Thursdays.
6. A: Who \_\_\_\_\_ (the light bulb/to invent) by?  
B: Thomas Edison.
7. A: Did you hear that the airport is closed because of the snow?  
B: Yes. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to announce) on the radio this morning.
8. A: This is a really busy museum.  
B: Yes. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to visit) by over 1,000 people every day.
9. A: Are you going to Kelly's birthday party tonight?  
B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/to invite).
10. A: Did you hear that the jeweller's \_\_\_\_\_ (to break into) yesterday?  
B: Yes, I heard. But the thief \_\_\_\_\_ (to catch) soon afterwards.

**Ex. 7. Open the brackets using the verbs in the appropriate form in the Passive Voice.**

1. The dog (to give) \_\_\_\_\_ some food in ten minutes.
2. When I came into the class-room exercise 10 (to do) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My friend's car (to stole) \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
4. This car (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan.
5. This material (to learn) \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
6. This telegram (to receive) \_\_\_\_\_ by the evening.
7. Look! The ball (to play) \_\_\_\_\_ by the children in the yard.
8. The article (to translate) \_\_\_\_\_ by Friday.
9. When this news (to announce) \_\_\_\_\_? – It (to announce) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
10. Dictations (to write) \_\_\_\_\_ nearly every day.
11. This dictionary (to sell) \_\_\_\_\_ in all bookshops.
12. Listen! Some important news (to announce) \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Not all exercises (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
14. What exercise (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ now? – Exercise 5 is.
15. This table (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ of wood.

**Ex. 8. Fill in by or with.**

1. Most children are strongly influenced **by** their parents.
2. The jam sandwiches are made ..... white bread.
3. Jake was dismissed ..... his boss.
4. The parcels are tied ..... string.
5. The meal is eaten ..... chopsticks.
6. The show was presented ..... Ted Jones.
7. The basket is filled ..... fresh bread.
8. The dishes were prepared ..... a top chef.
9. The phone was answered ..... his colleague.
10. The room is decorated ..... flowers.
11. The song was performed ..... Rihanna.
12. This awful mess was made ..... Carol's dog.
13. My hair was cut ..... a top stylist.
14. The goal was scored ..... Liverpool's youngest player.
15. The beds are made up ..... clean sheets.
16. The shop was robbed ... a masked man.
17. Frank was congratulated ..... a friend.
18. The cups were filled ..... hot tea.
19. The building was designed ..... a Spanish architect.
20. Their bread is made ..... brown flour.

**Ex. 9. Change from the active into the passive. Omit the agent when appropriate.**

1. The Belgians make the best chocolate. *The best chocolate is made by the Belgians* (agent not omitted; essential to the meaning).
2. You should take these tablets before meals. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You must wash coloured clothes separately. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The teacher sent him out of the classroom. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Thousands of British tourists will visit Spain this summer. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The police are questioning him now. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Someone has made a complaint. \_\_\_\_\_
8. They saw a squirrel running in the park. \_\_\_\_\_
9. City workers are repairing the street lights on the motorway. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The waitress serves breakfast at 7am. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct passive tense.**

1. The Cannes Film Festival is one of the most famous film festivals in the world. It 1) **was first organized** (first/organise) in 1946 and 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) annually ever since. For around twelve days in May every year, the quiet seaside town of Cannes 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (transform) into a glamorous centre for world cinema. In fact, the Cannes Film Festival is so famous that film careers 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (often/make) or ruined there!

Cannes Film Festival 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (attend) by over 200,000 people every year, including producers, directors, film stars, celebrities, journalists and film fans. During the festival, hundreds of films 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (screen) and the best films and actors 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (give) awards. The most important award 8) \_\_\_\_\_ (call) the *Palme d'Or* or *Golden Palm*. It 9) \_\_\_\_\_ (present) at the festival's closing ceremony to the makers of the best film. Since its beginnings, some of the most wonderful films in film history 10) \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) at Cannes. And there is little doubt that many more 11) \_\_\_\_\_ (shown) there in the future!

2. The remains of on Anglo-Saxon ship 1) **were discovered** (discover) by archaeologists digging on the Kent coast last week. As was common in Anglo-Saxon England, it 2) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) that the ship 3) \_\_\_\_\_ (bury) alongside with a great warrior. Although none of the original wood from the ship remains, many items, including weapons and helmets 4) \_\_\_\_\_ (find). These finds 5) \_\_\_\_\_ (now/examine) by experts at the University of Kent. Afterwards the items 6) \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) so that they can 7) \_\_\_\_\_ (display) in the British Museum in London.

**Ex. 11. Rewrite the following text in the passive.**

James Cameron wrote and directed the hit science fiction film *Avatar*. 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox released the film in 2009. Most critics gave the film excellent reviews. The film impressed the public, too. Within 3 weeks of its release, *Avatar* had made over 1 billion dollars at the box office! Cameron will make two sequels. He has already asked the same actors to star in the sequels.

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Ex. 12. Use the information in the email to complete the sentences below.**

Hi Hilary,

I'm so pleased that you can come to our wedding! Jake and I have planned everything over the last few weeks. At the moment we're sending out all the final invitations. (Don't worry I haven't invited Jane Anderson. I know you don't get on with her!) I was a bit worried about the cost but last month Mum and Dad agreed to pay for the reception. They paid the deposit last week. That was a relief!

Have you decided what to wear yet? I've bought my wedding dress (it's a bit big so I have to alter it). The shop had reduced the price so it was only a few hundred pounds.

Do you remember Aunt Terri? Apparently she's got a fantastic new video camera, so she's going to film the ceremony. We've got a professional photographer as well. She'll take the formal photos. And Antonio from the Italian restaurant is doing the catering, so the food should be great!

I can't wait to see you there. It's going to be a great day.

Lucy

e. g. Everything *has been planned* by Jake and Lucy.

1. The final invitations \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
2. Jane Anderson \_\_\_\_\_ to the wedding.
3. The deposit for the reception \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
4. Lucy has bought her wedding dress but it has \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The price of the dress \_\_\_\_\_ by the shop.
6. The ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ by Lucy's aunt.
7. The formal photos \_\_\_\_\_ by a professional photographer.
8. The catering \_\_\_\_\_ by Antonio.

**Ex. 13. Turn the following active constructions into passive ones omitting the agent of the action.**

1. No one has made any mistakes. \_\_\_\_\_
2. What do you call it? \_\_\_\_\_
3. They asked us to stay a little longer. \_\_\_\_\_
4. One expects him to obey the regulation. \_\_\_\_\_
5. People have made great progress in physics. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They are discussing the possibility of new negotiations. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Everybody thought that Jack was clever but lazy. \_\_\_\_\_
8. People use coal for making materials. \_\_\_\_\_
9. People say it's difficult. \_\_\_\_\_
10. What books are people reading this year? \_\_\_\_\_
11. They elected him President of the Club last year. \_\_\_\_\_
12. They are rehearsing a new play at the National Theatre. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Someone found the children in the morning. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Nobody has ever treated me with such kindness. \_\_\_\_\_
15. She can arrange all things. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 14. Rewrite these sentences so they are true for you. Change the underlined part.**

1. My school was built in the 1960s. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My old photos are stored in the garage. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My favourite shirt is made of nylon. \_\_\_\_\_
4. My hair is usually cut by my mother. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I don't like food that has been fried. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 15. Translate into English.**

1. Що тут обговорюють? – Тут обговорюють цікаву книжку. – Ви часто обговорюєте книжки? – Досить часто. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Робота вже закінчена? – Ні ще. – Коли її закінчать? – Її закінчать через 2 години. Приходьте трохи пізніше. – Гаразд, я прийду через 2 години. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Яку вправу роблять зараз? – Зараз роблять вправу 10. А вправа 9 уже зроблена? – Дехто уже зробив, а дехто саме закінчує. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Викладач сказав, що про цього молодого письменника багато говорять. Ти читала що-небудь з його творів? – На жаль, ні. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Мама сказала, що пакунок буде відправлений завтра. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Кажуть, що школа буде збудована до першого вересня. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Микола запитав, коли буде отримана його робота. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Де продають цей словник? – Цей словник продають зараз на проспекті Волі. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Нас запрошують на зустріч, і попросили, щоб ми прийшли вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Мене запитали, що я роблю. Я відповіла, що я відпочиваю. Тоді мені запропонували приєднатися до їхньої компанії. \_\_\_\_\_

11. Мене запитали, чого я прийшла. Я відповіла, що мене запрошували сюди. \_\_\_\_\_

12. У минулому місяці був виданий підручник, який з таким нетерпінням чекали. Зараз його обговорюють у нашому університеті. Про нього вже сказано багато цікавого. Ми раді, що до кінця навчального року студенти отримають цікавий підручник. \_\_\_\_\_

13. Лекції цього викладача слухають з великим інтересом. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Мені сказали, що біля автобусної стації будується 2 великі будинки. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Коли я приєднався до групи туристів, їм саме розповідали історію цього міста. \_\_\_\_\_

## 6. DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

**Ex. 1. Change the following sentences into indirect speech. Remember that in indirect speech *this* is changed into *that*, *these* into *those*, *now* into *then*, *ago* into *before*, *here* into *there*, *today* into *that day*, *yesterday* into *the day before*, *tomorrow* into *the next day*, *last year* into *the year before*.**

1. She said, "I saw him at 5 o'clock yesterday". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The teacher said, "London is the capital of England". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The girl said, "I am doing my homework now". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The doctor said, "I'll come again this evening". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The man said, "I was at home two days ago". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. My aunt said, "I'll be at home tomorrow". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Ann remarked, "I learnt English at school last year". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Our guest remarked, "The weather was rainy and windy yesterday and it seemed rather unpleasant to go out".  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Mary said, "We arrived in Lviv two days ago". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Roger said, "Two days ago the weather was especially fine with the sun shining brightly high in the sky". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Alice added, "All day yesterday we were making all the necessary preparations for our hiking holiday". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Helen said, "I was going to call on you last night". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. "I came in haste to see how you are, Hortense, and how Robert is, too," he said. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. "I didn't know you painted only water-colours....," she added. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. "We thought it would be best to tell him you had a difficult time," Ann said. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. "Uncle Elliot says he often is surprised at your power of observation. He says nothing much escapes you, but that your greatest asset as a writer is your common sense," the man remarked. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. "Oh, Grandma," I cried, "I didn't know you were back". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. "Before the fliers crashed," the operator said "he told that there are still a few alive in these mountains." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. She said, "I have been teaching English in this school since I graduated from the University." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. She said, "I must meet her at the station at 5 o'clock." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. Miss Carter then said, "If you both excuse me, I think I'll be off to bed. I really am very tired indeed, I can hardly keep my eyes open." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. "I saw you pass her a letter," he said. "I ask no more about that. I just wonder whether you can really see her." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. "You've changed your room back again," said Nan to Felicity with disapproval. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. "I shall have to go away in a moment," said Mor, speaking very gently, "and I shall like to take this chance to say that I'm very sorry." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

25. "I really must try to buy it from you, Mr. Bledyard," she said, "and hand it over to my dressmaker." \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**Ex. 2. Use the following sentences in past tenses. Mind the changes which take place in subordinate clauses due to the sequence of tenses: *this* is changed into *that*, *these* into *those*, *now* into *then*, *ago* into *before*, *here* into *there*, *today* into *that day*, *yesterday* into *the day before*, *tomorrow* into *the next day*, *last year* into *the year before*.**

**Model:** – Nobody **knows** what he **means**. – Nobody **knew** what he **meant**.

1. We think that she is joking. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. My teacher believes I shall succeed in my studying. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. He says he has left his car in the yard. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. They say they will come to see us tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. We do not know when he came home yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Helen doesn't know when her friend will come to her. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. My friend says he will come to me tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. She says she will let me know when they come. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. They are sure we shall be waiting for them in the bar. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. He says he has never been to London. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
- 

**Ex. 3. Complete the indirect statements. Make all the changes you can.**

Politician (to reporters): I'm ready to answer your questions.

The politician told the reporters read **that he was ready** to answer their questions.

1) Reporter: People were offended by remarks in your speech.

A reporter said people \_\_\_\_\_ remarks in the politician's speech.

2) Politician: I didn't make any offensive remarks in my speech yesterday.

The politician stated \_\_\_\_\_ any offensive remarks in his speech \_\_\_\_\_.

3) Politician: I was just describing my plans for the next year.

He said that \_\_\_\_\_ his plans for the next year.

4) Reporter: You must know that people have asked for your resignation.

The reporter said that the politician \_\_\_\_\_ for his resignation.

5) Politician: I can't understand it myself. I simply described the situation in the country.

The politician said \_\_\_\_\_ himself.

He \_\_\_\_\_ the situation in the country.

6) Politician: I have been working very hard and I see no reason to resign.

He added that \_\_\_\_\_ and he saw no reason to resign.

7) Politician: I will make a full statement about my plans tomorrow afternoon.

He ended by saying that \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

**Ex. 4. Put the following statements into indirect speech using the verbs in brackets.**

1. She says to me, "This museum has the biggest collections of pictures in the world." (to assure). \_\_\_\_\_

---

2. He has just said to his friends, "I am leaving for Kyiv on Monday." (to inform). \_\_\_\_\_

---

3. The teacher has just said, "Two students of our group were awarded prizes for their poems." (to announce). \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

4. He said, "I am going to work on my paper in the public library." (to remark). \_\_\_\_\_

5. She said, "Yes, you were right yesterday." (to admit). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. The following sentences are in indirect speech. Give the direct words of the speaker.**

1. I asked my mother if she would go to the theatre with me. \_\_\_\_\_

2. He asked me if I had ever been to London. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Nick said that he had already seen that film. \_\_\_\_\_

4. My best friend told me that she would go to the Black Sea the following year. \_\_\_\_\_

5. My daughter asked me to bring her some milk. \_\_\_\_\_

6. John asked his friend not to mention it to anybody. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Alice said that they had been quarrelling since the morning. \_\_\_\_\_

8. My mother told me to sit down at the table and do my homework. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Mother reminded her daughter to clean her teeth before going to bed. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Alec said that his friend lived in Kyiv. \_\_\_\_\_

11. Helen said she would go to the doctor the next day. \_\_\_\_\_

12. The woman said that she had left her bag at the office. \_\_\_\_\_

13. He asked me what I was doing there. \_\_\_\_\_

14. I asked my friend what he would do if he didn't buy the book he needed. \_\_\_\_\_

15. The student said that she didn't like the main character of that story and explained that the main character was a selfish person. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Change the following into indirect questions beginning with the words given.**

1. Can I have some more pocket money? – He asked if he \_\_\_\_\_

2. Where were you born? – He asked where I \_\_\_\_\_

3. How far is the stadium? – He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_

4. Are you still living in London? – He wanted to know if/whether \_\_\_\_\_

5. Do you work in the central branch or in the provinces? – He wondered if/whether \_\_\_\_\_

6. Are you going to give me the money or not? – He wanted to know if/whether \_\_\_\_\_

7. Did he bring the book back? – I didn't know if/whether \_\_\_\_\_

8. Who bought the Picasso painting? – He wondered who \_\_\_\_\_

9. Have you always lived in this town? – He wondered if/whether \_\_\_\_\_

10. What time is it? – He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Put the following questions into indirect speech.**

1. "When did you begin," said Rain, "to feel like this?" \_\_\_\_\_

2. "Why did you do that?" said Mor gently. \_\_\_\_\_

3. "Is it finished now?" asked Evvy. \_\_\_\_\_

4. "Where did you get it?" said Mor. \_\_\_\_\_

5. "What can I show you now?" said Tim. \_\_\_\_\_

6. "Nan," said Mor, "are you really all right for the journey? Have got something to read?" \_\_\_\_\_



7. "Where did you say she was?" asked Felicity. "Staying with him?" \_\_\_\_\_

8. "Is that her real name?" said Felicity. \_\_\_\_\_

9. "Have you seen Demoyte's glamour girl?" said Cardle. \_\_\_\_\_

10. "Can I eat the rest of this?" said Felicity. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Translate into English.**

1. Мері сказала, що піде в бібліотеку після занять. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Олег сказав, що він ходить до бібліотеки один раз на тиждень. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Мама мене запитала, чи бачила я сьогодні Ніну. Я відповіла, що бачила Ніну годину тому. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Моя подруга запитала мене, де я буду о п'ятій годині. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Я попросила Ніну дати мені цю книжку. Вона відповіла, що не може дати мені її, оскільки книжка потрібна їй самій. Ніна пообіцяла, що вона дасть мені цю книжку, як тільки прочитає її. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Ми думали, що закінчимо роботу до шостої години, але раптом почав іти дощ, і нам довелося повернутися додому. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Ганна відкрила книгу і побачила фотографію, яку вона не бачила з дитинства. Це була фотографія її батьків. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Ти все ще пишеш свого листа? Ти сидиш над ним уже дві години. – Як ти можеш говорити такі речі? Я пишу його лише 15 хвилин. Я думаю, що ще писатиму близько 15-ти хвилин. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Коли ви закінчите свою роботу? – Я думаю, ми закінчимо її до другої години. Приходьте о другій. Якщо щось не буде готове, я думаю, ви почекаєте трішки. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Він сказав, що не зможе закінчити цю роботу сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_

11. Ольга пообіцяла, що допоможе зробити бутерброди, якщо я зачекаю на неї, але я відповіла, що не зможу чекати на неї, оскільки я повинна бути вдома о шостій. \_\_\_\_\_

12. Вона сказала, що не розуміє, що я маю на увазі. \_\_\_\_\_

13. Петро сказав, що він залишиться на декілька хвилин, якщо я не заперечую. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Моя подруга сказала, що зустрине мене на вокзалі, якщо ми приїдемо вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Вона запитала, чи я знаю цю дівчину, і якщо я знаю її, треба спробувати пояснити їй усю ситуацію. \_\_\_\_\_

16. Моя подруга сказала, що зустрине мене на вокзалі, якщо ми приїдемо вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_

17. Олег пообіцяв, що розкаже нам про цю екскурсію, як тільки повернеться. \_\_\_\_\_

18. Вона запитала, чи я знаю цю дівчину, і якщо я знаю її, треба спробувати пояснити їй усю ситуацію. \_\_\_\_\_

19. Ми погодилися зразу, що це було найкраще місце, яке ми коли-небудь бачили. \_\_\_\_\_

20. Нел помітив, що, якщо ми не поспішимо, ми запізнимося на останній поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Put the following imperative sentences into indirect speech using the verbs in brackets.**

1. She said to her friend, "Have a cup of tea." (to offer). \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. She said to me, "Work at your sounds and intonation if you want to speak well." (to advise). \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. She said to her friend, "Please come and see me whenever you have a few hours to spare." (to beg). \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He said to his little sister, "Don't switch on the TV." (to forbid). \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The teacher said to the student, "Don't write too close." (to tell). \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Put the following orders, requests, offers, suggestions, advice into indirect speech.**

1. "Don," said Felicity, "please! I'll do anything you like." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. "Do as you like," said Demoyte. "Good-buy." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. "Daddy," said Felicity, "don't be too cross with Don." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. "You'd better go straight to bed," said Nan. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. "I suppose I ought to go back," said Mor. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. "Would you like some coffee?" asked Demoyte. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. "Yes, yes," said Rain, "please go. I must work now. Please go." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. "Don't give that stuff," said Demoyte. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. "Let's go round the other way," said Mor. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. "Let me explain," began Bill, "about last night." \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 11. Put the following exclamations into indirect speech.**

1. "Oh, for Christ's sake, Nan," said Mor, "do shut up! Do stop talking about money!" \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. "Handy!" He shouted over the banisters. "Roses for Mrs. Mor". \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. "How wonderfully children observe!" said Miss Carter. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. "You seem disappointed!" said Mor, smiling faintly. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. "Oh, give me patience!" said Demoyte. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 7. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**Ex. 1. Read the following sentences. Comment on the Sequence of Tenses. Translate these sentences into Ukrainian.**

**Model:** Roger and Alice told us that they had already cut sandwiches for a dozen people.

As the verb **to tell** in the principal clause is used in its Past Indefinite tense form, the verb **to cut** in the object subordinate clause is used in its Past Perfect tense form to express an action prior to that of the principal clause.

1. On Saturday morning Alice looked out of the window and remarked that the sun was shining brightly in the cloudless sky. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Alice complained that they had been quarrelling since morning. \_\_\_\_\_

3. The organizer informed the students they would start for Lake Svityaz in an hour. \_\_\_\_\_

4. The students knew the time would pass quickly in talking, singing and joking. \_\_\_\_\_

5. We knew they had already returned from their picnic lunch. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Alice was certain Roger would not be able to realize half his plan. \_\_\_\_\_

7. It was clear the Hiltons would have got everything arranged for their trip by 7 o'clock in the morning. \_\_\_\_\_

8. He was sure the children were in the country. \_\_\_\_\_

9. I didn't think Mary would come and visit me. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Mary remarked that she had enough food for a dozen people. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the required tense according to the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.**

1. I thought he \_\_\_\_\_ (to come) in time.

2. Tom wanted to know what \_\_\_\_\_ (to become) of the books which he \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) here a day before.

3. I finally said that I \_\_\_\_\_ (not to wish) to hear any more about the subject.

4. Mark remembered that he \_\_\_\_\_ (to leave) the cat at the hotel.

5. We heard that he \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) very clever.

6. My wife told me that in an hour she \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) for a walk.

7. The boy did not know that water \_\_\_\_\_ (to boil) at 100.

8. He told us how he \_\_\_\_\_ (to live) in the North. We were very astonished when he said that in the Far North the sun never \_\_\_\_\_ (to rise) in winter and never \_\_\_\_\_ (to set) in summer.

9. Last year I skated much better than I \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) now.

10. The teacher told us that there \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) 26 letters in the English alphabet.

11. The pupil who \_\_\_\_\_ (to answer) questions now did not know any English last year.

12. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) surprised to find us there. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) she \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) that we \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) hours ago. Then she \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) me she \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) probably for a sail.

13. One day the boy asked his father how long elephants \_\_\_\_\_ (to live).

14. Poor uncle \_\_\_\_\_ (to rush) to the nursery to see what his young son \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) there as there \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) a terrible noise in the house.

15. They \_\_\_\_\_ (to begin) to ask me questions about myself, and pretty soon they \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) my story. Finally they \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) me I \_\_\_\_\_ (to answer) their purpose. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) I \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) sincerely glad and ask what it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be). Then one of them \_\_\_\_\_ (to hand) me an envelope and \_\_\_\_\_ (to say) I \_\_\_\_\_ (to find) the explanation inside.

**Ex. 3. Translate into English.**

1. Я чув, Ви знайшли нову роботу. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Він пообіцяв, що ніколи не заговорить зі мною після цього. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Мама вирішила, що вона більше не питиме каву перед сном. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ми хотіли знати, хто співає у сусідній кімнаті. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ми не знали, де вона, і що вона робить. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Мама сказала, що тато все ще спить і попросила розбудити його. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я не міг згадати, де я поклав свої окуляри. Я запитав дружину, чи вона не бачила їх. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Він сказав, що він складе всі іспити до першого липня, а в липні поїде провідати своїх родичів у Полтаві. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Олена пообіцяла, що всі завершать роботу до шостої години. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Моя подруга наголосила, що вона відпочиватиме в Чорногорії уже тиждень, коли я приєднаюся до неї. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Мій кузен пообіцяв, що він провідає нас наступного року. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Мама запитала, що я роблю. Я відповів, що я роблю уроки. Мама запитала, чи повчу я уроки до шостої години. Я відповів, що я не впевнений у цьому, оскільки у мене ще багато роботи. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Він не хотів вірити, що вони нас не розуміють. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Вони спитали мене, що я робитиму завтра і запросили мене приєднатися до них. Я відповів, що мені хотілося провести вихідні вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Учора я зустрів свою одногрупницю біля театру і запитав її, що вона тут робить. Вона відповіла, що вона чекає на свою сестру. Вона чекала на неї уже 15 хвилин. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Use the required tense-aspect forms in the following sentences, observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.**

1. He hastened back home in the hope that the guests \_\_\_\_\_ (not to go) all yet.
2. Well, I don't think I ever \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) you before.
3. She ended by saying that she \_\_\_\_\_ (to think) she \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) a mistake.
4. She knew what \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) on their minds.
5. She felt that her father \_\_\_\_\_ (not to want) to disturb her.
6. She had telephoned her husband to the office to say that her brother \_\_\_\_\_ (to return) from abroad.
7. An old friend rang up to ask if they

\_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a good time in Italy, how Elisabeth \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel), and whether she \_\_\_\_\_ (can) go with his wife to a concert on Sunday morning. 8. I could see that he \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) glad that the talk \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn) to a new subject. 9. It's odd that they both \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn) up there about the same time. 10. She had not yet figured out what she \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) and she \_\_\_\_\_ (to hope) to be able to wait a little. 11. It was possible that Jack \_\_\_\_\_ (to hang) around. 12. She knew that John \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) very hard and \_\_\_\_\_ (not to agree) certainly to taking a holiday at the moment. 13. She didn't know why she \_\_\_\_\_ (to invent) suddenly the story. 14. He wondered if Sinclair \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) to go to his father to get the money and \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) to explain why he \_\_\_\_\_ (to need) it. 15. She felt that her father \_\_\_\_\_ (not to want) to disturb her.

**Ex. 5. Use the verbs in brackets in appropriate tense forms observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.**

1. Jude told his name, and said she \_\_\_\_\_ to see him as an old friend who \_\_\_\_\_ kind to her in her youthful days (to come, to be). 2. I said I \_\_\_\_\_ on the next day (to return). 3. He wondered what she \_\_\_\_\_ (to think). 4. I inquired how little Emily \_\_\_\_\_ (to be). 5. Mr. Carker smiled, and said he \_\_\_\_\_ sure of it (to be). 6. I said I \_\_\_\_\_ delighted to see her (to be). 7. "I didn't know you \_\_\_\_\_ only water-colours..." (to paint). 8. I asked him whether Larry \_\_\_\_\_ after all to Paris (to go). 9. Agnes was very glad to see me, and told me that the house \_\_\_\_\_ like itself since I \_\_\_\_\_ it (not to be negative, to leave). 10. She was speculating upon what her future \_\_\_\_\_ (to be). 11. "We thought it would be best to tell him you \_\_\_\_\_ a difficult time" (to have). 12. He knew that we \_\_\_\_\_ if he \_\_\_\_\_ to be indifferent to our company (to be hurt, to seem). 13. Then he said that he \_\_\_\_\_ in another college, and \_\_\_\_\_ us, with a cordial, impersonal good night (to dine, to leave). 14. He called one of the foremen, to ask when the barn \_\_\_\_\_ entirely, and was told that at the end of the week the hay and stock \_\_\_\_\_ be installed (to finish, can). 15. When he saw that someone was looking down at him, he did not immediately realize who this someone \_\_\_\_\_ (to be). 16. "Uncle Elliot says he often \_\_\_\_\_ surprised at your power of observation (to be). He says nothing much \_\_\_\_\_ you, but that your greatest asset as a writer \_\_\_\_\_ your common sense" (to escape, to be). 17. "Oh, Grandma," I cried, "I didn't know you \_\_\_\_\_ back" (to be).

**Ex. 6. Reproduce the following dialogue in indirect speech with reference to the past. Observe the rules of Sequence of Tenses.**

- I say, Nick. You look very tired.
- Yes, I am a little tired. I took part in the skiing competition, and it was difficult to ski because it was snowing hard.
- I like different kinds of sports.
- As for me, I prefer summer sports, such as swimming and tennis. It's too cold in winter.
- You say so because you have never skied in the country. If you join us next Sunday, you'll enjoy a real skiing trip.
- If you say it's good, I'll try this kind of sport too.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English.**

1. Мері сказала, що піде в бібліотеку після занять. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Олег сказав, що він ходить до бібліотеки один раз на тиждень. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Мама мене запитала, чи бачила я сьогодні Ніну. Я відповіла, що бачила Ніну годину тому. \_\_\_\_\_

- 
- 
4. Моя подруга запитала мене, де я буду о п'ятій годині. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
5. Я попросила Ніну дати мені цю книжку. Вона відповіла, що не може дати мені її, оскільки книжка потрібна їй самій. Ніна пообіцяла, що вона дасть мені цю книжку, як тільки прочитає її. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
6. Ми думали, що закінчимо роботу до шостої години, але раптом почав іти дощ, і нам довелося повернутися додому. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
7. Ганна відкрила книгу і побачила фотографію, яку вона не бачила з дитинства. Це була фотографія її батьків. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
8. Ти все ще пишеш свій твір? Ти сидиш над ним уже дві години. – Як ти можеш говорити такі речі? Я пишу його лише 15 хвилин. Я думаю, що ще писатиму близько 15-ти хвилин. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
9. Коли ви закінчите свою роботу? – Я думаю, ми закінчимо її до другої години. Приходьте о другій. Якщо щось не буде готове, я думаю, ви почекаєте трішки. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
10. Він сказав, що не зможе закінчити цю роботу сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
11. Ольга пообіцяла, що допоможе зробити бутерброди, якщо я зачекаю на неї, але я відповіла, що не зможу чекати на неї, оскільки я повинна бути вдома о шостій. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
12. Вона сказала, що не розуміє, що я маю на увазі. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
13. Петро сказав, що він залишиться на декілька хвилин, якщо я не заперечую. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
14. Мері сказала, що вони поїдуть, перш ніж я піду до них. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
15. Мій брат сказав, що купить цей словник, якщо я дам йому гроші. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
16. Моя подруга сказала, що зустріне мене на вокзалі, якщо ми приїдемо вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
17. Олег пообіцяв, що розкаже нам про цю екскурсію, як тільки повернеться. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
18. Ми погодилися зразу, що це було найкраще місце, яке ми коли-небудь бачили. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
19. Нел помітив, що, якщо ми не поспішимо, ми запізнимося на останній поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
- 
20. Аліса скаржилася, що вони сваряться із самого ранку. \_\_\_\_\_
-

## 8. THE OBLIQUE MOOD

### 8.1. SUBJUNCTIVE I

#### Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian the sentences with Subjunctive I.

1. May there always be sunshine! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Far be it from me to go there. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Confound that day when I saw you for the first time. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Long live the king! \_\_\_\_\_
5. God bless you! \_\_\_\_\_
6. The devil take that money! \_\_\_\_\_
7. The devil take him! He has forgotten my key! \_\_\_\_\_
8. May your day be wonderful! \_\_\_\_\_
9. Curse these lessons! \_\_\_\_\_
10. Far be it from me to go to this party! \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Translate into English using Subjunctive I.

1. Будь прокляте те багатство! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Будь проклятий той день, коли він прийшов! \_\_\_\_\_
3. Будь проклята розлука! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я знаю, ти маєш намір вступити до університету. Нехай тобі щастить! \_\_\_\_\_
5. У тебе серйозні наміри одружитися з нею? Ну що ж, нехай буде так. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Нехай ваш шлюб буде щасливим. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Нехай береже вас Господь під час цієї подорожі. \_\_\_\_\_
8. До біса уроки! Я їду в кіно. \_\_\_\_\_
9. До біса таку дружбу. Краще бути самому. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Прокляття із цією негодою! У мене постійно болить голова. \_\_\_\_\_
11. У мене в думках не було на тебе ображатись! \_\_\_\_\_
12. Не дай Боже завтра буде дощ! \_\_\_\_\_
13. До біса манери, я їду додому! \_\_\_\_\_
14. Хай вічно живе любов! \_\_\_\_\_
15. До біса політику! Ми ситі нею по горло. \_\_\_\_\_
16. У мене й у думках не було сперечатися. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Боже борони! У мене й у думках не було робити це. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Слава Україні! Слава українському народові! \_\_\_\_\_
19. Нехай збудуться твої мрії! \_\_\_\_\_
20. Отже, ви вирушаєте. Нехай подорож ваша буде щасливою! \_\_\_\_\_
21. Хай живе королева! \_\_\_\_\_
11. Прокляття! Чорт забирай! \_\_\_\_\_
22. Хай усе буде добре! \_\_\_\_\_
23. Хай буде, що буде, але я все-таки ризикну. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Насмілюсь зазначити, що ви, пане, помиляєтесь. \_\_\_\_\_
25. До біса роботу! Я їду в подорож. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 3. Complete the sentences in part A , using the halves from part B.

- A.**
1. Far be it from me ... \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Be that as it may, but... \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Peace ... \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Success .... \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Blessed be he .... \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Manners ... \_\_\_\_\_
  7. I suggest ... \_\_\_\_\_
  8. The workers demand ... \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Blessed be .... \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Be yours ... . \_\_\_\_\_

- B.** a) ... who expects nothing, for he will be disappointed. b)... to marry a woman for her money. c) ... I know nothing about it. d) ... attend you. e) ... be hanged! f) ... the day of their recovery. g) ... be with you! h) ... they be paid in time. i) ... a lucky choice! j) ... he do the job.

## 8.2. SUBJUNCTIVE II

### Simple sentences

#### Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian the following sentences in Subjunctive II.

1. If only the wind were over! \_\_\_\_\_
2. If only your mother could see you! \_\_\_\_\_
3. Oh, if they could help us! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Oh, if she had taken my advice then! \_\_\_\_\_
5. Oh, if only somebody had warned them then! \_\_\_\_\_
6. Oh, if she agreed to wait one more week! \_\_\_\_\_
7. Oh, if you gave us a break! \_\_\_\_\_
8. If it were not raining so heavily! \_\_\_\_\_
9. If he were at home now! \_\_\_\_\_
10. If she were not sleeping now! \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Translate into English using Subjunctive II.

1. Хоч би він вибачив мене! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Якби ж то я знала про це вчора! \_\_\_\_\_
3. Якби ж то я не витратила так багато грошей на парфуми! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби ж то ми були разом зараз! \_\_\_\_\_
5. Хоч би він зараз повірив мені! \_\_\_\_\_
6. Хоча б погода не погіршилася! \_\_\_\_\_
7. Хоч би ніхто не запізнився! \_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби я була королевою! \_\_\_\_\_
9. Хоча б йому не розповіли про цю аварію! \_\_\_\_\_
10. Якби він був людиною, на яку можна покластися! \_\_\_\_\_
11. Хоча б вона залишила записку тобі! \_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби в мене не було так обмаль часу! \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби мої батьки були поряд зі мною зараз! \_\_\_\_\_
14. Хоча б зима скінчилася скоріше! \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби ж ти послухався моєї поради тоді! \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби ж то весна була цілий рік! \_\_\_\_\_
17. Якби ж то я додзвонилася до нього вчора! \_\_\_\_\_
18. Якби ж то хто-небудь подарував мені машину! \_\_\_\_\_
19. Хоч би мені не завалити цей екзамен! \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якби мені дали ще один шанс! \_\_\_\_\_
21. Якби ми могли зробити це самі! \_\_\_\_\_
22. Якби ми зустрілися раніше! \_\_\_\_\_
23. Якби я послухалася батьків і не йшла туди вчора! \_\_\_\_\_
24. Якби вода не була такою холодною! \_\_\_\_\_
25. Хоч би мені знайти такий словник! \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби ж то мені запропонували цю роботу в минулому році! \_\_\_\_\_
27. Хоч би він усвідомив, наскільки це важливо! \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби ж то мій дідусь був живий! \_\_\_\_\_
29. Хоч би зуб перестав нити! \_\_\_\_\_
30. Хоч би їй вистачило мужності сказати правду! \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 3. Translate into English using “you’d better / you’d best + the bare infinitive” to express a piece of advice or admonition.

1. Ти б краще не пропускала цю лекцію. Вона дуже важлива. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ти б краще не покладалася на нього. Він – ненадійна людина. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ви б краще провідали його негайно, адже він хворіє вже тиждень. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ти б краще подумав про наслідки. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ви б краще взяли таксі, а то запізнитеся на літак. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ти б краще дотримувала слова. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ви б краще сказали йому всю правду якомога скоріше. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Було б найкраще, якби ти помовчала і не втручалася в наші справи. \_\_\_\_\_



9. Було б найкраще, якби ви сказали про свої плани на літо вже сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ви б краще заховали цю записку від нього. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Ви б краще не запізнювались. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Ти б краще купила собі теплі чобітки. Зима, здається, буде суворою. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Було б найкраще, якби ти дотримувалася дієти. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ти б краще не засиджувалася допізна. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Ти б краще не пила кави так пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
16. У тебе температура. Ти б краще нікуди не йшла сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Ти б краще пила чай замість кави. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Було б найкраще, якби ти пішла туди негайно і зробила все сама. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Було б найкраще, якби ви показали нам цей сертифікат негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
20. У тебе нездоровий вигляд останнім часом. Ти б краще пішла до лікаря. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Не заходьте туди. Ви б краще зачекали тут. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ви б дали мені ще один шанс. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Ти б ще раз не намагалася це робити. \_\_\_\_\_
24. На вулиці ожеледиця. Ти б краще не брав машину сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ти б краще не ризикував. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Ти б краще спочатку подумав, а тоді відповідав. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Чого ти сидиш у приміщенні в таку погоду? Ти б краще пішла скупалася. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Ви б краще взяли таксі, а то запізнитися на літак. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ви б краще попередили батьків про ваш приїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Було б найкраще, якби ви зателефонували їй негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Ти б краще не сунула носа. Це нечемно. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Ти б краще не тримала дітей на повітрі так довго в таку сиру погоду. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Було б найкраще, якби ти прийняв ці ліки негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ти б краще вчинила за нашим прикладом. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Було б найкраще, якби ти кинув палити. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Express some preference using “I’d rather / I’d sooner + the infinitive”.**

**Model:** Do you want to go upstairs with me? – I’d rather wait downstairs.

1. Shall we watch the TV programme? (to go to bed) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Shall I pack your things for you? (to do it myself) \_\_\_\_\_
3. I can show you how to do it. (to learn it myself) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Shall we take a taxi? (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_
5. Let’s have a substantial dinner. (to have a snack) \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ann wants us to come to her place on Sunday. (to go to the country) \_\_\_\_\_
7. Let’s stay at home tonight. (to go to the cinema) \_\_\_\_\_
8. Let’s have lunch. (to have a cup of coffee only) \_\_\_\_\_
9. Shall we go to the cinema tonight? (to stay at home) \_\_\_\_\_
10. Shall we go to this concert? (to see a good film) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate into English the following sentences expressing preference.**

1. Він волів би не писати того листа, але його змусили. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми б скоріше нікуди не йшли, а залишилися вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я не люблю, коли мені щось нав’язують. Я б воліла робити висновки сама. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Я скоріше пограв би в теніс учора, я не люблю грати в більярд. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я б охочіше поїхала до Великобританії, ніж до Америки. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я б охочіше залишилася тут, щоб наглянути за дітьми. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я б скоріше прийняла пропозицію Джейн, мені не подобається пропозиція Джейка. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я б воліла не втручатися у їхню сварку. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я не воліла б говорити про такі речі в присутності дітей. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Погода чудова. Я б охочіше прогулялася в парку. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Мама хотіла б, щоб я не втручалася у ведення домашнього господарства. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Мої друзі хотіли б, щоб ми провели в Карпатах ще декілька днів, проте через певні обставини нам довелося повернутися. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Моя подруга дуже хотіла б, щоб я провела те літо в неї, проте я не змогла. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Мама хотіла б, щоб я спекла торт, проте я відмовилася. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Ми хотіли б, щоб ви нічого не обіцяли, якщо не можете нічого зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Я хотіла б, щоб ти радилася зі мною, перш ніж робити щось. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я хотіла б, щоб ти не виступав на тих зборах, але ти не послухався. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я хотіла б, щоб твої діти не заходили в мою кімнату \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я краще хотіла б, щоб моя дочка займалася музикою, але вона вибрала танці. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Я хотіла б, щоб вони запропонували мені каву, але вони подали чай. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я така втомлена, що хотіла б, щоб вимкнули телевізор, бо він заважає мені. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Я б краще хотіла, щоб це питання взагалі не обговорювалося сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Мама, звичайно, хотіла б, щоб усі вікна були помиті до її повернення. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Я хотів би, щоб у тебе була своя власна думка. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ми хотіли б, щоб ви нічого не казали, якщо не впевнені. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Я б хотіла, щоб ви запитали дозволу, перш ніж втручатися. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Мої батьки хотіли б, щоб я не залишала дітей самих, але в мене немає виходу. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Кожна мама хотіла б, щоб її діти були здорові, розумні й багаті. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Я воліла б, щоб цих хлопців не запрошували, проте мене не послухали. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Я хотіла б, щоб обід був поданий дещо пізніше. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using modal verbs in the Oblique Mood.**

1. Ви могли б допомогти своєму другові підготуватись до екзамену. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Я також не зміг би відповісти на таке запитання. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я також не змогла б попередити їх. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я не стала б говорити йому правду. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Чи не могли б ви зачекати тут? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ти міг би сказати все відразу ще декілька днів тому. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ви могли б залишити дітей зі мною. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Він міг би приєднатися до нас тоді. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Він міг би попередити нас завчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ви могли б попросити їх прийти раніше. \_\_\_\_\_

## SUBJUNCTIVE II

### Complex sentences

#### Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following sentences using Subjunctive II in subordinate clause.

**Model:** – It's time for the children to go to bed. – It's time the children **went** to bed.

1. It's time for them to return. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's high time for you to learn this poem. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It's time for them to phone. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's time for the children to have dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It's time for them to know this rule. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It's time for them to make up their quarrel. \_\_\_\_\_
7. It's time for us to start. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's high time for your children to stop doing such things. They are grown up enough. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Translate into English using Subjunctive II in Subject clauses.

1. Тобі пора звикнути до цього. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Дітям давно пора бути в школі, а вони ще не одягнені. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ми запізнюємося. Нам давно пора бути на залізничній станції. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Чи не пора тобі позбутися цієї звички? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не переливай з пустого в порожнє. Пора говорити по суті. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Йому пора зрозуміти свою помилку. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Чи не пора нам припинити ці пусті балачки? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Давно пора, щоб ця проблема була вирішена. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Чи не пора приймати якісь рішення? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Чи не пора йому перестати обманювати? \_\_\_\_\_
11. У тебе екзамени незабаром. Тобі давно пора розпочати підготовку. \_\_\_\_\_
12. У твоєму віці пора знати, як поводити себе на людях. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Мамі давно пора повернутися. Боюся, щось трапилось. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Чи не пора вам перестати робити такі помилки? Як вам не соромно? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Досить відпочивати. Нам пора продовжити працювати. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Тобі давно пора кинути палити. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Щось він давно хворіє. Йому давно пора виздоровіти. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Твого сина пора вчити алфавіту. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Тобі пора знати, що потрібно вчасно здавати завдання. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Студентам другого курсу пора читати книги в оригіналі. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Тобі пора втрутитися. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Дітям пора вечеряти. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Чи не пора нам вирушати? \_\_\_\_\_
24. Мені давно пора бути у відпустці, а я все тут. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Погоді пора покращатися. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Тобі давно пора все владнати. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Чи не пора йому перестати спізнюватися? \_\_\_\_\_
28. Уже давно пора, щоб весна почалася. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Їм давно пора вживати певних заходів. Так не може продовжуватися. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Він усе ще в ліжку? Йому давно пора вставати. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 3. Open the brackets using the necessary form of Subjunctive II in predicative clauses.

1. It looks as if her life (to be ruined). \_\_\_\_\_
2. It seems as though they (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ a ghost.
3. It seems as if we (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ schoolchildren again.
4. It looks as if nothing (to happen) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
5. It is as if I (to know) \_\_\_\_\_ this boy for years.
6. It is as if you (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a toothache.
7. It seems as if it (not to be going) \_\_\_\_\_ to snow.
8. It is as if you (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ very tired.

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using Subjunctive II in predicative clauses.**

1. У неї такий вигляд, нібито вона не задоволена своєю зовнішністю. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Скидається на те, що вони не мають наміру залишатися. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Здається, вам нічого не казали про цю поїздку. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Скидається на те, що вона образилася. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Їй, здається, не сподобалося те, що ви сказали. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Погода, здається, буде гарною. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Скидається на те, що вони давно знають один одного. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Він, здається, не упізнав мене. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Скидається на те, що їй не пропонували цю посаду. \_\_\_\_\_
10. У неї такий вигляд, нібито вона чимось схвильована. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Небо покрите сірими хмарами. Скидається на те, що піде сніг. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Здавалося, нічого не може заспокоїти її. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Скидається на те, що січень буде морозним. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Буде так, ніби нічого не трапилося. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Вони, здається, уже стали найкращими друзями. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Микола, здається, уже повернувся з-за кордону. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я, здається, уже бачив цю жінку. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Скидається на те, що вони нарешті щось вирішили. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Скидається на те, що ми запізнилися на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Скидається на те, що дощ ішов цілу ніч. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Здавалося, це був не її голос. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Скидається на те, що вже всі розійшлися. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Скидається на те, що літо буде сухим. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Скидається на те, що вони ще не повернулися. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Вона виглядає такою втомленою, нібито працювала цілу ніч. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Він відчуває себе так, нібито захворів. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Скидається на те, що вони нас не помітили. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Ви, здається, не хочете мене бачити. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Скидається на те, що у вас був важкий день сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Скидається на те, що Миколу також запросили на цю зустріч. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Скидається на те, що вони нічого не знають про її смерть. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Скидається на те, що вам не сподобалася ця вистава. \_\_\_\_\_
33. На нас тут, здається, не чекають. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Вони, здається, все ще чекають на вас. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Скидається на те, що вони посварилися. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Скидається на те, що вам нічого не казали про цю поїздку. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Було так, нібито вони й не сварилися. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Скидається на те, що вони ще сплять. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Скидається на те, що осінь буде тепла. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Погода, здається, покращиться. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Скидається на те, що ніхто із вас не був тут раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
42. У неї такий вигляд, нібито вона здивована. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Скидається на те, що Ольга не прийняла цю пропозицію. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Скидається на те, що їй не пропонували цю посаду. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Скидається на те, що вона не має наміру приймати цю пропозицію. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Скидається на те, що вже нічого не можна змінити. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Скидається на те, що я зробила якусь дурницю. \_\_\_\_\_

48. Скидається на те, що ви ніколи не чули про це. \_\_\_\_\_
49. У нього такий вигляд, нібито він не задоволений своєю оцінкою. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Скидається на те, що вона розбирається у граматиці. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Transform the following sentences according to the model.**

**Model:** – It's a pity he is not with us. – I wish he were with us.

1. What a pity, it's raining. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's a pity, you don't believe me. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It's a pity, you didn't follow the doctor's advice. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's a pity you don't do anything to improve your pronunciation. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm sorry I can't help you. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I'm sorry I couldn't help you yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I'm afraid he is very angry with me. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's a pity you have misunderstood me. \_\_\_\_\_
9. It's a pity he doesn't share my views. \_\_\_\_\_
10. It's a pity we won't reach the lake before it gets dark. \_\_\_\_\_
11. It's a pity the work can't be carried out in two weeks. \_\_\_\_\_
12. It's a pity our seats were too far and we could see very little. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using the appropriate form of Subjunctive II after *I wish*.**

- A.**
1. Добре було б, якби діти спали після обіду. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Добре було б, якби ти не забув свою обіцянку. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Добре було б, якби діти тримали свою кімнату в чистоті. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Добре було б, якби ти читав більше в голос. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Добре було б, якби я знала, де він і що він робить зараз. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Добре було б, якби ми побачилися ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Добре було б, якби ви так не думали про мого сина. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Добре було б, якби ви були більш чемним, коли розмовляєте з людьми. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Добре було б, якби він відповів на мій лист якомога швидше. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Добре було б, якби ваша дочка проконсультувалась у цього провідного спеціаліста. \_\_\_\_\_
  11. Добре було б, якби ви розуміли, де перебуваєте. \_\_\_\_\_
  12. Добре було б, якби це був жарт. \_\_\_\_\_
  13. Добре було б, якби ви прийшли до мене додому завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
  14. Добре було б, якби завтра був вихідний. \_\_\_\_\_
  15. Добре було б, якби ти міг сказати мені, як це робиться. \_\_\_\_\_
- B.**
1. Шкода, що я не художник. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Шкода, що ти читаєш так мало. \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Шкода, що я не можу дістати зірку для тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
  4. Шкода, що ви така довірлива. \_\_\_\_\_
  5. Шкода, що ви мене не розумієте. \_\_\_\_\_
  6. Шкода, що я не можу приєднатися до вас. \_\_\_\_\_
  7. Шкода, що Миколу не запрошують. \_\_\_\_\_
  8. Шкода, що в тебе немає брата. \_\_\_\_\_
  9. Шкода, що зима така сувора. \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Ти шкодуєш, що він не піде з нами? \_\_\_\_\_
  11. Шкода, що ви не маєте наміру виступати. \_\_\_\_\_
  12. Шкода, що я зайнята, а то приєдналася б до вас. \_\_\_\_\_
  13. Я впевнена, що пікнік буде вдалим. Шкода, що ти не йдеш із нами. \_\_\_\_\_
  14. Я так шкодую, що не маю грошей купити цей словник. \_\_\_\_\_
  15. Шкода, що я зараз не вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
- C.**
1. Шкода, що все ще йде дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Ти не шкодуєш, що не прийшов? \_\_\_\_\_

3. Шкода, що ваш дідусь уже помер. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Шкода, що ми втратили так багато часу. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я так шкодую, що не порадилася з вами. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ти шкодуєш, що ти відмовилася? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Хто шкодує, що не пішов з нами оглядати місто? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я так шкодую, що не зміг допомогти вам. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Шкода, що ми не додзвонилися до неї вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Шкода, що вас туди не запросили. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я дуже шкодую, що розповіла тобі про це. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Шкода, що вчора було так холодно. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Шкода, що вона була такою зайнятою тоді. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я не шкодую, що не пішла тоді з вами. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Ніхто не шкодував, що відвідав цю виставку. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into English using the appropriate form of Subjunctive II after *I wish*.**

1. Добре було б, якби ви перестали палити в приміщенні. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Добре було б, якби не настали сутінки, перш ніж ми зберемося до озера. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Шкода, що в мене немає авто. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Шкода, що вашої мами немає з нами. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я так шкодую, що ти не запросив мене тоді. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я шкодую, що вчинила так. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Добре було б, якби він прийшов. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Шкода, що ви не бачили цього видовища. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Добре було б, якби ви попередили всіх до суботи. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Шкода, що ви не виступили й не висловили свою думку. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Шкода, що ви змінили свою думку. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Добре було б, якби мене не питали сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Шкода, що ви не вірите мені. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я так шкодую, що ніколи не була в Англії. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Мені дуже шкода, але я не можу виконати ці завдання. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Я так шкодую, що поведив себе так необачно вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Добре було б, якби в мене був такий шанс. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Ви не шкодуєте, що не заступилися тоді? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Шкода, що в мене немає зайвого квитка на цей концерт. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Шкода, що негода стоїть уже тиждень. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Так шкода, що ти була зайнята й не змогла поїхати з нами тоді. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Добре було б, якби ти була вільна завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Шкода, що ти не можеш залишитися пообідати з нами. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Добре було б, якби мені пояснили, у чому річ. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ти ще пошкодуєш, що не купила цю сукню. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Шкода, що вже так пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Шкода, що ви приходите до нас так рідко. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Добре було б, якби у вас вистачило мужності відмовитися від цих грошей. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Вона не шкодує, що прийшла сюди? \_\_\_\_\_
30. Я думаю, ніхто не шкодує, що відвідав цю виставку. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Чи хотілося б вам, щоб зараз було літо? \_\_\_\_\_
32. Ми пожалкували, що поїхали вечірнім поїздом. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Дехто жалкував, що залишився вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Добре було б, якби Петро не прийшов завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Я впевнений, ви пожалкуєте, що відмовилися. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Мені дуже шкода, але я не можу виконати своєї обіцянки. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Добре було б, якби нас зустріли при виході з метро. \_\_\_\_\_

38. Нам так хочеться, щоб завтра не було дощу. \_\_\_\_\_  
39. Мені не хотілося б, щоб усі знали про це. \_\_\_\_\_  
40. Ольга пожалкувала, що взула туфлі на високих підборах. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate the following complex sentences into English using Subjunctive II in subordinate clauses of comparison.**

1. Вона завжди готова допомогти мені, ніби ми – родина. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. Погода така чудова, ніби на вулиці весна. \_\_\_\_\_  
3. Вона готувала так багато страв, нібито чекала гостей. \_\_\_\_\_  
4. На мене глянули, нібито бачили мене вперше. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. Її люблять, ніби вона – їхня рідна дочка. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. Вона поводить себе так, ніби хоче подіяти мені на нерви. \_\_\_\_\_  
7. Вона так засмагла, ніби провела на морі цілий місяць. \_\_\_\_\_  
8. Небо таке сіре, ніби збирається на дощ. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. Вона поводить себе так, ніби знає щось, але боїться сказати. \_\_\_\_\_  
10. Чому ти смієшся, ніби не розумієш, що це не жарти? \_\_\_\_\_  
11. Погода чудова, нібито і не йшов дощ цілу ніч. \_\_\_\_\_  
12. Вона відмовляється розмовляти зі мною, ніби я зробила щось жахливе. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. Ольга розповіла про парки Лондона, ніби вона бачила їх власними очима. \_\_\_\_\_  
14. Він розповідав про Британський музей, ніби був у ньому багато разів. \_\_\_\_\_  
15. Ось побачиш, він розмовлятиме з тобою, ніби нічого не трапилось. \_\_\_\_\_  
16. Чому ти поводиш себе так, ніби не впізнаєш мене? \_\_\_\_\_  
17. Моя небога декламує вірші, як справжня актриса. \_\_\_\_\_  
18. Вони продовжували говорити про мене непристойні речі, ніби не помітили, що я зайшла. \_\_\_\_\_  
19. Моя дочка вміє водити машину, як досвідчений водій. \_\_\_\_\_  
20. Він замислився, ніби хотів пригадати щось дуже важливе. \_\_\_\_\_  
21. Микола так говорив про це дослідження, ніби він – його автор. \_\_\_\_\_  
22. Ви так говорите, ніби можете щось змінити. \_\_\_\_\_  
23. Чому ти дивишся на мене як на привид? \_\_\_\_\_  
24. Її щоки горіли, ніби в неї був жар. \_\_\_\_\_  
25. Я маю намір поговорити з тобою як із дорослою. \_\_\_\_\_  
26. Чому ти кричиш, ніби собака тебе вкусив? \_\_\_\_\_  
27. Вони поводитися так, ніби знали один одного з дитинства. \_\_\_\_\_  
28. Чому ти дорікаєш мені, ніби ти змогла б зробити більше? \_\_\_\_\_  
29. Твої очі такі червоні, ніби ти щойно плакала. \_\_\_\_\_  
30. Ось побачиш, він розмовлятиме з тобою, ніби нічого не трапилось. \_\_\_\_\_  
31. Вони жартують, ніби знають один одного цілу вічність. \_\_\_\_\_  
32. Вона так гірко плакала, нібито завалила екзамен. \_\_\_\_\_  
33. Він образився на нас за наше запізнення, ніби ми запізнилися на годину. \_\_\_\_\_  
34. Життя продовжується, ніби нічого й не сталося. \_\_\_\_\_  
35. Він глянув на мене, ніби я вчинила злочин. \_\_\_\_\_  
36. Діти продовжували гратися, ніби нічого не трапилось. \_\_\_\_\_  
37. Він радіє так, ніби це він виграв цей чемпіонат. \_\_\_\_\_  
38. Він поглядав на мене, ніби намагався згадати, де ми бачилися раніше. \_\_\_\_\_

39. Чому ви не втручаєтеся, ніби вас це не стосується? \_\_\_\_\_
40. Вона привітно посміхнулася, ніби дійсно була рада бачити мене. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Моя мама поводи́ла себе так, ніби не розуміла, з ким я прийшла. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Він бере участь в обговоренні цього фільму, ніби він справді його бачив. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Він посміхнувся і протягнув мені свою руку, ніби щойно мене помітив. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Він не прореагував, ніби не чув моїх слів. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Ви знаєте ці місця, ніби вирости тут. \_\_\_\_\_
46. У вересні було так тепло, ніби літо повернулося. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Її одяг був такий зім'ятий, ніби вона спала в ньому. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Ти так тепло одяглася, ніби на вулиці холодно. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Він заховався за газетою, ніби не хотів нікого бачити. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Вони привіталися, ніби брати. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Complete the following sentences using Subjunctive II in subordinate clauses of comparison.**

1. He stared at me as if \_\_\_\_\_.
2. She speaks French as though \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He speaks as though \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Olha behaved as if \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Why do you behave as if \_\_\_\_\_?
6. He left without saying a word as if \_\_\_\_\_.
7. She turned her face away as if \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Peter took part in the discussion of the article as if \_\_\_\_\_.
9. My friend is proud of his son as if \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I'm sure he'll keep silent as if \_\_\_\_\_.

**8.3. THE CONDITIONAL MOOD**

**Simple Sentences**

**Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. A deaf man would be very glad to hear. \_\_\_\_\_
2. A sick person would be so blessed to be healthy. \_\_\_\_\_
3. An unfortunate man would be drowned in a spoonful of water. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Would you visit me in prison? \_\_\_\_\_
5. A smart cat would eat fish and would not wet her paws. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Being wise, he would play for lower stakes! \_\_\_\_\_
7. Having money, I would buy shares in that company. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Shaving every day you would look better. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Being in your shoes, I shouldn't drink that wine. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Having found a burglar in your flat, what would you do? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Change the Indicative Mood of the verb into the Present Conditional.**

1. At the time of the lockdown I use my computer every day. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Nick reads his favourite newspaper "The Facts" regularly. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My friend Douglas plays golf every week. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Being scared, she locks the entrance door. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I consult my family therapist all the time. \_\_\_\_\_
6. My sister always agrees with our mother. \_\_\_\_\_
7. At this time of the year the weather may change again. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Steve is a reliable person and can help you in this difficult situation. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The Lelliotts cannot afford a big house. \_\_\_\_\_
10. They may never talk again after that quarrel. \_\_\_\_\_



**Ex. 3. Translate into English using the Conditional Mood.**

1. Ми приїхали б завтра ранковим поїздом. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми лягли б тоді спати раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Вона захворіла б. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я не змогла б закінчити цю роботу без вашої допомоги. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Він відвідав би вас, у нього просто було мало часу. \_\_\_\_\_
6. А я обов'язково поїхала б на фестиваль наступного року. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я не відмовилася б від вашої пропозиції. Однак вже надто пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я не нехтувала б здоров'ям. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Тобі можна було б позаздрити. \_\_\_\_\_
10. А я не втручалася б. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Це було б чудово! \_\_\_\_\_
12. Будь-хто на моєму місці вчинив би так само. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Викладач переклав би це речення інакше. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ми були б дуже раді побачити вас ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Було б забавно! \_\_\_\_\_
16. Що б нам зробити для вас? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Будь-хто був би радий одержати таке запрошення. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Це був би гарний урок для них обох. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Що б ви сказали б йому при зустрічі? \_\_\_\_\_
20. Куди б ви порадили мені поїхати цього літа? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Чи пішли б ви його провідати? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Що б ви побажали мені? \_\_\_\_\_
23. А ви прийняли б таку пропозицію? \_\_\_\_\_
24. Він не звернув би увагу на ваші слова. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Такі слова будь-кого поранили б. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using the appropriate form of the Conditional Mood after *but for, except for*.**

1. Якщо не враховувати однієї орфографічної помилки, усе було б гаразд. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Якби не лінощі, твоя сестра вчилася б набагато краще. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Якби не ця сварка, настрої був би чудовий. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я не образилася б, якби не його докори. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я не знаю, що я робила б, якби не ваша доброта. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Навіть не можу уявити, що зі мною було б, якби не ваша підтримка. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Усе було б добре, якщо не брати до уваги несподіваної зливи. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Якщо не брати до уваги його ущипливі слова на мою адресу, усе було б гаразд. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби не мій вірний друг, який завжди готовий допомогти в тяжку хвилину, я не вижив би. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я одержала б велику насолоду від цього концерту, якби не мій зубний біль. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби не шрам на лівій щоці, ми його не впізнали б. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Якщо не брати до уваги пронизливого вітру, погода була б непоганою. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби не густий туман, ми не заблукали б. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Якби не темнота, яка впала так несподівано, ми продовжили би свій шлях. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби не ці важкі валізи, ми пішли б пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби не терміновість цієї справи, я міг би залишитися. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я приєднався б до вашої компанії, якби не несподіваний приїзд моєї тітки. \_\_\_\_\_

18. Ми так і не дізналися б, що він за людина, якби не цей випадок. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Літак не затримали б, якби не гроза. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якщо не враховувати метушню дітей, відпочинок був би непоганий. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Якби не ваше авто, ми б запізнилися на літак. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Якби не бджоли, у нас не було б меду. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Я почувала б себе незручно в тій компанії, якби не мій сусід, який виявився чудовим співрозмовником. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Якби не твоє запізнення, ми вже були б у театрі й насолоджувалися грою акторів. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Її здоров'я не було б таким слабким, якби не ця аварія. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби не його кмітливість, ми все ще сиділи б на станції. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Я почувала б себе незручно в тій компанії, якби не мій сусід, який виявився чудовим співрозмовником. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби не ти, я не була б щасливою. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Якби не моє хвилювання, я відповіла би краще. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Я ніколи не впізнала б його, якби не його манера сміятися. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Якби не його зрада, можливо, я і змінила б свою думку. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Усе було б гаразд, якби не ці прокляті мухи. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Якщо не брати до уваги верхнього поверху, квартира була б чудовою. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Якби не моя невістка, вони ніколи не сварилися б. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Якби не ліхтар, ми не знайшли б виходу. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Якби не та бісова граматика, я мала б п'ятірку. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Якби не шторм, корабель прибув би в гавань вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Якби не Чорнобильська катастрофа, діти були б зараз набагато здоровішими. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Якби не жарти мого сусіда за столом, вечірка була б нудною. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Він був би привабливіший, якби не його орлиний ніс. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Я була б щаслива, якби не слабке здоров'я моєї мами. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Якби не вузькі вулички, старий Львів був би дуже гарним містом. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Якщо не враховувати густого снігу, лижна прогулянка вдалася б. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Якби не декілька помилок в артиклях, я одержала б "відмінно". \_\_\_\_\_
45. Урок був би чудовий, якби не те каверзне питання. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Rephrase the sentences using the construction *but for*.**

**Pattern:** It began to rain and we didn't go for a walk. – But for the rain we would have gone for a walk.

1. He wants to go fishing but he has a bad cold. \_\_\_\_\_
2. He could not see the play as he had some work to do. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She was not alone in the house. Her husband lay asleep in his room after the night shift. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I don't want to tell you this. But I promised to. \_\_\_\_\_
5. In the end he went to see the doctor. His wife made him to. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He didn't die. The operation saved him. \_\_\_\_\_
7. We didn't have a very good time after all. The weather was too bad. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It was impossible to read the inscription in the dark. Then he remembered he had a torch. \_\_\_\_\_

9. He has the makings of a good teacher but he has a slight defect of speech. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Of course I want to help you. But I've a conference today. \_\_\_\_\_
11. He had a good guide so he managed to climb the mountain. \_\_\_\_\_
12. It was only because the ice was so good that she could set a new record. \_\_\_\_\_

## THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

### Complex Sentences

**Ex. 1. Open the brackets using the necessary form of Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause of unreal condition.**

1. If it (not to be) \_\_\_\_\_ so late, I would go for a walk. 2. If it (not to be) \_\_\_\_\_ so dark last night, we wouldn't have lost our way. 3. The flowers would grow much better if you (to water) \_\_\_\_\_ them regularly. 4. If you (to book) \_\_\_\_\_ tickets in advance yesterday we wouldn't be queuing for them now. 5. This accident would not have happened if the driver (to observe) \_\_\_\_\_ traffic rules. 6. It's too cold. I would go for a swim if it (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ warmer. 7. If he (not to be) \_\_\_\_\_ so absent-minded he wouldn't have lost his papers. 8. If the bread (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ fresh, I would buy some. 9. If we (to be acquainted) \_\_\_\_\_ with him, he would invite us. 10. If we (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ any vegetables at home, we would prepare some salad.

**Ex. 2. Translate into English the following conditional sentences of the second type, using Present Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause and the Present Conditional in the principal clause.**

1. Якби в мене був автомобіль, я міг би показати вам місто. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Я не дивувалася б, якби не знала, що вона добре розуміє англійську. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Якби ти не була такою неухажною, ти не робила б стільки граматичних помилок. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби мені довелося опинитися в такій ситуації, я не знаю, що робила б. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я був би дуже вам вдячний, якби ви купили мені такий словник. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Якби я був на твоєму місці, я відвідав би цю виставку. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Якби це справді було так, усі були б задоволені. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Такі пригоди не траплялися б із тобою, якби ти слухалася моїх порад. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби я був на твоєму місці, я так не думав би. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Якби я знав правильну відповідь, я не мовчав би. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Чи образився б ти, якби я вчинив так? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби вони розуміли, що відбувається, то не ставили б таких запитань. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби він запросив мене, я б залюбки пішла з ним у бар у наступний вихідний. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Якби я пішов з вами завтра, то зустрів би Ольгу. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби вона займалася спортом, то не була б такою кволою. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби у тебе були свої діти, ти б зрозуміла мене. \_\_\_\_\_
17. У неї не було б ніяких проблем, якби вона не пропускала занять так часто. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Якби день не був таким прохолодним, діти гралися б на вулиці. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Якби мене запросили на цю вечірку, я прийняла б запрошення. \_\_\_\_\_

20. Я могла б довіритися вам, якби я знала вас краще. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Якби я був на місці Тома, я погодився б. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Якби я жив ближче, я ніколи не користувався б транспортом. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Якби вони мали намір прийти, нам довелося б приготувати святковий обід. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Якби я була вільна зараз, я залюбки приєдналася б до вас. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Було б чудово, якби він пішов з вами і розповів усе. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби в мене був автомобіль, я міг би показати вам місто. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби я була у відпустці зараз, я поїхала б куди-небудь у гори. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Я була б дуже рада, якби мене провідали й розповіли останні новини. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ти не говорила б такого, якби знала його особисто. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Якби мені довелося опинитися в такій ситуації, я не знаю, що робила б. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate into English the following conditional sentences of the third type using Past Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause and the Past Conditional in the principal clause.**

1. Вона не простудилася б, якби не сиділа весь вечір біля відчиненого вікна. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми не заблукали б, якби ніч не була такою темною. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я б не впала вчора, якби не було так слизько. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби ти пішов зі мною до бібліотеки вчора, то міг би взяти й собі такий словник. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Якби ви прийшли на п'ять хвилин раніше, ви застали б його вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Якби я був там учора, я поговорив би з ним. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Якби я був учора на вашому місці, я сказав би йому все відверто. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби вчора в мене були гроші, я купила б собі таку книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби наш викладач був тоді з нами, ми запитали б його про це. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я думаю, якби в нього вчора був час, він обов'язково прийшов би. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби ви не запізнилися, то не пропустили б дуже цікаву інформацію. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Він не припинив би тренування, якби не захворів. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби ти добре повторила цей матеріал, то добре написала б цей тест. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Якби він не став уже досить досвідченим хірургом на той час, він не врятував би стільки життів. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби вони не вийшли так пізно, вони не запізнилися б на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби вони не взяли таксі, вони запізнилися б на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я не поїхала б туди, якби ви порадили це раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Якби мені поставили таке запитання минулого року, я не зміг би відповісти. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Якби мама купила продукти позавчора, мені не довелося б учора йти за покупками. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якби я не повернулася так пізно, я подзвонила б тобі. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Якби моя мама була тоді зі мною, вона порадила б, що робити. \_\_\_\_\_

22. Якби ти краще готувався, ти не завалив би цей екзамен. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. Цього не трапилося б, якби ти не пішов туди. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. Ваш син не застудився б, якби ви одягли його тепліше. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Якби я була тоді на твоєму місці, то відвідала б ту виставку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. Я не розсердилася б, якби ти не грав мені на нервах. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Я прийняла б їхнє запрошення, якби я уже закінчила написання доповіді до того часу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. Він зекономив би багато часу, якби полетів літаком. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
29. Велика пожежа в Лондоні не трапилася б, якби молодий пекар не поклав оберемок дров біля розжареної печі. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Думаю, було б набагато краще, якби я вчора залишився вдома. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate into English the following conditional clauses of a mixed type.**

1. Якби ти не отримав того повідомлення, ти не був би такий знервований. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Якби ти не пропустив стільки уроків, то зрозумів би це правило сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Ця пригода не трапилася б, якби ти не була така неуважна. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби ви знали мене краще, ви не сказали б таке. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я прийшов би сьогодні, якби мені зателефонували вчора. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Якби вони дотримали слова тоді, то зараз це було б по-іншому. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Я не мав би зараз цих проблем, якби знайшов цю інформацію раніше. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби збори вчора не відклали, ми були б вільні сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Він був би сьогодні тут, якби мені вдалося додзвонитися до нього, проте, на жаль, я не зумів. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Тобі не довелося б сьогодні соромитися, якби ти вчора так себе не поведив. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби ви подзвонили мені вчора і попросили принести цю книгу, я сьогодні взяла б її з собою. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби вона не пропустила свій шанс тоді, то зараз мала б гарну роботу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Тобі б зараз не докоряли, якби ти поведив себе тоді належним чином. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Він був би сьогодні тут, якби мені вдалося додзвонитися до нього, проте, на жаль, я не зумів. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Тобі не довелося б сьогодні соромитися, якби ти вчора так себе не поведив. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate into English the following conditional sentences using the appropriate tense-form of the Oblique Moods.**

1. Якби вона могла прийти, вона прийшла б. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Якби я була на твоєму місці, я вчинила б так само. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Припустимо, ви були б сьогодні вільні, куди ви пішли б? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби дощ припинився, ми продовжили б нашу подорож. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Я не одягла б пальто, якби не було так холодно. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Який відпочинок ви вибрали б, якби були мого віку? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Якби ми потоваришували, ми могли б проводити свій вільний час разом. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби вона прийшла хвилин через десять, ми зуміли б сьогодні закінчити роботу. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби ви завтра прийшли на засідання нашого клубу, ви мали б нагоду поспілкуватися із цікавими людьми. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Якби мені вчора дали цю інформацію, то я закінчила б роботу над доповіддю сьогодні чи завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби мені дали цю книгу вчора, я не просила б її сьогодні в тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби я застав його вдома вчора, мені не довелося б іти туди сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби я був молодшим, я не сидів би вдома, а поїхав би кудись. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ти могла б сказати таке, якби ти опинилася в подібній ситуації? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби вона користувалася косметикою, вона виглядала би привабливішою. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби я була на твоєму місці, я негайно пішла би до стоматолога! \_\_\_\_\_
17. Якби я знала граматику краще, я не робила би стільки помилок. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я відповіла б йому, якби він написав мені. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Ти робив би значно менше помилок, якби був уважнішим. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якби в мене був брат, він завжди захищав би мене. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я пішла б на цей матч, якби любила футбол. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Якби мені сказали таке, я образилася б. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Ти не боявся б так тестів, якби рідше пропускав заняття. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Я не почувала б себе щасливою, якби не вибрала цю спеціальність. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Якби ти полоскав горло протягом трьох днів, сьогодні воно в тебе вже не боліло б. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби ти влітку прочитала декілька книг в оригіналі, то краще би знала англійську зараз. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби ти зателефонував мені вчора, ми могли б щось сьогодні змінити. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби я знала його краще, я запросила б його. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Якби вона вчора купила квиток, то завтра вже поїхала б в Карпати. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Якби йому не дозволили дивитися фільм вчора, то він був би значно бадьоріший сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English the following complex sentences with subordinate clauses of concession using appropriate forms of the Conditional Mood in the principal clause and Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause.**

1. Навіть якби я і розповіла їй про цей випадок, вона не повірила б. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Навіть якби ми й внесли якісь пропозиції під час обговорення цього плану, їх не прийняли б. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Навіть якби я й прийняла ліки, які ти мені дала вчора, я все ще би кашляла і чхала. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Навіть якби він не запізнився, він не допоміг би нам, бо він не з тих, що люблять допомагати людям. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Навіть якби це не було правдою, нам довелося б узяти цю інформацію до уваги. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я так не вчинила б, навіть якби опинилася в подібній ситуації. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я здогадалася б, що він має на увазі, навіть якби він і не казав нічого. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Навіть якби я не виконала свою обіцянку, це нічого не змінило б. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Навіть якби сьогодні була неділя, я не мала б вільного часу. У мене море роботи. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Навіть якби мені запропонували цю посаду, я відмовилася б. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Навіть якби в мене був гарний голос, я б не брала участь у концертах, бо не люблю виступати. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Навіть якби я знала англійську, не бралася б за переклад технічного тексту. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Make one sentence from two according to the model. Translate into Ukrainian.**

*Model:* I'll come down on Monday evening. I will not be busy. (if)

I'll come down on Monday evening, if I am not busy.

1. They will go to the country. The weather will be fine. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
2. They will call us. They will need our help. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'll give you this dictionary. You'll return it in a week's time. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'll leave you a note. You won't be at home. (in case) \_\_\_\_\_
5. He'll cycle to his job tomorrow morning. It won't be raining. (provided) \_\_\_\_\_
6. We'll go by train. You'll meet us at the station. (on condition that) \_\_\_\_\_
7. He'll arrive on time. He'll wake up late. (unless) \_\_\_\_\_
8. I'll be able to settle the matter. I'll stay there for another week. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
9. I'll ask him to book tickets for a plane. He'll call me up tonight. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
10. We'll pay the rent. We'll have enough money. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
11. We can go to the rock concert. The tickets won't be too expensive. (if) \_\_\_\_\_
12. I'll tell him about your invitation. I'll see him. (if) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Translate into Ukrainian the following complex sentences with conditional clauses.**

**Define the type of the conditional clause.**

1. If it were all the same to me, I wouldn't have come. \_\_\_\_\_
2. If there were some more of us, it would take only a few days to get through with it. \_\_\_\_\_
3. If the weather doesn't change, we will start at seven sharp. \_\_\_\_\_
4. If anyone called, I would give him the telephone number so that he might get in touch with you. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Could you give me an explanation if it were required? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I will call you if I have some free time. \_\_\_\_\_
7. If it becomes warmer tomorrow, we will be able to go to the forest. \_\_\_\_\_
8. If I were you, I would warn him. \_\_\_\_\_
9. What will you do if the taxi is late? \_\_\_\_\_
10. If you had not described him so well, I wouldn't have recognized him. \_\_\_\_\_
11. If I have some free time I'll come and help you. \_\_\_\_\_
12. If it hadn't rained all day on Sunday, we would have gone to the country. \_\_\_\_\_
13. If there are some problems, call me. \_\_\_\_\_

14. If a friend of yours came to see you after a long absence, how would you greet him? \_\_\_\_\_
15. If you were to make a report, what book would you choose? \_\_\_\_\_
16. If we take a taxi, we'll catch the train, but if we don't, we'll miss it. \_\_\_\_\_
17. If he sees us there he'll get angry. \_\_\_\_\_
18. I would have invited him as well, if I could have got in touch with him. \_\_\_\_\_
19. If he had better qualification, he would be able to apply for better job. \_\_\_\_\_
20. If you fall ill, I'll be sorry. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Open the brackets using the necessary form of Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause of unreal condition.**

1. If it (not to be) so late, I would go for a walk. \_\_\_\_\_
2. If it (not to be) so dark last night, we wouldn't have lost our way. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The flowers would grow much better if you (to water) them regularly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. If you (to book) tickets in advance yesterday we wouldn't be queuing for them now. \_\_\_\_\_
5. This accident would not have happened if the driver (to observe) traffic rules. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It's too cold. I would go for a swim if it (to be) warmer. \_\_\_\_\_
7. If he (not to be) so absent-minded he wouldn't have lost his papers. \_\_\_\_\_
8. If the bread (to be) fresh, I would buy some. \_\_\_\_\_
9. If we (to be acquainted) with him, he would invite us. \_\_\_\_\_
10. If we (to have) any vegetables at home, we would prepare some salad. \_\_\_\_\_
11. If I (to be) free today, I would help you. \_\_\_\_\_
12. I would be very much obliged to you if you (to pay attention) to what I am saying. \_\_\_\_\_
13. He would have acted differently, if he (to be) you. \_\_\_\_\_
14. If he (not to be taken ill), we could start right now. \_\_\_\_\_
15. If I (to have) to decide such matters. I would not leave a point unconsidered. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Extend the following sentences using subordinate clauses of unreal condition. Use the verbs suggested.**

**Model:** – You wouldn't be so fat \_\_\_ (to eat). – You **wouldn't be** so fat **if you didn't eat** so much.

1. He wouldn't be so popular \_\_\_\_\_ (to travel).
2. The weather wouldn't be so wet \_\_\_\_\_ (to rain).
3. He wouldn't be so healthy \_\_\_\_\_ (to swim).
4. You wouldn't have a sore throat \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat much ice-cream).
5. He wouldn't be so tired \_\_\_\_\_ (to work much).
6. She wouldn't be so short-sighted \_\_\_\_\_ (to read much).
7. He wouldn't leave you so soon \_\_\_\_\_ (to have some urgent matter).
8. We would stay much longer \_\_\_\_\_ (to be late).
9. She would have finished the work herself \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall ill).
10. He would have prepared the report \_\_\_\_\_ (to have necessary data).

**Ex. 11. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate form of Subjunctive II.**

1. I would be very obliged to you if \_\_\_\_\_
2. We would have acted differently if \_\_\_\_\_
3. He wouldn't have been taken ill if \_\_\_\_\_
4. What would you answer if \_\_\_\_\_
5. You wouldn't have made so many mistakes if \_\_\_\_\_
6. I couldn't have found the house if \_\_\_\_\_
7. I would prefer going to the south if \_\_\_\_\_
8. We could continue our way if \_\_\_\_\_
9. I wouldn't take my umbrella if \_\_\_\_\_
10. Would you buy this coat if \_\_\_\_\_



**Ex. 12. Translate into English the following conditional sentences using the appropriate tense-form of the Oblique Moods.**

1. Якби мені відповіли на мій запит вчасно, сьогодні не було б потреби ставити це питання ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Якби на це зауваження прореагували вчасно, зараз все було б гаразд. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Якби мені дали цю книгу вчора, я не просила б її сьогодні в тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби Петро не втрутився вчора, сьогодні все було б по-іншому. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Якби поїзд не запізнився, ми були б уже зараз удома. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Якби мені тоді вдалося туди потрапити, я розповіла б вам зараз усе з перших уст. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Якби збори вчора не відклали, ми були б вільні сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби я була там учора, то не прийшла б туди сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби не змінили розклад, сьогодні в нас було б лише дві пари. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Якби я застав його вдома вчора, мені не довелося б іти туди сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби ви прийшли вчора, то побачили б усе своїми очима. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби нас попередили дещо раніше, ми обов'язково поїхали б туди. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби ти зрозуміла це правило, ти не наробила б стільки помилок. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Якби вони мали намір прийти, то вже були би тут. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Усе було б по-іншому, якби мені сказали про це раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби вони полетіли літаком, то були б уже тут. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Якби ви подзвонили мені вчора і попросили принести цю книгу, я сьогодні взяла б її з собою. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Якби погода покращилася, ми організували б пікнік. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вони не спізнилися б, якби транспорт ходив регулярно. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якби вона не втратила свій шанс тоді, то зараз мала б гарну роботу. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Якщо вона дізнається правду, вона буде дуже щасливою. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Якби ми прийшли раніше, ми могли б зайняти кращі місця. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Ми не замовляли б таксі, якби ми знали, що це так дорого. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Вона могла б посісти цю посаду, якби знала іноземні мови. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Вона запитає про це, якщо побачить їх там. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби я зустрів тебе раніше, я одружився б з тобою, а не з теперішньою дружиною. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби у мене був зайвий квиток тоді, я взяв би тебе на концерт. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби тобі дали мільйон, що ти зробив би з ним? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Дитина не покинулася б, якби ми не розмовляли так голосно. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Якщо піде дощ, діти залишаться вдома. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 13. Open the brackets using Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause of Concession.**

1. I couldn't go with you, even if you (to ask) me. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Even if it (to rain) now, we would go to the country. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I could not do anything, even if I (to want) to. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I had too little time then. I couldn't have translated that article, even if I (to have) a dictionary. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Even if nothing (to happen), we wouldn't have finished our work in time. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Even if we (to send) this letter two days ago, they wouldn't have received it yet. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Even if it (not to snow) now, we wouldn't go for a walk. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Even if (to have) enough money, I would not afford buying such an expensive car. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Even if the weather (to improve) tomorrow, we would stay at home. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I wouldn't have gone to that party, even if I (to be invited). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 14. Open the brackets using the Conditional Mood in the principal clause and the Subjunctive Mood in the subordinate clauses of Concession and Condition.**

1. Even if the weather (to be) fine, we (not to go) to the forest today. \_\_\_\_\_
2. If you (to tell) him about this some days ago, everything (to be) all right now. \_\_\_\_\_
3. If (to be) in your place, I (to choose) going to the South. \_\_\_\_\_
4. If it (to be) not so cold, we (to go) for a walk. \_\_\_\_\_
5. If the sms (to be received) somewhat earlier, we (to catch) the train. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Even if the sms (to come) earlier, we (not to catch) the train. \_\_\_\_\_
7. If I (to be) you, I (to spend) more time in the open air. \_\_\_\_\_
8. We (to finish) this work long ago, if you (to help) us. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They (to find) us here, even if they (to come) earlier. \_\_\_\_\_
10. If my mother (to be) here, she (to advise) what to do. \_\_\_\_\_
11. If she (to fall ill), she (not to go) with us. \_\_\_\_\_
12. If she (not to fall ill), she (to pass) exams much better. \_\_\_\_\_
13. If I (to have) to solve some burning questions, I (to come) in time. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Even if it (to concern) you, you would (to take part) in the discussion of this problem. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Even if he (to be given) a chance once again, he (not to use) it. \_\_\_\_\_
16. If he (to understand) the situation, he (to act) differently. \_\_\_\_\_
17. We (to catch) the train, if we (to make a haste). \_\_\_\_\_
18. If I (to be) you, I (to consider) the matter settled. \_\_\_\_\_
19. If you (to be) present yesterday, you (may object). \_\_\_\_\_
20. Even if I (to be) tired, I (to come) to you. \_\_\_\_\_
21. I'm sure that if we (to take) shelter under these trees, we (not to get wet). \_\_\_\_\_
22. He (to go) for a ride with you, if he (to repair) his bicycle. \_\_\_\_\_
23. This (to occur), even if he (to be) present then. \_\_\_\_\_
24. If our telephone (not to be) out of order, I (to ring) you up this morning. \_\_\_\_\_
25. If the river (to be) shallow in this place, we (can cross) it. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 15. Translate into English the following complex sentences with subordinate clauses of Concession using Present Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause and the Present Conditional in the principal clause.**

1. Ми поїхали б завтра за місто, навіть якби погода була поганою. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Навіть якби не було хмар, день сьогодні був би нікудишнім. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Я не пішла б з вами на пляж, навіть якби погода була сонячною. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я ніколи його не вибачила б, навіть якби це був жарт. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я не дозволила б вам розмовляти зі мною таким тоном, навіть якби ви були моєю мамою. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Навіть якби моя дочка була старшою, я не дозволила б їй іти на цю вечірку. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Навіть якби я не поспішала, я не залишилася б. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Навіть якби я зустріла її там завтра, я їй нічого не сказала б, бо це не моя справа. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Навіть якби я була на вашому місці, я так не вчинила б. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Навіть якби я була зараз у відпустці, я не поїхала б з вами. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Навіть якби я знала його краще, я не зверталася б до нього з такою проблемою. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Навіть якби зараз не було так волого, я не пішла б на прогулянку. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я не летіла б літаком, навіть якби погода була льотною. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Навіть якби в мене було більше вільного часу, я не дозволила б собі таку тривалу поїздку. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Навіть якби в мене зараз не боліла голова, я не пішла з вами. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 16. Translate into English the following complex sentences with subordinate clauses of Concession using the Past Subjunctive in the subordinate clause and the Past Conditional in the principal clause.**

1. Навіть якби я тоді була вдома, я не приєдналася б до вас. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Навіть якби я вдягнулася вчора тепліше, я не застудилася б. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Навіть якби я була на тій вечірці, я не наважилася б підійти до нього першою. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Навіть якби телеграму доставили вчора, ми не дісталися б туди вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я не передумав би, навіть якби мені сказали про це раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Навіть якби в мене був підручник учора, я не змогла б вивчити цей урок, бо почувала себе погано. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Навіть якби я тоді втрутився, це нічого не змінило б. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Навіть якби ви попередили мене заздалегідь, я не змогла б прийти на ту вечірку, у мене було багато роботи. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Навіть якби він тоді і вибачився, це не змінило б моєї думки про нього. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Навіть якби ви тоді порадили йому внести певні корективи в плани, він не послухався б вас. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я не приєдналася б до вас вчора, навіть якби я почувала себе краще. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Ми не виграли б останню гру, навіть якби Микола брав участь у ній. Справа в тому, що ми мало тренуємося останнім часом. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я не написав би цей тест краще, навіть якби я був присутній на тій консультації. Я пропустив багато занять через хворобу і ніяк не можу наздогнати групу. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Моя сестра не змогла б посісти цю посаду, навіть якби ви сказали їй про це раніше. Річ у тім, що вона не володіє німецькою мовою. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Навіть якби я мав гроші при собі вчора, я не позичив би тобі, тому що ти ніколи не повертаєш борг вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 17. Translate into English the following complex sentences with subordinate clauses of concession using appropriate forms of the Conditional Mood in the principal clause and Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause.**

1. Навіть якби я і розповіла їй про цей випадок, вона не повірила б. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Навіть якби ми й внесли якісь пропозиції під час обговорення цього плану, їх не прийняли б. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Навіть якби я і прийняла ліки, які ти мені вчора дала, я все ще би кашляла і чхала. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Навіть якби він не запізнився, він не допоміг би нам, бо він не з тих, хто любить допомагати людям. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Навіть якби це не було правдою, нам довелося б узяти цю інформацію до уваги. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Я так не вчинила б, навіть якби опинилася в подібній ситуації. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Я здогадалася б, що він має на увазі, навіть якби він і не казав нічого. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Навіть якби я не виконала свою обіцянку, це нічого не змінило б. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Навіть якби сьогодні була неділя, я не мала б вільного часу. У мене море роботи. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Мені не дали б морозива, навіть якби я з'їла все, бо в мене болить горло. \_\_\_\_\_

11. Навіть якби в мене зараз боліли зуби, я не пішла б до зубного, бо не переносю свердління зубів. \_\_\_\_\_

12. Навіть якби я знала англійську, не бралася б за переклад цієї книги. \_\_\_\_\_

13. Навіть якби він вернувся, я не вибачила б його. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Навіть якби я і була на тій консультації, все одно отримала б "двійку", бо не розумію цей матеріал. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Я не залишилася б удома, навіть якби й пішов дощ. \_\_\_\_\_

16. Я не зумів би завершити цей проєкт сам, навіть якби й спробував. \_\_\_\_\_

17. Я не прийняв би їхньої пропозиції, навіть якби вони й пропонували велику суму грошей. \_\_\_\_\_

18. Я не позбулася б цього кашлю, навіть якби приймала ці ліки регулярно. Він у мене хронічний. \_\_\_\_\_

19. Я не пішла б учора на каток, навіть якби погода була сприятливою. \_\_\_\_\_

20. Моя подруга схильна до повноти. Вона поправилася б, навіть якби їла менше. \_\_\_\_\_

21. Ми не купляли б цей будинок, навіть якби він був дешевий. Батько не хоче жити на околиці. \_\_\_\_\_

22. Навіть якби мені запропонували цю роботу, я відмовилася б. Це не для мене. \_\_\_\_\_

23. Навіть якби ми встигли на десятигодинний поїзд, ми не змогли б потрапити туди вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_

24. Я розбудив би його, навіть якби він спав. \_\_\_\_\_

25. Я приїхав би, навіть якби й не знав, що Ганнуса тяжко хвора. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Я не запрошував би його, навіть якби й знав, що він зараз у місті. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Я не приїхав би, навіть якби ви і дали мені знати. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Він не прийшов би проводити вас, навіть якби мав час. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Навіть якби він і не відвідував підготовчі курси, він би добре склав вступні екзамени. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Навіть якби в мене був телевізор, я не дивилася б такі передачі. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Ми не встигли б туди, навіть якби й не прогавили нашу зупинку, бо вийшли з дому дуже пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Навіть якби в мене був гарний голос, я б не брала участь у концертах, бо не люблю виступати. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Навіть якби в мене були вчора гроші, я йому не позичив би, бо він не спроможний повертати борги. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Я з'їла б морозива, навіть якби в мене боліло горло. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Мій чоловік пішов би на футбольний матч, навіть якби йшов дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Я промовчала б, навіть якби й помітила що-небудь. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Навіть якби ти й зачекав на мене, я не змогла б піти з тобою. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Навіть якби в мене був відповідний словник, я не змогла б перекласти цей текст: він дуже важкий. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Навіть якби вона попросила ці записи зарання, я не змогла б дати їй їх на такий тривалий час. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Я не виступила б на тих зборах, навіть якби й була присутня. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Чи не змогла б ти зателефонувати мені, навіть якщо повернешся пізно? \_\_\_\_\_
42. Я не пішла б зустрічати його, навіть якби була вільна. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Навіть якби я знала, що цей професор виступатиме на тій зустрічі, я не змогла б залишитися. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Я не реагувала б, навіть якби згадали моє прізвище. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Мій брат дуже змінився, ти не впізнала б його, навіть якби й бачила раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Навіть якби він відмовлявся, я все одно наполягала б на своєму. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Навіть якби не йшов дощ, діти не спали б на свіжому повітрі. Вже холодно. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Ми заблукали б, навіть якби не було так темно, бо ця місцевість нам не дуже знайома. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Ми все одно запізнилися б на заняття, навіть якби взяли таксі. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Я нікуди не пішла б, навіть якби дощ припинився. \_\_\_\_\_
51. Навіть якби я побачила його там учора, я не поговорила б з ним про це, тому що я сором'язлива. \_\_\_\_\_
52. Я взяла б парасольку, навіть якби не дощило. Я завжди беру парасольку з собою, якщо небо затягнуте хмарами. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 18. Translate into English the following sentences using Subjunctive II in the subordinate clause and the Conditional Mood in the principal clause.**

- A. 1. Якби не було так пізно, ми продовжили б роботу. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Я переклала б цю статтю, якби в мене був політехнічний словник. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Якби дощ припинився, ми пішли б прогулятися. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Ми б покупалися, якби не було так холодно. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Якби я знала, що ви хочете такий словник, я купила б вам один примірник. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Якби я могла, то я допомогла б вам, але це не в моїх силах. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Якби ночі були теплішими, ми могли б спати надворі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Якби повітря не було таким морозним, ми поїздили б на лижах. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби не було так холодно, я пішла б на ковзанку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Якби вона почувала себе добре, вона не пішла б додому так рано. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Якби ви краще знали граматику, ви помітили б цю помилку. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Якби я не зняла вчора шапку, я не застудилася б. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Якби він не пропустив так багато занять, він написав би цей тест набагато краще. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Якби я була на її місці, я повелася б по-іншому. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Якби вам довелося бути в такій ситуації, як би ви себе поводити? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Якби мені довелося відповідати на таке запитання, я сказав би зовсім інше. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Ми були б дуже раді, якби ви були з нами до понеділка. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Якби ви були уважнішими, то мені не довелося б повторювати своє запитання. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Я купила би хліба, якби він був свіжим. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Якби я була з ним знайома, я б також його запросила. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. Було б менше аварій, якби водії дотримувалися правил руху й не водили машини в нетверезому стані. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. Я не возила б доньку на південь кожного року, якби у неї не були хворі легені. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. Ми не робили б вимушеної зупинки, якби щось не трапилося з мотором нашої машини. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. Якби був прямий поїзд до Одеси, мені не довелося б робити пересадку в Києві. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
25. Я не втомлювалася б так сильно, якби мені не доводилося щодня вставати так рано. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. Ви б знали мову краще, якби дивилися недубльовані фільми. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби я знала, що сьогодні матиму гостей, то я приготувала б щось смачне. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

- В.** 1. Навіть якби ви знали англійську, ви не змогли б працювати там, бо для цього треба розбиратися в кібернетиці. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Навіть якби він був там учора, йому не дали б таке запрошення, бо він не член цієї спілки. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Навіть якби я була вільна, я не пішла б на цей концерт, бо не люблю камерної музики. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я впевнена, що наше листування припинилося б, навіть якби я відповіла на цей лист. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Навіть якби моя мама зберегла ці листи, вона не дозволила б, щоб їх використовували в судовому процесі. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Навіть якби ми переглянули це рішення, воно не було б на нашу користь. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Мій брат – фанат футболу. Він пішов би на матч, навіть якби лило як з відра. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я не піду туди, навіть якщо вони мене й запросять. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я нікуди не поїхала б, навіть якби вони й наполягали на цьому. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я скажу все прямо у вічі, навіть якби це вам і не подобалося. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я зробив би це, навіть якби вони намагалися зупинити мене. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Із цього нічого не вийшло б, навіть якби йому дали такий шанс. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Навіть якби це було дуже корисно, я не змогла б змусити себе з'їсти це. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Навіть якби в мене було трохи вільного часу, я не переодягалася б. \_\_\_\_\_
15. А я сказала б їй усе прямо у вічі, навіть якби це завдало їй болю. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Навіть якби в мене були гроші, я не купляла б цю сукню, бо вона дуже яскрава для мого віку. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Навіть якби наш поїзд не запізнився, я не встигла б на відкриття конференції. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я не подзвонила б йому, навіть якби я і пам'ятала його номер телефону. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Навіть якби ми поїхали туди машиною, ми не добралися б раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Мене не пропустили б туди, навіть якби мої документи були при мені. \_\_\_\_\_
21. У мене останнім часом безсоння, отже, я погано спала б, навіть якби й учора не пила каву так пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Він не розчарувався б, навіть якби йому й відмовили. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Цей суп не став би смачнішим, навіть якби його й підсолити. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Я обов'язково сповістила б тебе, навіть якби була дуже зайнята. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ми не змогли б перекласти ту статтю, навіть якби в нас був словник під рукою. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 8.4. THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

##### Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences using the words in brackets in the Suppositional Mood.

1. No one demanded that (the meeting to be postponed) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. She suggested that (to speak at this meeting) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The teacher has arranged that (these books to be sold in the university book-stall) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Did anyone insist that (measures to be taken) \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Will you please arrange that (the students to be supplied with necessary books) \_\_\_\_\_?
6. My mother insists that (I to see a doctor) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I insist that (nobody to know about it) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Father suggested that (a car to be sent to meet our aunt) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. He demanded that (information leakage to be stopped at any price) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I insist that (no one to interfere) \_\_\_\_\_.

##### Ex. 2. Translate into English using the Suppositional Mood in the subordinate clauses.

1. Мені запропонували, щоб я взяла участь у цій конференції. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Викладач наполягав, щоб ми негайно відвідали нашого хворого однокурсника. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ольга попросила, щоб ми залишили її одну на декілька хвилин. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Чому ти пропонуєш, щоб моя доповідь була першою? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я пропоную, щоб ми відклали нашу поїздку на два тижні. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Заступник декана запропонував внести певні зміни в розклад занять. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Адміністрація вимагає, щоб ми прозвітувалися про нашу роботу. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Викладач попросив, щоб хтось пішов і приніс журнал. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Моя старша сестра запропонувала, щоб ми прикрасили нашу кімнату штучними квітами. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Лікар наполягав, щоб я негайно перестала приймати ті ліки. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Голова зборів пропонує, щоб ми припинили обговорення першого питання. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Бібліотекар вимагає, щоб книги повертали вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Ніна радить, щоб ми перестали вагатися, чи брати участь у цих змаганнях. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Мама наказала, щоб донька не вставала з ліжка. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Нарешті тато втрутився і попросив, щоб ми перестали сперечатися. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Лікар рекомендує, щоб він проводив більше часу у спортзалі. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Ми домовилися, що зустрінемося біля входу до театру. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Вони наполягали, щоб я не йшла пішки, а взяла таксі. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я запропонував, щоб ми вирушили рівно о шостій. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Стоматолог наполягав на тому, що необхідно вирвати два кутніх зуби. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Мама наполягала, щоб діти лягали спати. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Батьки вимагають, щоб я була вдома о десятій. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Тато запропонував, щоб ми провідали дідуся в неділю. \_\_\_\_\_



24. Лікар наполягає, щоб хворому негайно ввели цей препарат. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ольга запропонувала, щоб ми йшли швидше, аби не запізнитися на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Лікар рекомендує, щоб наш син проводив більше часу на свіжому повітрі. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Лікар радить, щоб я кинув палити й утримувався від алкоголю. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Що ви пропонуєте нам робити? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ольга запропонувала продовжити бесіду дещо пізніше. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Це моя тітка наполягала, щоб я купила собі цей капелюшок. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Мій друг радить мені зайнятися плаванням. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Лікар радить, щоб діти провели літо на березі моря. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Хтось запропонував, щоб ми пішли в кіно після уроків. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ми домовилися, що збори перенесуть на четвер. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Викладач запропонував поділити питання на два семінари. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Хто наполягає, щоб ми відмовилися від цієї ідеї? \_\_\_\_\_
37. Мене попросили, щоб я пішов туди негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Викладач радить, щоб ми ретельно повторили весь матеріал перед тестом. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Я домовився, щоб вам дали кімнату в цьому гуртожитку. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Декан наполіг, щоб Олену виключили з університету. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Ви продовжуєте наполягати, щоб я був відповідальним за цю роботу? \_\_\_\_\_
42. Ми порадили їй владнати всі справи до від'їзду. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Координатор конференції порадив усім учасникам взяти участь у цій екскурсії. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Від мене вимагали, щоб я ретельно описала цей інцидент. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Мені порадили, щоб я сказала декілька слів про свою наукову роботу. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate into English using the Suppositional Mood.**

1. Вимагають, щоб усі доповіді були прочитані до кінця цього тижня. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Рекомендовано всім прийти на ці збори. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Надійшло розпорядження відкрити збори. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Було погоджено, що фестиваль розпочнеться 4-го липня. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Було домовлено, що за нашим котом доглядатиме сусідка. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Прийшли до згоди, що збори будуть проведені в п'ятницю. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Перш ніж робити вправи, рекомендується вивчити правила. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Рекомендується, щоб ви ходили багато пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Рекомендується, щоб діти робили ранкову зарядку змалку. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Усім рекомендовано зареєструватися і замовити зворотні квитки. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Вимагається, щоб студенти регулярно відвідували лекції і практичні заняття. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Усім рекомендується дотримуватися молочної дієти. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Ноги рекомендують тримати в теплі. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Вимагається, щоб цю проблему було розв'язано якомога швидше. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Рекомендовано говорити стисло і по суті. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using the Suppositional Mood.**

1. Цілком природно, що він їх відвідає. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Дивно, що він прийшов невідгодуваний. Адже він дуже старанний студент. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Дивно, що вони спізнилися на поїзд. Адже вони вийшли з дому дуже рано. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Дуже важливо, щоб вони не забували про свої обов'язки. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Мені було важливо, щоб мене слухали з інтересом. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Цілком можливо, що вони знову запізняться. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Хіба це не природно, що осіння погода дощова? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Обов'язково, щоб усі були присутні. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Природно, що вона нічого не знає. Звідки їй знати? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Важливо, щоб ви говорили англійською мовою якомога більше. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Це дуже важливо, щоб такі питання обговорювалися вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Дивно, що він нічого не написав у своєму листі про цей інцидент. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Неймовірно, що він ще досі не підтвердив отримання інформації. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Дивно, що ця новина так сильно її вразила. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Дивно, що мама наполягає на твоєму від'їзді. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Розчаровує те, що я буду там сама самісінька. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Сумнівно, що погода завтра стане кращою. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Вражає, що Микола забув прийти. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Дивно, що всі однієї думки. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Малоімовірно, щоб вони прийшли вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Цілком можливо, що весна буде пізньою і холодною. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Сумнівно, що птахи вже повернулися з півдня. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Малоімовірно, що він повів себе таким чином. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Бажано, щоб це трималося в секреті. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Сумнівно, щоб вона зуміла щось організувати. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Дивно, що ніхто не пішов туди. \_\_\_\_\_

27. Неймовірно, що він ще не вибачився перед нею досі. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
28. Смішно, що ви цього не знаєте. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Це цілком природно, що діти метушливі. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Смішно, що вона закохалася в такого невдачу. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
31. Аудиторії необхідно провітрювати регулярно. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
32. Малоймовірно, що він встиг попередити всіх. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
33. Щось не віриться, щоб Олена не дотримала слова. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
34. Сумнівно, щоб усі змогли прийти вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
35. Хіба таке може бути, щоб він не знав написання цього слова? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
36. Щоб покращити здоров'я, вам необхідно дотримуватися овочевої дієти. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
37. Сумнівно, що він відразу погодиться. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
38. Просто смішно, що ви цього не знаєте. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Дивно, що ця книга так сильно їй сподобалася. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
40. Хіба це не розчарує, що такі страшні речі трапляються в наш час? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Complete the sentences, using the Suppositional mood in subject clauses:**

1. Isn't it strange \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Is it advisable \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Wasn't it recommended \_\_\_\_\_?
4. It's ironic \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It's rather odd \_\_\_\_\_.
6. It's so disappointing \_\_\_\_\_.
7. It was unbelievable \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It's quite natural \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It was imperative \_\_\_\_\_.
10. It's surprising \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 6. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Suppositional Mood.**

1. He insulted you. Is it possible? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. It is important for you to touch upon this problem in your speech tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is advisable for everyone to undergo a medical examination every year. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. It is desirable for them to carry out this test without any delay. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. The news affected her so much. Isn't it strange? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. He has taken such a risk. Isn't it surprising? \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. It's not necessary for him to give any decisive answer today. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. It is highly desirable for you to know all the details. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. It is not important for her to be able to drive. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
10. It is advisable for you to go there at once. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into English using the Suppositional Mood.**

1. Необхідно, щоб студенти проявляли інтерес до громадського життя. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Було вирішено, що ми вирушимо на світанку. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Білет необхідно зберігати до кінця подорожі. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Невже це так важливо, щоб усі були присутні? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не бажано залишати дітей без нагляду. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ліки рекомендують тримати в темному і прохолодному місці. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Бути такого не може, щоб нічого не змінилося з тих пір, як ми поїхали. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Дивно, що він сказав таке. Це на нього не схоже. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Дуже важливо, щоб ви використовували всі можливості поговорити англійською мовою. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Це просто вражає, що люди можуть бути такими невихованими. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Цілком можливо, що рукопис першої частини словника вже готовий, проте малоймовірно, щоб був закінчений увесь словник. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Хіба це не дивно, що люди вашого віку показують такі результати в спорті? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Смішно, що вона претендує на перше місце. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Бажано, щоб ви більше читали в оригіналі. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Бути цього не може, щоб він не знав, як відповісти на таке запитання. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Вимагається, щоб усі необхідні екзаменаційні матеріали були підготовлені до кінця цього тижня. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Малоймовірно, щоб хтось повірив його словам. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Дивно, що шеф наполягає на моєму поверненні. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вам необхідно детально описати його зовнішність. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Домовлено, що вас там зустрінуть. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Цілком природно, що він добре розбирається в математиці, адже його тато її викладає. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Розчарує те, що ви підготувалися так погано. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Дуже важливо, щоб не було перерви в курсі лікування. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Цілком природно, що він продовжує робити такі помилки, адже він приділяє так мало уваги граматиці. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Вимагають, щоб доповіді робили англійською мовою. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Було погоджено, що Шевченків також запросять. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Просять нічого не чіпати руками. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Бажано, щоб ви приїхали на декілька днів раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Було вирішено, що вони поїдуть туди відразу після екзаменів. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Це просто неймовірно, щоб ми жили на одній вулиці й жодного разу не зустрілися! \_\_\_\_\_
31. Дивно, що ви приховуєте це від мене. Чому? \_\_\_\_\_
32. Вимагається, щоб усі співробітники негайно пройшли медогляд. \_\_\_\_\_

33. Хіба це не дратує, що погода ніяк не покращується? \_\_\_\_\_
34. Дивно, що вона нічого не робить, щоб захистити свою честь. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Вам рекомендовано змінити місце проживання. Цей клімат вам не підходить. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Open the brackets using forms of Suppositional Mood.**

1. He suggests that I (to try) \_\_\_\_\_ something else.
2. He only requested that he (to allow) \_\_\_\_\_ to see the heads of the departments.
3. Doris requires that he (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ clever.
4. Brady proposed that they (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_ down to the sea hill.
5. They decided that Laura (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ the food that had been ordered.
6. Charles insisted that we (to keep) \_\_\_\_\_ it in secret.
7. She soon demanded that the work (to finish) \_\_\_\_\_ in time.
8. I've made up my mind that Meg (to send for) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I thought that I (to get) \_\_\_\_\_ over it.
10. He had never suggested that I (to visit) \_\_\_\_\_ them.

**Ex. 9. Translate into English, using the Suppositional Mood or modal phrases in object clauses after the expressions of fear, apprehension and worry.**

1. Ми почали боятися, що наші плани проваляться. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми боялися, що наш секрет можуть розкрити. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Боюся, хоч би мені не запізнитися. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мама переживає, хоч би в сина не піднялася температура. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я так хвилююся, що діти можуть захворіти. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я так хвилююся, хоч би діти не захворіли. \_\_\_\_\_
7. А ти не боїшся, що сусіди можуть поскаржитися на твого собаку? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Боюся, що він нічого не знає про це. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Боюся, хоч би він не перевтомився. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ми так боялися, що наші супутники виявляться надто балакучими! \_\_\_\_\_
11. Боюся, хоч би мені не дорікали. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Мама хвилювалася, щоб її діти не потрапили в біду. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я хвилювався, хоч би викладач не запитав мене про це. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я переживав, щоб не зробити орфографічних помилок у диктанті. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я боялася, хоч би мене не залишили там одну. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Я переживала, хоч би мій брат не надумав одружуватися. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я боялася, хоч би не запізнитися на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я боялася, хоч би мені не відмовили. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Ми страшенно боялися, щоб вони не застали нас тут. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Мама боялася, що я можу повернутися дуже пізно. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the proper form of the Suppositional Mood or Subjunctive I.**

1. Please, mark the place in the book, lest I (to waste) \_\_\_\_\_ time looking for it.
2. I think we had better take an earlier train, lest mother (to worry) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The late-comers must take seats in the gallery, lest they (to disturb) \_\_\_\_\_ the others.
4. I'd much rather you did not go out, lest the train (to start) \_\_\_\_\_ and you (to be left) \_\_\_\_\_ behind.
5. Watch the milk I tell you, lest it (to boil over) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I agreed to share his umbrella, lest my best hat (to be spoiled) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. She always kept the jam cupboard locked, lest the children (to get) \_\_\_\_\_ at it.
8. She kept the children indoors, lest they (to disturb) \_\_\_\_\_ their father.
9. She carefully wrap each dress in paper, lest anything (to get damaged) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Do it at once, lest she (to change) \_\_\_\_\_ her mind.

**Ex. 11. Translate into English the following complex sentences with adverbial clauses of purpose, using the Suppositional Mood or modal phrases.**

1. Візьміть із собою бутерброди, щоб не зголодніти. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Мені довелося пройти повний курс лікування, щоб уникнути ускладнень. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ми вирішили вийти раніше, щоб темнота не застала нас у лісі. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Зателефонуй мамі й скажи, що все гаразд, щоб вона не хвилювалась. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Викладач говорив голосно, щоб усім було чути. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ми намагалися не дивитися на неї, щоб вона не бентежилася. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Тато увімкнув навігатор, щоб ми не блукали. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я візьму із собою фруктів, щоб ми могли перекусити в дорозі. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мені довелося дати їй своє пальто, щоб вона не застудилася. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ольга перечитала твір декілька разів, щоб не пропустити жодної помилки. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Мама поклала подарунки під новорічну ялинку, щоб діти побачили їх, як тільки встануть. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Він відвернувся, щоб ми не помітили його посмішки. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Зроби це, щоб потім не шкодувати. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Запиши адресу, щоб не забути. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Тато підняв дівчинку вище, щоб їй було видніше. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Візьміть парасольку, щоб не змокнути. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Передзвони йому й нагадай час початку зборів, щоб він не запізнився. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Не дозволяй дітям їсти багато цукерок, щоб вони не захворіли. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Викладач підкреслив у тексті нові слова, щоб ми змогли відразу побачити їх. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Я скорочу текст доповіді, щоб не забирати у вас багато часу. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 12. Make the sentences complete, by using the Suppositional mood or Subjunctive mood in the adverbial clauses of purpose, introduced either by *so that* or *lest*:**

1. Cut your expenses \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Let's make a deal \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Switch off the electricity \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Eat more fruit \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Close the door \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Take off your shoes \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Put on a raincoat and rubber boots \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Stay away from him \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Don't show your feelings in public \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You'd better tell the truth \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 13. Choose the right option.**

1. The child feared ... (so it might rain, lest it should rain, should it rain). \_\_\_\_\_
2. He was afraid lest ... (he should never see, he should have never seen) her again. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We were afraid that ... (he should, lest he might, he might) get into trouble. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It is 10 o'clock already. I fear lest they ... (should stick, should have stuck) in a traffic jam. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am afraid lest my mother ... (should discover, should have discovered) how I spent my holiday. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 14. Translate into English the following complex sentences with concessive clauses, using the Suppositional Mood.**

1. Що б не трапилося, я дотримаю слова. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Що б він не говорив, не бери його слів до серця. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Де б ти не була, я знайду тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якою не була б погода, ми мусимо вирушати о шостій. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Як би ти не просив, я не дозволю тобі йти туди. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Як би ви мене не переконували, я не схвалю цю пропозицію. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Якою б гіркою не була правда, кажи мені її. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Що б він не радив, я ніколи не прислухаюся до його поради. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Як би важко їй не було, вона не поскаржиться. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Як би важко нам не було, я не кину тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Коли б вони не прийшли, ми завжди раді бачити їх. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Хто б ти не був, ти не маєш права втручатися в її особисте життя. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Як би ви не намагалися зупинити мене, вам це не вдасться зробити. Ніхто і ніщо мене не зупинить. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Якою б втомленою чи роздратованою ти не була, ти мусиш поводити себе чемно. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Яким би зайнятим я не був, я знайду час, щоб допомогти тобі. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Що б ви не говорили, я знаю що це неможливо зробити за один місяць. \_\_\_\_\_

17. Щоб ти не попросив, я зроблю це для тебе \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Як би дивно це не звучало, це правда. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Як би тяжко тобі не було, ти не падай духом. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Що б він не говорив зараз, вона вже не змінить своєї думки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 15. Translate into English the following conditional sentences using Suppositional Mood.**

1. Якщо він випадково прийде раніше, попросіть, нехай зачекає на мене. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Якщо тобі випадково вдасться відвідати цю виставку, розповіси нам пізніше, що тобі там сподобалося. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Якщо випадково будуть якісь зміни, повідомте мені. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Якщо трапиться так, що ви будете присутнім на цій церемонії, привітайте його від мого імені. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Якщо вам випадково пощастить дістати квитки на цей концерт, чи не поділилися б ви зі мною? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Якщо трапиться так, що ми більше не зустрінемося, чи будеш ти сумувати за мною? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Якщо трапиться так, що в наш план внесуть якісь корективи, дай мені негайно знати. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Якщо вам пощастить бути в Лондоні, обов'язково відвідайте Британський музей. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Якби мені трапився такий словник, я обов'язково купила б його. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Якщо випадково поїзд буде запізнюватися, подзвоніть нам. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. На випадок, якщо погода зміниться на гірше, нам доведеться залишитися в місті. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Якщо ви випадково будете в наших краях, не минайте нас, заходьте, ласкаво просимо. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Якщо трапиться так, що тебе виключать з університету, що нам сказати батькам? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Якщо нам доведеться ще коли-небудь зустрітися, ми будемо вже як давні друзі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Якщо в тебе випадково є така книга, принеси її, будь ласка, мені. Я поверну її через 2-3 дні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Якщо я, можливо, зустріну її, я передам їй ваші слова. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Якщо ви, можливо, зустрінете його там, передайте йому, будь ласка, що я чекатиму до шостої. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Якщо ви випадково зустрінете Олену, передайте їй, що завтра в нас немає заняття з німецької мови. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Якщо ви випадково приїдете раніше, сходіть за покупками, будь ласка. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Якщо вона випадково відмовиться від цієї пропозиції, дайте мені знати. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 16. Use the form of the verbs in brackets in the subordinate object or predicative clauses:**

1. We are anxious that you (to take part) \_\_\_\_\_ in that expedition.
2. The job demands that the employees (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ in a good physical shape.
3. When we insisted he (to tell) \_\_\_\_\_ the truth he said he did not feel like doing that.
4. They arranged that all the discussions (to remain) \_\_\_\_\_ secret.
5. The children feared lest the dog (to attack) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
6. Everybody feared lest the rain (to start) \_\_\_\_\_ sooner than they found a shelter.



7. My dream has always been that I (to become) \_\_\_\_\_ a novelist.
8. It was imperative that she (to keep) \_\_\_\_\_ him at all costs.
9. All the time she fears lest her project (to be rejected) \_\_\_\_\_ by the board.
10. The general suggestion was that there (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ no rush.

**Ex. 17. Translate into English, using the Suppositional Mood or modal phrases.**

1. Ми почали боятися, що наші плани проваляться. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Боюся, хоч би град не пошкодив сходи зернових. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Боюся, хоч би мені не запізнитися. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мама переживає, хоч би в сина не піднялася температура. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Я так хвилююся, що діти можуть захворіти. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я так хвилююся, хоч би діти не захворіли. \_\_\_\_\_
7. А ти не боїшся, що сусіди можуть поскаржитися на твого собаку? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Боюся, що він нічого не знає про це. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Боюся, хоч би він не перевтомився. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ми так боялися, що наші супутники виявляться надто балакучими! \_\_\_\_\_
11. Боюся, хоч би мені не дорікали. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Мама хвилювалася, щоб її діти не потрапили в біду. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Ми переживали, що вони можуть не прийти. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ми хвилювалися, хоч би вони не прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я боялася, хоч би мене не залишили там одну. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Я переживала, хоч би мій брат не надумав одружуватися. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я боялася, хоч би не запізнитися на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я боялася, хоч би мені не відмовили. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Ми страшенно боялися, щоб вони не застали нас тут. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Мама боялася, що я можу повернутися дуже пізно. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я так переживаю, хоч би не забути цю цитату. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Я боялася, щоб мене не питали на цьому уроці. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Мама хвилювалася, щоб її дочка не завалила екзамен з англійської. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Ми переживали, щоб вони не заблукали. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Співака охопив жах, що він не виконає свою арію. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Я переживала, хоч би не видатися надто настирливою. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Я хвилювалася, хоч би мама не забула свої ключі. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Ми боялися, хоча б акцент не видав нас. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ми боялися, що можемо запізнитися на концерт. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Вона боялася, хоч би її не звинувачували в цьому. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Ми боялися, що наш секрет можуть розкрити. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Я боялася, хоч би дощ не пішов. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Ми переживали, щоб не було надто пізно змінювати щось. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Я боялася, що можу потурбувати їх. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Я переживала, хоч би моя подруга не загубила телефон. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Я боялася, хоч би сусідський собака не покусав мене. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Ми боялися, хоч би нічого не змінили. \_\_\_\_\_

38. Я боюсь, хоч би декан не заперечував. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Після хвороби я боялася, щоб не відстати з математики. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Ми переживали, щоб нам не проминути цей поворот. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Мама нервувала, що діти можуть заблукати. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Я переживала, хоч би мама не розсердилася. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Ми боялися, щоб погода не погіршала. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Я переживала, хоч би магазин не був закритий. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Ми переживали, щоб не потрапити під дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Я переживав, щоб ніхто не потурбував мене. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Ми боялися, хоча б діти не злякалися грози. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Я хвилювався, хоч би викладач не запитав мене про це. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Я переживав, щоб не зробити орфографічних помилок у диктанті. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Ми переживали, хоч би дорога не видалася нашим гостям надто довгою. \_\_\_\_\_

### REVISION EXERCISES ON OBLIQUE MOODS

#### Ex. 1. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs given in brackets in the following object clauses of all kinds:

1. I wish you (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a serious talk with him.
2. I wish I (not to be late) \_\_\_\_\_ for that meeting.
3. I'm afraid lest my children (to fall ill) \_\_\_\_\_. They were caught in the rain yesterday.
4. She suggested that we (to take off) \_\_\_\_\_ our coats and (move) \_\_\_\_\_ towards the fire.
5. I feared lest I (not to get) \_\_\_\_\_ back in time.
6. I was afraid they (to misunderstand) \_\_\_\_\_ my intention.
7. I wish I never (to meet) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
8. I'm afraid I (not to sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ well.
9. I was arranged that we (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a room at the local pub.
10. I wish you (to think) \_\_\_\_\_ of something else.
11. I wish her face (not to make up) \_\_\_\_\_ so heavily.
12. I wish you (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ more serious, my darling.
13. They recommended that I (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ and (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ everything with my own eyes.
14. I wish you (to stop) \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.
15. I was afraid that Daddy (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ upset when I broke the news to him.
16. I wish you (not to catch) \_\_\_\_\_ that dreadful cold.
17. They demanded that the doctor (to tell) \_\_\_\_\_ them what the matter was.
18. I do wish you (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ present at this party.
19. I'm afraid lest it (to begin) \_\_\_\_\_ raining.
20. I am afraid we (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ bad news for you.
21. We were nervous lest he (to be told) \_\_\_\_\_ about that accident.
22. She was overcome with fear lest I (to let) \_\_\_\_\_ her down.
23. Do you wish you (to come) \_\_\_\_\_?
24. Mother insisted that we (to spend) \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend out of town.
25. We were overcome with fear that our plans (to fail) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Ex. 2. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs given in brackets in the following conditional clauses of all kinds:

1. If she (not to drink) coffee \_\_\_\_\_ late at night, she (to be able) \_\_\_\_\_ to sleep.
2. She (to marry) \_\_\_\_\_ him if she (to know) \_\_\_\_\_ him better.
3. If the weather (not to change) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow we will go out of town.
4. If they (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ earlier ask them to wait a bit.
5. If it (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ wet, I'll stay at home.
6. If I (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ her there yesterday I (to discuss) \_\_\_\_\_ this question with her.
7. If I (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I (not to go) \_\_\_\_\_ there today.
8. I will buy this dictionary if my mother (to give) \_\_\_\_\_ me money.
9. She (to sneeze) \_\_\_\_\_ and (to cough) \_\_\_\_\_ now if she (to be caught) \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain yesterday.
10. If you (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Helen, remind her about our trip.
11. If you (not to

vote) \_\_\_\_\_ you (not to have) \_\_\_\_\_ a say in the future of the country. 12. What is the first thing you (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ if you (to elected) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Ex. 3. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs given in brackets in the following clauses of concession:**

1. Even if it (not to rain) \_\_\_\_\_ now I should not go for a walk with you as I've got a lot of work to do.
2. Whatever he (to say) \_\_\_\_\_ I'll never believe him.
3. No matter how tired she (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ she never complains of it.
4. Even if he (to apologize) \_\_\_\_\_ then I shouldn't have forgiven him.
5. Whatever he (to be asked) \_\_\_\_\_ he can answer any question.
6. However nasty the weather (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ we are to start at six sharp.
7. Whenever you (to come back) \_\_\_\_\_ call me by all means.
8. Even if I (to take) \_\_\_\_\_ that medicine for three days I should have a sore throat today.
9. Even if I (to be notified) \_\_\_\_\_ beforehand I shouldn't join you as I have been unwell lately.
10. However you (to persuade) \_\_\_\_\_ me I shan't accept that proposal.

**Ex. 4. Complete the following sentences using the appropriate forms of the Oblique Mood.**

1. If I were not so busy \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The weather is so fine today. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Our bus is starting. Make haste lest \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Had he been informed about her arrival \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If it were not raining now \_\_\_\_\_.
6. It is annoying that \_\_\_\_\_.
7. It's high time they \_\_\_\_\_.
8. But for that heavy rain \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I would have taken part in that discussion \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Had he been more attentive \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Even if the weather improved \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The teacher recommended that \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Wind your watch lest \_\_\_\_\_.
14. But for that devilish letter \_\_\_\_\_.
15. I live too far from the office. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
16. My friend insisted that \_\_\_\_\_.
17. I think the letter upset him. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
18. The question is very urgent. It's important that \_\_\_\_\_.
19. If I were you then \_\_\_\_\_.
20. He dropped his eyes as if he \_\_\_\_\_.
21. They would have met us at the airport if \_\_\_\_\_.
22. No matter how difficult it should be \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Should you find yourself in England \_\_\_\_\_.
24. Isn't it time they \_\_\_\_\_.
25. But for her laziness she \_\_\_\_\_.
26. Why are you looking at me as if \_\_\_\_\_?
27. It's five o'clock already but he hasn't returned yet. If only \_\_\_\_\_.
28. You didn't join us yesterday and lost a chance to talk to many interesting people. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
29. He is inclined to lying. Whatever he should say \_\_\_\_\_.
30. Even if I were invited there \_\_\_\_\_.
31. It was raining hard. I feared lest \_\_\_\_\_.
32. The tickets were hard to get, that's why my father insisted that we \_\_\_\_\_.
33. That hat in black was much better. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
34. It was rather cold and our mother advised that \_\_\_\_\_.
35. He got wet to the bone. I fear lest \_\_\_\_\_.
36. The concert was great. I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
37. Look at her. She is treating us as if \_\_\_\_\_.
38. My parents would rather I \_\_\_\_\_.
39. You miss your classes so often. It's advisable that \_\_\_\_\_.
40. You borrowed these books from the library long ago. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using Oblique Moods.**

1. До біса що спеку! Я не перенешу спеку. \_\_\_\_\_
2. У мене й у думках не було зрізати це дерево. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Тут так темно. Ми б краще вийшли раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Вона розповідає про Нью-Йорк, нібито вона бачила його своїми очима. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Добре було б, якби ви зняли цю квартиру декілька днів раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Просять, щоб ніхто не запізнився. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Скидається на те, що погода погіршиться. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я акцентую вашу увагу на цьому, щоб ви не робили більше таких помилок. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Пропонують, щоб ми приєдналися. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Усім рекомендують узяти із собою теплий одяг. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Хіба не смішно, що він погодився очолити цю експедицію? У нього зовсім мало досвіду. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Бажано, щоб ніхто не здогадався, у чому справа. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Шкода, що я так і не побачила вашого брата. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ви вирішили всиновити дитину? Нехай благословить вас Бог! \_\_\_\_\_
15. Дивно, що ви цього не передбачили. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Хоч би ніхто не помітив моїх сліз! \_\_\_\_\_
17. Шкода, що сьогодні не субота. Я могла б поїхати додому. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Шкода, що погода перемінилася. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я шкодую, що не вмію грати в шахи. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Я не воліла би брати дітей із собою. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Він мовчав, ніби йому не було що сказати. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ольга пошкодувала, що не відмінила ту зустріч. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Шкода, що їх немає тут. – А де вони? Адже їм давно пора повернутися. \_\_\_\_\_
24. У неї були темні круги під очима, ніби вона не спала вже декілька ночей підряд. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Вона поводить себе так, ніби знає все на світі. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Якби ж то я не згадав той факт! Це так нерозумно з мого боку. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби йому було однаково, то він не прийшов би. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби хто-небудь подзвонив мені, я сказала б її адресу. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Я могла б зв'язатися з нею, якби мені сказали про це раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Якби ти почала вживати ці ліки минулого тижня, то вже не кашляла б. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Якби ж то я був упевнений у цьому! \_\_\_\_\_
32. У мене й у думках не було відмовитися від такої пропозиції. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Що ж до мене, то я воліла би відразу йти додому. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ти б краще зачинила вікно. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Було б краще, якби ти гуляла перед сном. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Слава героям! \_\_\_\_\_
37. Дивно, що вони пішли пішки, адже в Петра є машина. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Якщо ви випадково побачите Ніну, передайте їй цей журнал. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Навіть якби ми й втрутилися, це нічого не змінило б. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Чашку кави? – Я охочіше випила б чашку чаю, якщо можна. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using Oblique Moods.**

1. Я нічого не розумію: їм давно пора бути тут. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Шкода, що в Луцьку немає оперного театру. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Що б не трапилось, тримайся! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якби ви дотримувалися інструкції, цього не сталося б. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Хоч би пішов дощ! \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я думаю, ніхто не пошкодує, що прийшов сюди. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Навіть якби я й хотів, зараз нічого не зміг би зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Сумнівно, що він отримав п'ятірку за тест. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Давай наведемо будильник, щоб ми не проспали. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Якщо я випадково запізнюся, зачекайте мене. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я боюся, хоч би не пропустити щось. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Ці ліки рекомендується вживати після їжі. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якою б чудовою не була погода, я мушу залишитися вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ти б краще не сунула носа: це не твоя справа. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Якби не ваш приїзд, я б не залишилася. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Скидається на те, що тут нікого немає. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Боюся, щоб не образити її. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Бажано, щоб вони не помітили ніяких змін. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Якщо випадково будуть якісь зміни, дайте нам знати. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Якщо вам доведеться бути у Львові, відвідайте оперу, ви не пошкодуєте. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я запишу все детально, щоб мені, бува, чогось не забути. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ким би ти не був, ти не маєш права говорити такі речі. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Він говорить французькою без акценту, нібито прожив багато років у Франції. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Вимагається, щоб усі екзамени були складені до першого січня. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Що б ви не казали, я вам не вірю. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Ти б краще спекла торт сама. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Ключі вимагають залишати внизу. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Просьять, щоб дітей клали спати якомога раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Вона боялася, щоб сусіди не помітили її там. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Боюсь, хоч би вони не прийшли завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Нехай збудуться твої мрії! \_\_\_\_\_
32. Вона так шкодує, що її не вчили музики в дитинстві. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Якби не ваші ліки, я все ще мала б ангіну. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Шкода, що його не покарали за такий вчинок. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Ти ображаєшся на мене? – Боронь Боже! З якої причини? \_\_\_\_\_
36. Боюся, щоб не було грози. \_\_\_\_\_
37. До біса екзамени! Добре було б повеселитися трохи. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Я пошкодувала, що запросила його на обід. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Захоплює, що вона сама взялася за вирішення цієї проблеми. \_\_\_\_\_
- Так було домовлено, що його дружина приєднається до нього через шість місяців. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Батьки наполягали, щоб я познайомив їх зі своєю подругою. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Я так шкодую, що зустріла його на своєму життєвому шляху! \_\_\_\_\_
43. Отже, ви вирушаєте. Ну що ж, нехай благословить вас Господь! Нехай подорож ваша буде щасливою! \_\_\_\_\_
44. У неї завжди такий вигляд, ніби вона щойно плакала. \_\_\_\_\_

45. На випадок, якщо тобі доведеться відлучитися несподівано, подзвони мені. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Якби не цей багаж, ми пішли б пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Вона записала назву книжки, щоб не забути. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Вона так боялася, щоб вони не торкнулися цієї проблеми. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Якщо трапиться так, що я ще колись зустріну його, я знатиму, що робити. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Якщо не брати до уваги недотепних жартів мого сусіда за столом, то вечірка була чудовою. \_\_\_\_\_

## 9. MODAL VERBS

### The Modal Verb CAN

#### Ex. 1. Analyse the form and the meaning of the modal verb *can*. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian.

1. You can go, if you want to, but could you leave the boy here? \_\_\_\_\_
2. The boy asked if he could have some more apples. \_\_\_\_\_
3. But for his illness, he could have got there in time. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Could you give a glass of cold water? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can it be really you? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Children can't play with the knife. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Oh, you can't have done it! \_\_\_\_\_
8. He wasn't old, he couldn't have been more than fifty. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You can cut my moustache, too. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You could at least have come earlier. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Complete a sentence with *could*, *couldn't* or *was/were able to*.

**Model:** My grandfather was very clever. He **could** (or **was able to**) speak five languages.  
I looked everywhere for the book but I **couldn't** find it.  
The fire spread quickly but everyone **was able to** escape.

1. He had hurt his leg, so he \_\_\_\_\_ walk very well.
2. She wasn't at home when I phoned but I \_\_\_\_\_ contact her at her office.
3. I looked very carefully and I \_\_\_\_\_ see a figure in the distance.
4. They didn't have any tomatoes in the first shop I went to, but I \_\_\_\_\_ get some in the next shop.
5. My grandmother loved music. She \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano very well.
6. He had hurt his leg, so he \_\_\_\_\_ walk very well.
7. The boy fell into the river but fortunately we \_\_\_\_\_ rescue him.

#### Ex. 3. In this exercise you have to use *can* or *be able to*. Sometimes it is possible to use either; sometimes only *be able to* is possible.

**Model:** – George has travelled a lot. He **can** (or **is able to**) speak four languages.

1. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ drive but he hasn't got a car.
2. I can't understand Martin. I've never \_\_\_\_\_ understand him.
3. I used to \_\_\_\_\_ stand on my head but I can't do it now.
4. Ask Ann about your problem. She would \_\_\_\_\_ help you.
5. I am afraid I'll be busy till seven. \_\_\_\_\_ you call a little later?
6. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ to substitute for you in case you wouldn't come.

#### Ex. 4. Use different ways to express strong improbability.

**Model:** – He did not notice you. – He **couldn't have failed to** notice you.

1. He didn't understand me. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She didn't like the play. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They didn't trust him. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They didn't find him there. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She didn't notice the mistake. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They didn't receive the telegram in time. \_\_\_\_\_
7. They didn't realize the full significance of the event. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She didn't lose the sight of them in the crowd. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He didn't see you. \_\_\_\_\_
10. They didn't notice us. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Express doubt and improbability about the statements made in the following sentences.**

**Model:** – He knows the language quite well.

Doubt: – **Can/could** he **know** the language quite well?

Improbability: – He **can't/couldn't know** the language quite well.

1. He understands every word you say. \_\_\_\_\_
2. They know how to go there. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She is looking for somebody. \_\_\_\_\_
4. But they are very fond of each other. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He is so old. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She has told the truth. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He is ill. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He can translate this inscription. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I dislike this picture. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He misunderstood us. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Express reproach by changing the form of the Infinitive, and that of the modal verb, if necessary.**

**Model:** – You can invite them too. – You **could have invited** them too.

1. You could tell him about it yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You can take this book at the library. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You can ring her up. \_\_\_\_\_
4. You could send sms. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We can lose our way. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You can let us know. \_\_\_\_\_
7. You can explain everything. \_\_\_\_\_
8. We can be late. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You can follow his advice. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You can warn us. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Express surprise according to the model.**

**Model:** – This is Nina's vocabulary. – **Can it be** hers? Her handwriting is quite different.

1. The boys on the photo are twins (not to look like each other). \_\_\_\_\_
2. The woman on the photo is my mother (not to look like you). \_\_\_\_\_
3. My grandfather reads newspapers without spectacles though he is 70 (to be too old). \_\_\_\_\_
4. My husband is 7 years older than I am (to look the same age). \_\_\_\_\_
5. My grandson speaks English (to be too young). \_\_\_\_\_
6. She is telling lies (never to tell lies). \_\_\_\_\_
7. Olga often oversleeps and is late for lessons (to be very diligent). \_\_\_\_\_
8. He often offends little children (to be so calm). \_\_\_\_\_
9. Nina often loses her temper (to be so composed). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Express surprise according to the model.**

**Model:** – The passenger didn't break the rules but he was fined.

– How **could he be fined** if he **didn't break** the rule?

1. Andrew was invited to the party though nobody wanted him to come there. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Nina was praised though her acting was not good. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The woman was given a sick leave though she was not ill. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The boy didn't break discipline but he was reprimanded. \_\_\_\_\_

5. The passenger was allowed to get into the train though he had no ticket. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The boy was allowed to eat some ice-cream though he had a sore throat. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The girl was praised though she didn't know the poem by heart. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Mother permitted her son to go for a walk though it was raining. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They went on discussing the book though it was too late. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She went to bed though she had much work to do. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Use the modal verb *can* in the Subjunctive Mood.**

**Model:** – I can play the piano.

– But I can't. I **could** play the piano **if I hadn't been** lazy in my childhood.

1. I can swim (to go to the river more often). \_\_\_\_\_
2. I can skate (to go the skating-rink more often). \_\_\_\_\_
3. I can skate (to have a skating-rink in my native town). \_\_\_\_\_
4. I can ride a horse (to have a horse at home). \_\_\_\_\_
5. I can ride a horse (to be braver in my childhood). \_\_\_\_\_
6. I can speak English (to learn English at school). \_\_\_\_\_
7. I can make cakes (to be taught by somebody). \_\_\_\_\_
8. I can go for a walk (to be permitted). \_\_\_\_\_
9. I can go on an excursion (not to be ill). \_\_\_\_\_
10. I can buy this dictionary (to have money). \_\_\_\_\_
11. We can spend the week-end in the open air (the weather to be fine). \_\_\_\_\_
12. I can translate this text (to have a dictionary). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Note the use of the verb *can* in the following proverbs and sayings. Give their Ukrainian equivalents. Comment on the meaning of the verb *can*.**

1. No man can serve two masters. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You can judge a man by the company he keeps. \_\_\_\_\_
4. A man can do no more than he can. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can the leopard change his spots? \_\_\_\_\_
6. You cannot have it both ways. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Money can't buy everything. \_\_\_\_\_
8. If you can't beat them, join them. \_\_\_\_\_
9. One cannot be in two places at once. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You can't sell the cow and drink the milk. \_\_\_\_\_
11. You can't eat your cake and have it. \_\_\_\_\_
12. You cannot make an omelette without breaking eggs. \_\_\_\_\_
13. He that cannot obey cannot command. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Man cannot live by bread alone. \_\_\_\_\_
15. One can't make a silk purse of a sow's ear. \_\_\_\_\_
16. You cannot get blood from a stone. \_\_\_\_\_
17. You cannot expect anything from a pig but a grunt. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 11. Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to different ways of rendering double negation. Use: *cannot help doing smth*; *cannot but do smth*; *cannot help it / smth*; *cannot / couldn't have failed to do it*.**

1. Я не можу не вірити їм. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми не могли не розсміятися. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Він буває грубим, але я не можу нічого зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Вона не могла не розплакатися. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не можу не думати про те, що нас чекає. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Чого ти плачеш? – Я просто нічого не можу зробити із собою. \_\_\_\_\_



7. Не ображайся, я нічого не можу зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я не міг не піти туди. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мені нічого не залишалося, як сказати йому правду. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ви не могли не бачити їх там. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Ми не могли не повірити йому. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Він не міг недочути мене. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я просто не можу не зробити це: я пообіцяла. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Йому не могла не сподобатися ця картина, він любить пейзажі. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Вони не могли не одержати посилку до цих пір. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 12. Translate the following sentences into English using the modal verb *can* in all of its possible meanings.**

1. Невже це дійсно так? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Тут не можна переходити вулицю. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Не міг він вам цього сказати. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Можете взяти цей словник із собою. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не могли б ви дати мені ваш олівець на хвилинку? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я міг би купити вам цю книжку, якби я знав, що вона вам потрібна. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Можете закінчити цю вправу вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Звичайно, він міг би тоді допомогти вам. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я можу зробити це сьогодні ввечері. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я думаю, що могла б показати вам, як це робиться. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я не можу зрозуміти, що він має на увазі. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Невже вона говорить правду? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Невже він не побачив нас? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Він не міг не помітити нас. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Невже вони програли? \_\_\_\_\_
16. Не могли вони програти. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Ви вмієте плавати? \_\_\_\_\_
18. Він міг би закінчити цю роботу ще вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Невже їй не подобається ця ваза? \_\_\_\_\_
20. Не може бути, щоб вона вам про це не розповіла. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Хіба уже так пізно? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Олівцем писати не можна. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Чи не могли б ви трохи зачекати? \_\_\_\_\_
24. Я не могла повірити своїм очам. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Шкода, що його немає вдома. Він міг би допомогти нам. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Невже він був лікарем? \_\_\_\_\_
27. Не може доросла людина говорити такі речі. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Невже так холодно? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Невже було так холодно? \_\_\_\_\_
30. Невже ви не вірите йому? \_\_\_\_\_
31. Не можу повірити, що це ваш син. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Він не міг не відповісти на цей лист. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Не могли б ви зайти трохи пізніше? \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ви не могли бачити його там: він зараз хворий. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Невже ми пройшли п'ять кілометрів? \_\_\_\_\_
36. Він не міг забути вашу адресу, адже був тут багато разів. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Не може бути, щоб вона не знайшла цю книгу, її можна знайти в будь-якій бібліотеці. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Не може бути, щоб його не попередили. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Невже його не попередили? \_\_\_\_\_
40. Він не міг не впізнати вас. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Невже ви ніколи не бачили його раніше? \_\_\_\_\_
42. Невже ніхто не знає його? \_\_\_\_\_
43. Ми не могли не повірити йому: він говорив так переконливо. \_\_\_\_\_

## The Modal Verb MAY

**Ex. 1. Analyse the meaning of the modal verb *may* in the following sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. He may have fallen ill. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Might we join you? \_\_\_\_\_
3. You might carry this parcel for me. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sit here so that I might see your face. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She may come or may not. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He said that I might use all his books. \_\_\_\_\_
7. In this museum one may see much of interest. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She might have gone before you arrived. \_\_\_\_\_
9. May I trouble you for the salt? \_\_\_\_\_
10. You may not enter this room until I say so. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Express supposition and motivate it.**

**Model:** – Your brother is sleeping now. – He **may** be sleeping. He always sleeps at this time.

1. Helen has a rich collection of Ukrainian books (to like Ukrainian literature). \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ann has beautiful roses in her garden (to be fond of gardening). \_\_\_\_\_
3. Your sister is doing the room now (always to do the flat at this time). \_\_\_\_\_
4. Your younger brother is having a music lesson now (always to have a music lesson at this time). \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm afraid we shall not find them in (to have already left). \_\_\_\_\_
6. Olga has a piano at home (to play the piano). \_\_\_\_\_
7. Irene has a niece in Kyiv (to have many relatives in Kyiv). \_\_\_\_\_
8. Your sister is doing the room now (always to do the flat at this time). \_\_\_\_\_
9. It seems to me, he knows everything (to have been told all this before). \_\_\_\_\_
10. I'm afraid we will not find them in (to have already left). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Express supposition referring to the past.**

**Model:** – We were planning to go to the movies last night, but my friend didn't turn up. I don't know what has happened. – She **might have fallen** ill (**might have confused** the days; **might have come back** too late; **might have been kept** at the college).

1. My neighbour was very angry with his son yesterday. What do you think the matter was? (to get a bad mark at school; to break the window; to lose the key). \_\_\_\_\_
2. My sister was late for the concert yesterday. Do you know why? (to be kept at work; to take the wrong bus; to lose the ticket). \_\_\_\_\_
3. My friend's son failed his exam last week. Why do you think he didn't pass it? (to miss many classes; to work by fits and starts; to have a difficult examination card). \_\_\_\_\_
4. We didn't enjoy the film yesterday. Could you guess why not? (to be dull; to have bad seats; to have talkative neighbours). \_\_\_\_\_
5. We didn't enjoy the picnic. Could you guess why not? (to be rainy; to fail to find a good place; to fail to take fishing rods). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Talk about possible happenings. Use the word(s) in brackets.**

**Model:** – Do you think it will rain this afternoon? (may). – It **may rain** this afternoon.

– Do you think Ann will come to the party? (might not). – She **might not come** to the party.

1. Do you think Tom will be late? (may) – He \_\_\_\_\_
2. Do you think Ann will be able to find our house? (might not). – She \_\_\_\_\_

3. Do you think there'll be an election this year? (might). – There \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you think Tony will pass the exam? (may not). – He \_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you think they'll be waiting for us when we arrive? (might). – They \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Express reproach, disapproval.**

**Model 1:** – Andrew often crosses streets in the wrong place. – Andrew, you **might be** more careful.

**Model 2:** – Yesterday Andrew started fighting with his friend. – You **might have interfered**.

1. Irene always forgets her copy-books at home (to be less forgetful). \_\_\_\_\_
2. My mother usually buys more food than she needs and then she throws it out (to be more practical and economical). \_\_\_\_\_
3. My aunt had a very bad headache yesterday and I didn't know how to help her (to take her for a walk). \_\_\_\_\_
4. My neighbour told me that her son was running a high temperature and there was nobody to go to the chemist's (you to go to the chemist's). \_\_\_\_\_
5. Once in the street an old man fell down. He was unconscious. I didn't know how to help him (to call an ambulance). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Comment on the use of the verbs *may* and *might* and the forms of the Infinitive in the following proverbs and sayings. Give the Ukrainian equivalents.**

1. The remedy may be worse than the disease. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Sticks and stones may break my bones, but words will never hurt me. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Hares may pull dead lions by the beard. \_\_\_\_\_
4. A fool may sometimes speak to the purpose. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Men/friends may meet, but mountains never (greet). \_\_\_\_\_
6. The evil wound may be cured, but not the evil name. \_\_\_\_\_
7. A lion may come to be beholden to a mouse. \_\_\_\_\_
8. What may be done at any time is done at no time. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Never put off till tomorrow what may we do today. \_\_\_\_\_
10. A bird may be known by its song (flight). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Note the use of the verb *may* in these sentences expressing wishes and hopes. Give their Ukrainian equivalents.**

1. May you be happy! \_\_\_\_\_
2. May you be successful! \_\_\_\_\_
3. May you live to see this happy day! \_\_\_\_\_
4. May you live to repent it! \_\_\_\_\_
5. May he rest in peace! \_\_\_\_\_
6. May damnation take him! \_\_\_\_\_
7. May success attend you! \_\_\_\_\_
8. Long may he live! \_\_\_\_\_
9. Much good may it do to him! \_\_\_\_\_
10. May there never be another world war! \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Translate the following sentences into English using the modal verb *may* in all of its possible meanings.**

1. Ви можете зачекати? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Можна мені вас зачекати? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ти міг би побути вдома хоча б один вечір на тиждень. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Він, мабуть, уже пішов. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Можливо, він ще чекає. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Не смій заходити сюди, чуєш? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ти міг би відразу сказати, що не підеш із нами. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Інколи в ясну погоду звідси можна побачити море. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Вона могла вже приїхати. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ви могли б сказати про це вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Ви можете піти туди пішки, це зовсім недалеко. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Я не знаю, де мій ключ. Я могла загубити його. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Він сказав, що я можу піти туди завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ти міг би вчинити так? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я спитав, чи можу взяти його книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Може так трапитися, що він запізниться. \_\_\_\_\_

17. Чи можу я допомогти вам чим-небудь? \_\_\_\_\_
18. Чи не могли б ви прийти завтра? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Можливо, він уже подзвонив їй. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Ти міг би подзвонити мені. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Чи можу я дізнатися, де розміщена ця установа? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Можливо, це дуже важке питання. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Було зроблено менше, ніж можна було чекати. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Але те, що ви говорите, може бути неправдою. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Не смій брати цю книгу, вона не моя. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Ти ж не був дуже зайнятий і міг б нам допомогти. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Запитай його, чи можна нам відвідати цю лабораторію. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Він міг би зробити це для вас, він просто не захотів. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ти міг розбити вікно. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Вона, можливо, знає іспанську мову. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Можливо, вони вже працюють над цією проблемою. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Їх, можливо, не було вчора в місті. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Вони, можливо, подумали, що ми не прийдемо в такий дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ми, мабуть, підемо. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Можна подивитися вашу роботу? – На жаль, ні, вона ще не готова. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Він може бути там завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Можливо, він був там учора. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Він, мабуть, усе ще працює. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Ви могли б уже й повернути цю книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Можливо, я не згадував про це у своїх листах. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Може, ви вже чули це ім'я. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. State in which of the following sentences the form *might* is: (1) the Past Simple of *may*; (2) a form expressing unreality; (3) a more polite form of *may*; (4) a form implying more uncertainty than *may*.**

1. I asked if he might bring his wife next Sunday \_\_\_\_\_
2. We're going to lunch with some neighbours tomorrow. Mother thinks you might join us. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Harry might often be seen sitting on the porch with a pipe in his mouth. \_\_\_\_\_
4. "Where do you suppose he is now?" "He might be in New York". \_\_\_\_\_
5. I thought the picture might interest you. \_\_\_\_\_
6. "Might I look round?" he asked. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He might come soon. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He might have spoken to her yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You might have let me know about it beforehand. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He said he might read my thoughts. \_\_\_\_\_

**CAN and MAY (compared)**

**Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with the verb *can* or *may* in the correct form.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ be away from home tomorrow. 2. It \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ not be true. 3. It was very dark, we \_\_\_\_\_ see nothing. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ you lend me 10 dollars? 5. \_\_\_\_\_ you hear what he is saying?
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ walk miles in this district without seeing a house. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ it be true? 8. Mother says I \_\_\_\_\_ go out. 9. Mother said I \_\_\_\_\_ not go out. 10. Sorry, sir, you \_\_\_\_\_ not smoke here. 11. It \_\_\_\_\_ not be so far. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ I have another book? 13. You \_\_\_\_\_ have written this letter long ago.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ I come and see you? 15. He \_\_\_\_\_ be lying in wait for you. 16. You \_\_\_\_\_ have come an hour ago. 17. Alcoholic liquors \_\_\_\_\_ not be sold without a licence. 18. When they told me I was cured and \_\_\_\_\_ go, I \_\_\_\_\_ tell you I was more afraid than glad. 19. I knew I \_\_\_\_\_ trust him. 20. Her mother said she \_\_\_\_\_ play with me if she wished. 21. I'm glad you brought your son here. We \_\_\_\_\_ have some fun. 22. When he married her she \_\_\_\_\_ not have been more than sixteen. 23. You have acted very irresponsibly and you \_\_\_\_\_ find yourself in serious trouble. 24. Come up to the fire where you \_\_\_\_\_ warm up. 25. I confessed that I \_\_\_\_\_ not swim. 26. Where \_\_\_\_\_ I have met her? 27. He \_\_\_\_\_ have been

through a hard time. 28. What else \_\_\_\_\_ we do for you? 29. My dear, where \_\_\_\_\_ you have got such a foolish idea? 30. \_\_\_\_\_ it be a joke? 31. \_\_\_\_\_ I ask you to explain the rule once more? 32. Whenever you \_\_\_\_\_ come, you are always welcome. 33. It was some special occasion. I don't remember. It \_\_\_\_\_ have been my birthday. 34. He \_\_\_\_\_ not have learned the news, that's why he looks as if nothing had happened. 35. You \_\_\_\_\_ have seen him at the meeting. He was ill. 36. She \_\_\_\_\_ not have failed to notice her mistake. 37. He \_\_\_\_\_ be here at any moment. 38. \_\_\_\_\_ this old lady be Loise? She \_\_\_\_\_ not have changed like that. 39. My neighbour lent me her opera-glasses and I \_\_\_\_\_ fully enjoy the ballet. 40. He said I \_\_\_\_\_ come to him any day I liked. 41. \_\_\_\_\_ I see your wife for a minute? 42. He \_\_\_\_\_ not have forgotten our address; he has visited us several times. 43. Don't be angry with her. She \_\_\_\_\_ have done it by mistake. 44. \_\_\_\_\_ you do me a favour? 45. I \_\_\_\_\_ not hear you well.

### The Modal Verb MUST

**Ex. 1. State the meaning of the modal verb *must* in the following sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. "I'm sorry but I must go". \_\_\_\_\_
2. You must not allow your friend to take such a mad step. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You must prevent it. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Your face seems familiar to me, we must have met somewhere. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He must be very tired after his journey. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Your English is very poor, you must study very hard. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Your English is rather good, you must be studying hard. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Your English has improved, you must have studied hard during your vocation. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You must do as you are told. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He must be unaware of that. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Nobody must have seen him enter the hall. \_\_\_\_\_
12. He that would eat the fruit must climb the tree. \_\_\_\_\_
13. He must need go whom the devil drives. \_\_\_\_\_
14. If you dance you must pay the fiddle. \_\_\_\_\_
15. What must be, must be. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Express probability.**

**Model:** – Jane is always forgetting something. – She **must be** absent-minded.

1. Everybody wants to consult Doctor Savchenko (to be a good specialist). \_\_\_\_\_
2. My niece is a very good student (to be hard working). \_\_\_\_\_
3. Kate always gets up early no matter how late she goes to bed (to be an early riser). \_\_\_\_\_
4. The girl always finds faults with everybody (to be a bore). \_\_\_\_\_
5. The woman is watching the film and crying (to be watching something tragic). \_\_\_\_\_
6. She can't find her gloves (to have lost them). \_\_\_\_\_
7. She can speak English very well (to have worked hard for many years). \_\_\_\_\_
8. The girl is sleeping and smiling (to be dreaming about something pleasant). \_\_\_\_\_
9. They are not at home (to have gone shopping). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Express forbiddance by using *mustn't* and the absence of necessity by using *needn't*.**

**Model:** – They **will come** again.

– They **mustn't come** again (forbiddance). They **needn't come** again (absence of necessity).

1. Your son is going to make a fire in the forest. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I will answer this letter at once. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I will go there immediately. \_\_\_\_\_

4. I will ring him up. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I will carry the bag myself. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I will take care of him. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I will reproach myself. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I will do the work instead of him. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I will use a dictionary to translate this text. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I will learn this text by heart. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Combine the modal verb *must* with the proper form of the Infinitive given in brackets.**

1. Look! People are hurrying with umbrellas up. It must (to rain) heavily. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You have no way out. You must (to follow) my advice. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She looked so pale. She must (to fall) ill. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He is in a good form, he must (to have) a good chance of winning. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The boy must (to read) something funny, he is smiling all the time. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He must (to fail to get) this book. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The children mustn't (to hear) what you are saying. \_\_\_\_\_
8. "Where is mother?" "She must (to work) in the garden." \_\_\_\_\_
9. It's six o'clock already. They must (to come) home. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She must (to study) at that moment, that's why she did not answer our telephone call. \_\_\_\_\_
11. She must (to be angry) with me. She left without saying "Good-bye". \_\_\_\_\_
12. The family must (to expect) some guests: the mother is tidying up the room. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The children must (to brush) their own shoes themselves. \_\_\_\_\_
14. "Where is Nell?" "She must (to see) sights." \_\_\_\_\_
15. He must (to be hungry). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using the modal verb *must* in all of its possible meanings.**

1. Вийдіть негайно! \_\_\_\_\_
2. А тепер я мушу поспішати. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Чия черга? Хто повинен йти за покупками? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Зачекай трохи, я повинна дочитати розділ до кінця. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Йому, напевно, понад сорок. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Не можна говорити з мамою таким тоном. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Необхідно взяти до уваги всі деталі. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ви не повинні дозволяти дітям гратися тут. Тут їздять машини. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Очевидно, вони його знають. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Вони, напевно, чекають нас в університеті. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Вона, напевно, нічого не знає про ваш приїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Чи повинен я зробити це сьогодні? – Ні, ви можете зробити це завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Вона, напевно, ніколи мене не любила. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Це, напевно, неправда. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Ця машина, очевидно, вітчизняного виробництва. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
16. Ти, напевно, забув його. \_\_\_\_\_
- 17 Я повинен зробити що-небудь, щоб урятувати його. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
18. Він, очевидно, не знає, що вони вже поїхали. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вас, певно, неправильно зрозуміли. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Він, очевидно, не зумів дістати квітки. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я повинен відвезти брату його речі. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Він, напевно, захворів? \_\_\_\_\_
23. Я повинен поспішати, уже сім годин. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Діти, певно, зараз у школі. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Викладач, очевидно, помилково назвав ваше прізвище. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### The Modal Phrase TO HAVE TO

#### Ex. 1. Change the following into the negative and interrogative.

1. He had to sit up late with his work. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We'll have to get up very early tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He has got to go there right now. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I had to explain everything. \_\_\_\_\_
5. They will have to do what they are told. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She had to clean the house herself. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I'm having to remind you of your duties again. \_\_\_\_\_
8. We will have to reconsider the situation. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I have to give up all the pleasures of life. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Translate into English using *have to*.

1. Минулого року я жив недалеко від університету й мені не доводилося вставати так рано. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. Він сказав, що йому доведеться виїхати на декілька днів. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Вам доведеться скласти цей екзамен ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мені довелося пояснити все декану. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Чи довго довелося вам чекати? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Їй довелося випити чай без цукру. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я зробила багато помилок в останньому диктанті й мені довелося переписати його. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
8. Вам доведеться переглянути свою позицію. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Немає необхідності туди йти. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ми були змушені чекати дуже довго. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Кому довелося відповідати за це? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Боюся, що вам доведеться прийти ще раз, оскільки матеріали не готові. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
13. Вам доводиться так багато працювати? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Кому доводиться вставати дуже рано щодня? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Вам доведеться почекати. Лікар зайнятий. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 3. Use *must not* or *do not have to* in the following sentences keeping in mind the difference in meaning: *do not have to* = lack of necessity; *must not* = a) prohibitions (Do not do this! It is prohibited.); b) some advice not to do something.

1. I have already finished all my work, so I \_\_\_\_\_ study tonight.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ forget to take my key with me.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ introduce me to Dr. Gray. We've already met.
4. A person \_\_\_\_\_ become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.
5. In order to be good salesclerk, you \_\_\_\_\_ be rude to a customer.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.
7. A person \_\_\_\_\_ get married in order to lead a happy and fulfilling life.

8. Johnny! You \_\_\_\_\_ play with sharp knives!
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to the concert if you don't want to, but it might be good.
10. This is an opportunity that comes once in a life. We \_\_\_\_\_ let it pass.

**Ex. 4. Complete these sentences with *must* or *have to* (in its correct form). If it is possible to use either, give two variants.**

1. Well, it's 10 o'clock. I \_\_\_\_\_ go now.
2. You really \_\_\_\_\_ work harder if you want to pass that exam.
3. Many children in Britain \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniform when they go to school.
4. Last night Dan suddenly became ill. We \_\_\_\_\_ call the doctor.
5. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ wear glasses since she was eight years old.
6. I'm afraid I can't come tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ work late.
7. Tom may \_\_\_\_\_ go away next week.
8. We couldn't repair the car ourselves. We \_\_\_\_\_ take it to a garage.
9. When you come to London again, you \_\_\_\_\_ come and see us.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ explain everything to my parents.

### The Modal Phrase TO BE TO

**Ex. 1. Analyse the modal meaning of the verb *to be to* in the following sentences. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

1. That night he was to leave for London. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You are to live here for the next two months. \_\_\_\_\_
3. What is to become of her? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Why are you late? You were to have come here an hour ago. \_\_\_\_\_
5. According to the state plan many new dwelling houses are to be built this year. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I didn't know at that time that she was to be my wife. \_\_\_\_\_
7. We were to be neighbours. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She was to be my friend for many years. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They hoped to spend the summer together, but it was not to be. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Nobody met me at the station as I was to have arrived a day before. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Combine the verb *to be to* in its modal meaning with the proper form of the Infinitive given in brackets.**

1. Large sums of money are (to spend) on education and medical service. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The plane was (to take off) at night, but the weather was too bad. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Her father was often (to see) in this bar in the company of a young lady. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Nobody met them as they were (to arrive) by the ten o'clock train. \_\_\_\_\_
5. There is nothing strange in what he did. It was (to expect). \_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you think he is (to trust)? \_\_\_\_\_
7. What is (to become) of my poor daughter? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I did not know that the worst was yet (to happen). \_\_\_\_\_
9. We were (to meet) at six, but she didn't turn up. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He was (to have) a music lesson in the morning, but the teacher called up to cancel it. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Explain the difference in meaning between the two sentences in the following pairs.**

1. a) There was to be an interesting concert last night, but I felt unwell and had to stay at home. b) There was to have been an interesting concert last night, but the singer fell ill and the concert had to be postponed. \_\_\_\_\_
2. a) My train was to arrive at six sharp. b) Nobody met me as my train was to have been arrived at six sharp. \_\_\_\_\_
3. a) I am to take my younger sister to the kindergarten every day, and I was to take her there yesterday, too. b) I was to have taken my sister to the kindergarten, but I didn't feel well and my mother had to do it. \_\_\_\_\_



4. a) I was to meet my cousin brother. b) I was to have met my cousin. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English using *to be to*.**

1. Я повинна була прочитати цю книгу ще минулого тижня. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Що б ви одягнули, якби вам потрібно було піти на концерт? \_\_\_\_\_

3. Якщо вам потрібно було відрекомендуватися, якби ви зробили це? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Як мені бути? \_\_\_\_\_

5. Не смій заходити! \_\_\_\_\_

6. Коли відбудеться їхнє весілля? \_\_\_\_\_

7. Я гадав, що ж із нами буде. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Ми повинні були вирушити в понеділок, але Ніна захворіла, і нам довелося відкласти нашу поїзду. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Їм судилося стати чоловіком і жінкою. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Я повинен підготувати все до кінця цього тижня. \_\_\_\_\_

11. Вони планували провести літо разом, але цьому не судилося здійснитися. \_\_\_\_\_

12. Я знала, що Джон повинен був прийти в клуб. \_\_\_\_\_

13. По радіо оголосили, що ввечері повинен виступити президент. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Іден пішла до лісу, де повинна була зустрітися з братом. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Поїзд має відправитися о сьомій. \_\_\_\_\_

**MUST, TO HAVE TO, TO BE TO (compared)**

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences in to Ukrainian paying attention to specific shades of obligation, expressed by the verbs *must, to be to, to have to*.**

1. Must I have a pass to go there? \_\_\_\_\_

2. They made such a noise that I had to put an end to it. \_\_\_\_\_

3. The jubilee is to be celebrated on August 25. \_\_\_\_\_

4. We were to start on Monday. \_\_\_\_\_

5. You are not to tell your mother about it. \_\_\_\_\_

6. You will have to go there once again. \_\_\_\_\_

7. You are not to come here anymore. \_\_\_\_\_

8. We are to do it exactly the way we are told. \_\_\_\_\_

9. We had to do a lot of things during the week we stayed in the country. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Do you have to get up so early every morning? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences, using *must, to have to, to be to*.**

1. What am I supposed to do? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Is it necessary for me to stay? \_\_\_\_\_

3. It has been arranged that children would stay at home. \_\_\_\_\_

4. It was necessary that somebody would be there to receive guests. \_\_\_\_\_

5. It will be necessary for someone to explain everything to her. \_\_\_\_\_

6. It is necessary that I would leave tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_

7. It is arranged that you would do it. \_\_\_\_\_

8. It was planned that we would wait for them in Kyiv. \_\_\_\_\_

9. The lecture is supposed to begin at eight. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Where would I go? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Open the brackets. Use *must* or *to have to* (if the action is necessary) and *to be to* (if the action is expected).**

1. And who (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking?

2. Who (to meet) \_\_\_\_\_ you there?

3. My feet were wet, I (to change) \_\_\_\_\_.

4. He is getting rather troublesome. Yesterday I (to speak) \_\_\_\_\_ to him twice about washing his hands.
5. I am afraid you (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ there alone. I have a terrible headache.
6. When the meeting (to begin) \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Two more apartment houses (to be built) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
8. This is Kate. She (to share) \_\_\_\_\_ your room.
9. We (to begin) \_\_\_\_\_ as early as possible, otherwise we won't finish this work.
10. At this boarding school children (to go to bed) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 o'clock.

**Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with *must, to have to, to be to*, using the correct form of the Infinitive.**

1. I did not know who \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) my travelling companion.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to work) hard to achieve good results.
3. This is serious; you \_\_\_\_\_ (not to joke) about it.
4. We agreed that the one who came first \_\_\_\_\_ (to reserve) seats for the rest of us.
5. He always puts off doing what he \_\_\_\_\_ (to do) until it \_\_\_\_\_ (to be done).
6. It was too late to change the plan, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (to remain) as it was.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ (not to tell) him anything about it before you get further instructions.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to go to bed) at eight o'clock to be up in time for the first train.
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to stay) here because he has missed the last bus.

**Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences into English using *must, to have to, to be to*.**

1. Я повинна перекласти цю книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ви повинні поговорити з нею, мене вона не послухає. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Він, очевидно, знає німецьку мову. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мені довелося йти туди самій. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ви мусите трохи зачекати. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Лишайся тут, не смій виходити. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я повинна була зустріти свою тітку на станції, але не змогла. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ми повинні були чекати її в Одесі, ми так домовилися. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Ірина повинна була сказати йому, де нас шукати. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Цій жінці судилося стати моєю мачухою. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Дивись, іде дощ. Тобі доведеться взяти парасольку. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Усі несуть парасольки: очевидно, іде дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Вони, напевно, знайомі. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Шеф забрав ці документи із собою, напевно. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Діти почали сваритися, і мені довелося втрутитися. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Не можна тримати книгу так близько до очей. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Що б не сталося, ви не повинні втручатися. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Ми повинні були піти туди разом, але вона так і не з'явилася. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Нам не довелося чекати. Поїзд прийшов вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Моя праска вийшла з ладу, мені доведеться купити нову. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Тобі доведеться позичити гроші, якщо ти хочеш купити нове пальто. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Було холодно, нам довелося розкласти вогнище. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Думаю, я повинна повернути частину грошей. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Сторінку п'ять довелося перенабрати. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Це все, що ви повинні були мені сказати? \_\_\_\_\_

**The Modal Verb OUGHT TO**

**Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian. Analyse the meaning of the modal verb *ought to*.**

1. I think, you ought to come. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You know, you oughtn't eat fish. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Such things ought to be attended to at once. \_\_\_\_\_
4. You ought to be taking a rest. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It's murder, and we ought to stop it. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You ought never to have married a woman 18 years younger than yourself. \_\_\_\_\_
7. You ought to see a doctor. \_\_\_\_\_

8. He ought to be punished, oughtn't he? \_\_\_\_\_
9. You oughtn't to have mentioned those facts. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You ought to feel some respect for your parents. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Respond to the following statements using *ought to*, *oughtn't to* in order to criticize a past action.**

**Model:** – Fred had an accident because he drove so fast. – He **oughtn't to have driven** so fast.

1. The traffic lights were red, but he didn't stop at the cross-roads. \_\_\_\_\_
2. He was in a hurry, and he didn't pay attention to the traffic lights. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He didn't take the medicine that was prescribed to him. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It was his great mistake. He married a very young girl. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He felt unwell but he didn't go to see the doctor. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I didn't telephone Mr. Brown yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
7. She didn't go to visit her sick friend. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I didn't let my parents know that I am here. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I didn't discuss the matter with my chief. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He didn't obey his parents. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks with *must*, *to have to*, *to be to*, *ought to*.**

1. Don't contradict her, you \_\_\_\_\_ to respect her age.
2. He felt that something \_\_\_\_\_ to be done as the situation grew awkward.
3. Why do you ask my opinion? You \_\_\_\_\_ to know better.
4. I feel I \_\_\_\_\_ to tell you the truth.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ not to speak about such things in the child's presence.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ have written to them on his arrival in due time.
7. Children \_\_\_\_\_ to obey their parents.
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ to become of the girl?
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ to cover the whole distance on foot.
10. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ have noticed that he was not used to speaking in public.
11. What \_\_\_\_\_ to happen to us?
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ speak out. You \_\_\_\_\_ not allow your husband to take such a step. You \_\_\_\_\_ prevent it, while there is some time yet.
13. These documents \_\_\_\_\_ to be filed.
14. Tom warned us that that place was too dangerous to bathe in, so we \_\_\_\_\_ to look for a safer spot.
15. Why are you so late? Didn't you get my letter saying that we \_\_\_\_\_ to meet at 4 o'clock?

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using the modal verb *ought to*.**

1. Вам не слід було так сміятися з його помилок. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Нам справді слід придбати новий холодильник. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Він, очевидно, повернеться до 4-ї години. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Тут мають добре рости груші. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Це оповідання Остапа Вишні. Отже, воно, напевно, повне гумору. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Її треба покарати. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ліки слід приймати регулярно. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Вам треба було зробити все заздалегідь. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Тобі не треба було йти туди без батьків. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ти б провідав свого хворого дідуся. \_\_\_\_\_

**THE Modal Verb SHOULD**

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian and analyse the meanings of the modal verb *should*.**

1. Why should I go there? \_\_\_\_\_
2. You shouldn't miss this opportunity. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Should I talk to him about it? \_\_\_\_\_
4. You shouldn't have done as you did! \_\_\_\_\_
5. How should I know? \_\_\_\_\_
6. You should be no more careful. \_\_\_\_\_

7. You shouldn't be so impatient. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I shouldn't have missed this chance. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You have missed a lot. I should have taken you to the concert. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
10. He should be more careful about his health. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Read the situations. Use *should* or *shouldn't* with the appropriate form of the Infinitive.**

1. Your friend has a bad toothache. Advise him to go to the dentist. You \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's very cold. Mr. Taylor, who has been ill recently, is walking along the road without a coat. He \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. Your friend is riding his bicycle at night without lights. You think this is dangerous. You \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. Your brother is always coughing because he smokes too much. Advise him to stop smoking. You \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
5. The children normally go to bed at 9 o'clock. It is now 9.30, they are not in bed; they are watching television. (Give two sentences). The children \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
6. Your friend is going to visit Greece. Advise him to learn a few words of Greek before he goes. You \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
7. The accident happened because Tom was driving on the wrong side of the road. Tom \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
8. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is now 9 o'clock, but the shop isn't open. The shop \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate into English using the verb *should*.**

1. І чого це він повинен слухатися його? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Вам слід було раніше сказати нам про це. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ти б краще зробив усе сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Завтра, напевно, погода буде краща. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Чому я повинен був їй допомагати? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ти б перечитав цей роман. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Треба було зробити все по-іншому. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Вам слід було попередити нас. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я гадаю, мені не слід відмовлятися від цієї пропозиції. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
10. Квіти, напевно, будуть рости тут добре. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Йому слід було прислухатися до наших порад. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
12. Вам слід більше читати вголос. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Вам не слід було так поспішати. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Твій подрузі слід бути уважнішою на уроках. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
15. Тобі слід було не брати того кота додому. \_\_\_\_\_

**The Modal Verb SHALL**

**Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian. Comment on the meaning of the modal verb *shall*.**

1. Shall we start? \_\_\_\_\_
2. She shall pay for it. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You shall have my answer tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Shall I get you some coffee? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Shall I shut the door? \_\_\_\_\_
6. You shall repent of this neglect of duty. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Don't be afraid, you shall not be punished. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You shall fall ill. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Shall I wait? \_\_\_\_\_
10. How much shall I pay? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use *shall* in the meaning of strict order or compulsion.**

**Model:** – Your reading is rather poor. I'll get you to read more to improve it.

– Your reading is rather poor. You **shall read** more to improve it.

1. You've missed a lot of classes without a good reason. I'll make you explain your behaviour to the Dean. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You don't like to use visual aids at your lessons. I'll get you to make use of them to avoid monotony. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You always idle away your time during the term and cram during the last fortnight. I'll make you work regularly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. John works by fits and starts and while speaking English he makes mistakes in every other sentence. We'll make him work harder. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The drills of the English Grammar bore us at times, but we must stop grumbling because Grammar drill exercises are of great use. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Respond to the following statements. Use *shall* to express warning or threat.**

**Model:** – You are so lightminded. The exams are only a few weeks off. (to fail at the exam)

– You **shall fail** at your exams.

1. You are very inattentive at times. What the teacher says goes in one ear and out of the other (to have a lot of gaps in your knowledge). \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mary, you often stay away from classes without a good excuse (to inform your parents). \_\_\_\_\_
3. Alec, spelling rules refuse to stick your head (to get a bad mark for a dictation). \_\_\_\_\_
4. Richard, you are going from worse to worse. You are very restless and can't concentrate on your work (not to make any progress). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using the modal verb *shall*.**

1. Ви пошкодуєте, повірте мені. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Вам показати, як це робиться? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Відчинити вікно? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Зварити тобі каву? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Нам зачекати вас? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Як ви думаєте, мені купити цей словник? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ти захворієш. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Він зробить, як ви скажете. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Ви отримаєте все необхідне. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Що робити із цими листами? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Він зробить це, чи йому хочеться цього, чи ні! \_\_\_\_\_
12. Вона відповість за це! Повір мені. \_\_\_\_\_

**The Modal Verb NEED**

**Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. Need I come? \_\_\_\_\_
2. You needn't be afraid of him. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She needn't have done it. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We needn't have told him a lie. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You needn't have gone into so many details \_\_\_\_\_
6. We needn't argue. \_\_\_\_\_
7. You needn't worry about her; she is quite able to take care of herself. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You needn't have done the work instead of him. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Need I help him? \_\_\_\_\_
10. You needn't come. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Translate into English.**

1. Можна не йти туди. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Можна було і не йти туди. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Можете і не переписувати цю вправу. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Можете не залишатися. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Нам можна й не повторювати ці правила, ми знаємо їх. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Дарма ви так хвилювалися. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Можна було й не купувати цю книжку. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Можете не говорити йому про це. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Дарма він пішов туди. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Дарма ти йшов до термінала поповнювати рахунок, щоб подзвонити йому. Ти міг скористатися моїм телефоном. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Дарма ми взяли купальники. Вода ще дуже холодна. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Не потрібно згадувати її ім'я. Це її спантиличить. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate into English. Make difference between modal and notional need.**

1. Мені не потрібен викладач. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Не треба так боятися. Усе буде гаразд. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Даремно ви відмовилися від цієї пропозиції. Вам слід було прийняти її. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Тут світло, нам не потрібна лампа. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Мені потрібна твоя підтримка на зборах. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Даремно ви так хвилюєтеся. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Вам не треба приходити завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Не треба виходити з дому так рано. Лекція розпочинається о дев'ятій. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мені не потрібно таксі. Я встигну на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Даремно ми брали таксі. Ми встигли б на поїзд і без таксі. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Все, що йому потрібно, це наша увага й розуміння. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Тобі ще потрібен мій конспект з історії? \_\_\_\_\_

**The Modal Verbs WILL and WOULD****Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian. Define the meaning of the modal verbs *will* and *would*.**

1. You would be late! \_\_\_\_\_
2. That would be in 1945, I think. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The engine won't start. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I will be there to help. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Will you have some tea? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I can and will learn it. \_\_\_\_\_
7. That will be he! \_\_\_\_\_
8. She wouldn't take that medicine. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The pen won't write. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Will you have dinner with us? \_\_\_\_\_
11. This will be the school, I believe. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Boys will be boys. \_\_\_\_\_
13. When I say I will do a thing, I do it. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Don't worry, I will protect you. \_\_\_\_\_
15. I will say it again and again. \_\_\_\_\_
16. He would smoke a pipe before going to bed. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Shut the door, would you? \_\_\_\_\_

18. Oil will float on water. \_\_\_\_\_
19. I said I wouldn't interfere. \_\_\_\_\_
20. A wise man changes his mind, a fool never will. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Drive the nail that will go (prov.). \_\_\_\_\_
22. He that comes first to the hill may sit where he will (prov.) \_\_\_\_\_
23. He that will eat the kernel must crack the nut (prov.) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2 Express volition using *will*.**

**Model:** – Are you going to climb tomorrow? – I **will** if the weather permits.

1. Are you going to the birthday party tonight? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Is Peter going on a fishing trip? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Is your friend going to a holiday camp too? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Are you going for a drive into the country? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Are you going to attend this exhibition some days? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Is your teacher going to England this month? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Paraphrase the following sentences using *won't/wouldn't* to express refusal to perform an action.**

1. The teacher asks the students to speak in low voices but they refused. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My fellow-student wanted his girl-friend to marry him, but she refused. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We kept asking Peter about the accident, but he said nothing. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mother told her son that to speak with his full mouth was a bad manner, but he didn't listen to her. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mother asked her daughter to lay the table, but she refused. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The doctor advised my sister to keep to a diet, but she is not going to. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to express resistance using *won't/wouldn't*.**

1. Mother tried very hard to cut the meat, but she couldn't. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Olga tried very hard, but she couldn't open the door. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The butter was very cold. I tried very hard, but I couldn't spread it on my bread. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I am afraid the car is out of order. I am trying hard, but I can't make the engine start. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am in a hurry. I am waiting very long, but I can't make the kettle boil. \_\_\_\_\_
6. My dress looked crumpled. I tried very hard, but I couldn't iron it. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using modal verbs *will* and *would*.**

1. Ви зробите це негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Вікно не відчинялось. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Це, мабуть, моя молодша сестричка. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Вона не хоче сказати, у чому справа. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Мабуть, це наш автобус. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Цей ніж не ріже. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Чи не могли б ви трохи почекати? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Чи не могли б ви пересісти? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Вона не бажає мене слухати; чи не могли б ви поговорити з нею? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ти зробиш те, що тобі скажуть. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Він не бажає відповідати. \_\_\_\_\_

12. Ти залишишся тут і будеш чекати, поки я не повернуся. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Це, напевно, її мама. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Машина не заводиться, чи не могли б ви допомогти мені? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Ви не зробіть так, запам'ятайте це! \_\_\_\_\_
16. Напишу вам, як тільки повернуся. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Він не схвалить цю пропозицію, побачите. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я намагалася зупинити його, але він не захотів слухати ніяких аргументів. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я повторюватиму знову й знову: ви не маєте рації. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Коли він повернувся, я запропонувала йому перекусити, але він не захотів. \_\_\_\_\_

### The Modal Verb DARE

#### Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. How many years is it since we danced together? I dare not think. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My son is not in town, but I dare say he will be before long. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He daren't write anything. \_\_\_\_\_
4. That's as much as I dare spend on it. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I dared him to jump. \_\_\_\_\_
6. How dare you address me in that tone! \_\_\_\_\_
7. I dare not say so. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Nobody dared live in that house since. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He felt he dared not reply. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She dared not move. \_\_\_\_\_

### REVISION EXERCISES ON MODAL VERBS

#### Ex. 1. Turn the following imperative sentences into all possible polite requests.

1. Give me your pen. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Pass me the butter. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Tell me what time it is. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mail these letters if you go to the post office. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Let me out of the lift. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Use *should*, *must* or *have to*. Give your arguments. In some sentences either is possible, but the meaning is different.

1. A person \_\_\_\_\_ eat in order to live.
2. A person \_\_\_\_\_ eat a balanced diet.
3. According to me academic advisor, I \_\_\_\_\_ take another English course.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ have a passport if you want to travel abroad.
5. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ have certain goals in life.
6. Rice \_\_\_\_\_ have water in order to grow.
7. If a door is locked, you \_\_\_\_\_ use a key to open it.
8. I don't have enough money to take the bus, so I \_\_\_\_\_ walk home.
9. If you don't know how to spell a word, you \_\_\_\_\_ look it up in the dictionary.
10. This pie is excellent. You \_\_\_\_\_ try a piece.

#### Ex. 3. Comment on the usage of modal verbs in the following sentences.

1. You look sick. You should go to a doctor as soon as possible. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I am unwell. I have to go to a doctor. \_\_\_\_\_



3. You ought to go to a doctor. You are constantly sneezing and coughing. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's a pity, but I have no time today. I am to go to a doctor at 4.30. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I have been unwell lately. I ought to have gone to a doctor long ago. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You have a dry cough. – Shall I see a doctor? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Discuss differences of meaning, if any, in the following groups of sentences.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A. May I use your phone?<br>B. Could I use your phone?<br>C. Shall I use your phone?                                      | 5. A. You can't smoke.<br>B. You mustn't smoke.<br>C. You may not smoke.                              |
| 2. A. You should take an English course.<br>B. You must take an English course.<br>C. You'll have to take an English course. | 6. A. You can talk to Mr. N.<br>B. You could talk to Mr. N.<br>C. You could have talked to Mr. N.     |
| 3. A. You should see a doctor.<br>B. You were to have seen a doctor.<br>C. Did you have to see a doctor?                     | 7. A. He shouldn't have gone there.<br>B. He needn't have gone there.<br>C. He might have gone there. |
| 4. A. I could go there.<br>B. I had to go there.<br>C. I was to go there.  | 8. A. Jack must have gone home.<br>B. Jack might have gone home.<br>C. Jack should have gone home.    |

**Ex. 5. Classify the following sentences into groups expressing: 1) obligation, 2) ability/inability, 3) possibility/impossibility, 4) prohibition, 5) advice, 6) prediction, 7) annoyance, reproach, 8) permission, 9) request, 10) intention, willingness, 11) offers, 12) orders, 13) refusal.**

1. They'll be here soon. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. You can't leave until I say so. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Can't you come any earlier? \_\_\_\_\_ 4. You might have told me! \_\_\_\_\_
5. You may go when you have finished third work. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Can you give me a hand?  
\_\_\_\_\_ 7. Shall I give you a hand? \_\_\_\_\_ 8. People shouldn't be so aggressive.  
\_\_\_\_\_ 9. Couldn't you try again? \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I'll finish this, I promise.  
\_\_\_\_\_ 11. We may not go to France this year. \_\_\_\_\_ 12. You mustn't worry,  
you'll be fine. \_\_\_\_\_ 13. Might I borrow some money? \_\_\_\_\_ 14. Could I  
possibly use your phone? \_\_\_\_\_ 15. All passengers will proceed to Gate 7 immediately.  
\_\_\_\_\_ 16. You must take your shoes off in here. \_\_\_\_\_ 17. Can you play the  
piano? \_\_\_\_\_ 18. They thought they could persuade me, but they couldn't.  
\_\_\_\_\_ 19. Shall I carry that for you? \_\_\_\_\_ 20. Would you open the door for  
me? \_\_\_\_\_ 21. The door simply won't open. \_\_\_\_\_ 22. I won't let him do that  
again. \_\_\_\_\_ 23. This expedition might be dangerous. \_\_\_\_\_ 24. You needn't  
have gone to so much trouble. \_\_\_\_\_ 25. You shouldn't drive so fast. \_\_\_\_\_
26. The horse wouldn't jump the fence. \_\_\_\_\_ 27. Could/would you be so kind as to give me  
some advice? \_\_\_\_\_ 28. Can you read music? \_\_\_\_\_ 29. People should treat  
each other better. \_\_\_\_\_ 30. I won't join. \_\_\_\_\_ 31. May I be of any assistance?  
\_\_\_\_\_ 32. Shall I help, or can you manage? \_\_\_\_\_ 33. Will you possibly come  
back a little later? \_\_\_\_\_ 34. You might at least say you are sorry. \_\_\_\_\_
35. I wish I could cook. \_\_\_\_\_ 36. You should have been there hours ago  
\_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 6. Use modal verbs. If more than one is possible use the one that seems most appropriate to you.**

1. It looks like rain. We (to shut) \_\_\_\_\_ the windows. 2. I returned a book to the library yesterday. It  
was two weeks overdue, so I (to pay) \_\_\_\_\_ a fine. 3. Neither of us knows the way to their house. We  
(to take) \_\_\_\_\_ a map with us or we'll probably get lost. 4. The baby is only a year old, but she (to say)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a few words. 5. You (to tell, not) \_\_\_\_\_ jack about the party. It's a surprise for him.
6. Excuse me. I didn't understand. (To repeat, you) \_\_\_\_\_ what you said. 7. When I was younger, I (to run)  
\_\_\_\_\_ ten miles without stopping, but now I (to run, not) \_\_\_\_\_ more than a mile or two.
8. There was a long line in front of the theatre. We (to wait) \_\_\_\_\_ almost an hour to buy our tickets.
9. Microwave ovens make cooking fast and easy. If you have a microwave, you (to cook) \_\_\_\_\_ thus  
frozen dinner in five minutes. 10. You're always too tense. It's not good for you. You (to learn) \_\_\_\_\_ to  
relax. 11. I'm sleepy. I (to keep, not) \_\_\_\_\_ my eyes open. 12. This is none of his business. He (to stick,

not) \_\_\_\_\_ his nose into other people's business. 13. (To speak, I) \_\_\_\_\_ to Peggy? 14. The phone is ringing again. Let's not answer. Just let it ring. – No, we (to answer) \_\_\_\_\_ it. It (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ important. 15. When I arrived home last night, I discovered that I had forgotten my key. My roommate was asleep, and I (to wake) \_\_\_\_\_ him by knocking loudly on the door. 16. Somebody called you while you were out, but she didn't leave her name. I think, it (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ Ann, but that's just a guess.

**Ex. 7. Express supposition far from certainty using the modal verb *may*.**

**Model:** Perhaps he knows French. – He **may know** French.

1. Perhaps Margaret is busy. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Perhaps she is working. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Perhaps she wants to be alone. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Perhaps she doesn't want to see me. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Perhaps she was ill yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Perhaps she wasn't feeling well yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Perhaps she went home at 4. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Perhaps she had to go home early. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Perhaps she was working hard yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Perhaps they are sleeping now. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 8. Express supposition close to certainty using the modal verb *must*.**

**Model:** Your suit is of very good quality. (It / be / very expensive) – It **must be** very expensive.

Jane walked past me without speaking. (She / see / me). – She **must have failed** to see me.

1. I haven't seen Ann for ages. (She / go away) \_\_\_\_\_
2. I can't find my umbrella. (You / leave / it / in the taxi) \_\_\_\_\_
3. She knew everything about our plans. (She / listen / to our conversation) \_\_\_\_\_
4. Francis did the opposite of what I asked her to do (she / understand / what I said) \_\_\_\_\_
5. When I came from the theatre, the light was on. (I / forget / to turn it off) \_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't understand how the accident happened. (The driver / see / the red light) \_\_\_\_\_
7. I was woken up in the middle of the night by the noise next door. (The neighbours / have / a party) \_\_\_\_\_
8. The phone rang but Peter didn't hear it. (He / be / asleep) \_\_\_\_\_
9. The Browns are always buying new cars. (They / make / a lot of money) \_\_\_\_\_
10. He has a slight accent. (He / be / a foreigner) \_\_\_\_\_
11. You are going on holiday next week, as far as I know. (You / look forward to it) \_\_\_\_\_
12. Dale goes to the video store and rents three films every night. (She / like / films very much) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 9. Translate into English using the modal verbs *can/could*, *may/might*. Comment on the meanings in which these model verbs are used.**

1. Чи не могли б ви зайти трохи пізніше? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ви не могли бачити його там учора: він у відрядженні. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Не може бути, щоб він запізнився. Він завжди такий пунктуальний. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Невже ви не можете перекласти це речення? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Невже він досі не повернув вам цю книгу? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Даруйте, але ви могли б зробити це для мене. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ви можете зустріти цей вираз у будь-якому тексті. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Я не можу переконати його. Чи не могли б ви допомогти мені? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Ви могли б переконати його, якби хотіли. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Можу я поговорити з власником цього будинку? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Чи можу я знайти вас там сьогодні ввечері? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Я думаю, ви можете перекласти цю статтю, у вас достатньо знань. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Можна взяти твій ключ від квартири? Я не можу знайти свій. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Щось могло трапитися з машиною. Їм давно пора повернутися. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я не вірю, що він міг сказати такі слова. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Чи не могли б ви мені допомогти? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Я не можу уявити її в ролі вчительки. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я впевнена, що ти міг би зробити це набагато краще. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Ця мелодія зараз дуже популярна, її можна почути скрізь. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Щось трапилося з телефоном. Я тебе не чую. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Можливо, він буде там завтра. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Не може бути, щоб вони мене не помітили. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Ми не можемо відкласти обговорення цього питання. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Ви могли б подумати про це раніше. Тепер я нічим не можу вам допомогти. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Невже ви не повірили йому? \_\_\_\_\_
26. Я не можу зрозуміти, чому він не прийшов. Невже він забув? \_\_\_\_\_
27. Якби ви могли приходити до мене щонеділі, я міг би допомогти вам вивчити іспанську мову. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Чи не могли б ви повернути цю книгу завтра? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Я не можу знайти свою сумочку. Я могла забути її в автобусі. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Не може бути, що він уже поїхав. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Подумайте, що можна зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Думаю, уже нічого не можна зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Я не можу піти, не попрощавшись. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Невже він не міг допомогти нам? \_\_\_\_\_
35. Я просто не можу йти далі: я дуже втомилась. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Ви можете відпочити трохи, у нас досить часу, не поспішайте. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Ви можете гордитися своїм сином. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Таким сином можна пишатися. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Можливо, вони були там, я міг їх не побачити. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Вона, можливо, вивчала англійську в школі. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Туристи можуть ставити свої намети лише тут. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Невже вона вчилася цілу ніч? \_\_\_\_\_
43. Не може бути, що ви побачили вовків у цьому лісі. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Невже він витратив уже всі гроші? \_\_\_\_\_
45. Ти не можеш зробити це замість нього. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 10. Translate into English. Use the modal verbs *can, may, needn't* to express permission and absence of necessity.**

1. Не варто одягати нове пальто, іде дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Можна мені одягнути нове пальто? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Чи можна прийти і подивитися вашу нову квартиру? Ви можете прийти в будь-який час. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Ти можеш запросити своїх друзів, якщо хочеш. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ти можеш добратися туди пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Я не можу співати, у мене болить горло. \_\_\_\_\_
7. У мене болить нога, я не можу йти пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Чи можна що-небудь зробити? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Немає потреби йти туди, уже пізно щось робити. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Можна було не йти туди. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Можна мені погратися з котом? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Можна вийти? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Дарма ми брали тент із собою. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Чи вміє Джон лагодити радіо? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я не можу зрозуміти вашу позицію. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Хто не може прийти? Чи можуть прийти всі? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Чи можна мені зачекати тут? \_\_\_\_\_
18. Можна користуватися словником? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Немає потреби брати словник: вам дадуть його. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Можна запросити вас на вальс? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Я не вмію танцювати. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ви можете не приходити. Ви можете прислати свого сина. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Йому можна не приходити на ці збори. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Він міг не приходити на ці збори. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Ти можеш не погоджуватись. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Немає потреби говорити йому про це. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Чи можна мені взяти цю книжку додому? \_\_\_\_\_
28. Тобі немає потреби йти до бібліотеки. Я можу дати тобі цю книжку. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ти можеш залишитись удома. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Можна мені прочитати це повідомлення? \_\_\_\_\_
31. Ви можете не залишатися, якщо не бажаєте. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Дарма ми залишилися. Вечір був зовсім не цікавий. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Можна було й не хвилюватися. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Дарма я купив цю книгу, вона є в бібліотеці. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Я нічого не можу тут побачити, тут дуже темно. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Немає потреби робити ксерокопію. Ви можете взяти цю книгу додому. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Можна ввімкнути світло? \_\_\_\_\_
38. Немає потреби вмикати світло, ще видно. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Я не можу допомогти вам, на жаль. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Я не можу обійтися без тебе. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Невже так спекотно? \_\_\_\_\_
42. Дарма ви взяли парасольку: дощу не буде. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Невже це жарг? \_\_\_\_\_
44. Невже це ваш син? \_\_\_\_\_
45. Коли я можу відвідати цього хворого? Ви можете прийти в будь-який час. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Я не можу зрозуміти, чому він так і не прийшов. Можливо, він передумав. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Побачимо, що можна зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Дарма я тобі це кажу. Ти не хочеш мене зрозуміти. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Немає потреби варити вечерю. Ми можемо повечеряти в кафе. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Вона, мабуть, уже спить. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 11. Translate into English. Express doubt and supposition using modal verbs *can, may, must*.**

1. Не може бути, щоб він пішов на рибалку. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Невже він пішов на рибалку? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Невже він уже поїхав? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Не може бути, щоб він уже поїхав. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Можливо, він уже поїхав. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Він, напевно, уже поїхав. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Невже він твій брат? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Не може він бути твоїм братом, ви зовсім не схожі. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Це, очевидно, його брат. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Віктора немає. Він, напевно, зараз на роботі. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Зараз Віктор може чекати на мене у кав'ярні. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Невже він усе ще чекає на мене? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Лист, очевидно, так і не дійшов до нього. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Можливо, він прийде, а може, й ні. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Невже йде дощ? \_\_\_\_\_
16. Невже буде дощ? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Уночі, напевно, був дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Невже вона вчителька? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вона, мабуть, учителька. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Вона, мабуть, сказала вам про це. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Невже вона сказала вам про це? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Не може бути, щоб вона сказала вам про це. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Вона, напевно, уже сказала вам про це. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Його, мабуть, також запросили. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Його, напевно, також запросили. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Його, напевно, не запросили. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Невже його також запросили? \_\_\_\_\_
28. Невже його не запросили? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Ольга така бліда. Очевидно, вона хвора. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Можливо, вона хвора. Вона ніколи не бере лікарняний. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Невже вона хвора? Я бачила її вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Не може бути, щоб він не зрозумів мене. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Можливо, він неправильно зрозумів вас. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Він, напевно, неправильно зрозумів вас. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Невже він дістав цю книгу? \_\_\_\_\_
36. Невже він не дістав цю книгу? \_\_\_\_\_
37. Він, мабуть, уже дістав цю книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Він, очевидно, ще не дістав цю книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Не може бути, щоб він не дістав цю книгу. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Не може бути, щоб вони нас не помітили. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Невже вони не помітили нас? \_\_\_\_\_
42. Вони, мабуть, не помітили нас. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Вони, напевно, не помітили нас. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Вони, напевно, помітили нас. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Вони могли помітити нас. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Не може бути, щоб вони не прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Невже вони ще не прийшли? \_\_\_\_\_
48. Вони, напевно, уже прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Вони, напевно, ще не прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Вони, мабуть, уже прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
51. Вони, мабуть, ще не прийшли. \_\_\_\_\_
52. Можливо, вони ще прийдуть. \_\_\_\_\_
53. Він, мабуть, не подзвонив вам. \_\_\_\_\_
54. Він, напевно, не подзвонив вам. \_\_\_\_\_
55. Невже він не подзвонив вам? \_\_\_\_\_

56. Не може бути, щоб він не подзвонив вам. \_\_\_\_\_  
57. Ви, мабуть, помиляєтесь. \_\_\_\_\_  
58. Ви, очевидно, помиляєтесь. \_\_\_\_\_  
59. Невже він помиляється? \_\_\_\_\_  
60. Не міг він помилитися. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 12. Translate into English. Express prohibition using modal verbs *can't, may not, mustn't*. Give reasons for your choice.**

1. Тут не можна переходити вулицю. \_\_\_\_\_  
2. Вам не можна купатися в морі. \_\_\_\_\_  
3. Йому не можна вставати з ліжка. \_\_\_\_\_  
4. Не смій брати цю книгу, вона не моя. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. Дітям не можна гратися з гострими предметами. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. Вчителю не можна бути запальним. \_\_\_\_\_  
7. Дітям не можна гратися з вогнем. \_\_\_\_\_  
8. Не смій говорити з дорослими таким тоном. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. Не смій купувати цю книжку. Тобі рано читати такі книжки. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
10. Не смій гуляти допізна. Ти мусиш бути вдома о десятій. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
11. Тут не можна курити. \_\_\_\_\_  
12. Тобі не можна сидіти на сонці тривалий час. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. Експонати не можна торкати руками. \_\_\_\_\_  
14. Тут не можна стояти. Пройдіть, будь ласка, далі. \_\_\_\_\_  
15. Не смій купатися. Сьогодні холодно. \_\_\_\_\_  
16. Тут забороняється паркувати машину. \_\_\_\_\_  
17. Не смій відчиняти вікно. Холодно. \_\_\_\_\_  
18. Не смій виходити без куртки. Температура нижче нуля. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
19. Не смій їх турбувати, нехай вони посплять трошки. \_\_\_\_\_  
20. Не потрібно розмовляти так голосно – дитина спить. \_\_\_\_\_  
21. Не можна запізнюватися на заняття. \_\_\_\_\_  
22. Не смій говорити йому про це. Він не повинен нічого знати. \_\_\_\_\_  
23. Не потрібно говорити українською мовою на уроках англійської мови. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
24. Не смій так жартувати з мамою. \_\_\_\_\_  
25. Не можна так хвилюватися. \_\_\_\_\_  
26. Не можна так поспішати. \_\_\_\_\_  
27. Відповідно до правил, гравець не повинен торкатися м'яча руками. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
28. Не смій говорити про такі речі при дітях. \_\_\_\_\_  
29. Лікар не повинен говорити пацієнту такі речі. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
30. Тобі не можна виходити. У тебе температура. \_\_\_\_\_  
31. Вам не можна так багато працювати. Ви можете захворіти. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
32. Ви не повинні припиняти роботу, доки не закінчите її. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
33. Не можна приймати ліки без дозволу лікаря. \_\_\_\_\_  
34. Вам не можна підіймати такі важкі речі. \_\_\_\_\_  
35. Нам не можна пересаджуватися під час уроку. \_\_\_\_\_  
36. Йому не можна вживати алкоголь. \_\_\_\_\_  
37. Ви не повинні мовчати. \_\_\_\_\_  
38. Словником користуватися не дозволяється. \_\_\_\_\_  
39. Не смій давати такі поради. \_\_\_\_\_  
40. Не смій телефонувати йому. Він повинен зателефонувати першим. \_\_\_\_\_

41. Не можна замовчувати такі питання. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Не смій сидати за кермо. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Постояльцям не дозволяється брати ключі з собою. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Вам не можна їсти так багато хліба. \_\_\_\_\_
45. Сюди не можна заходити. \_\_\_\_\_
46. Не можна пропускати такий шанс. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Дітям не можна дивитися такі фільми. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Чужі речі брати не можна. \_\_\_\_\_
49. Не смійте їсти протерміновані продукти, особливо молочні. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Вони не повинні сперечатися. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 13. Translate into English. Express obligation using modals *must, to have to, to be to*. Give reasons for your choice.**

1. Ви повинні показати нам, як це робиться. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Усі повинні працювати. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ми були змушені повернути назад. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Це треба зробити до суботи. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Вам доведеться зробити каву ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Мені потрібно зробити деякі покупки. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Вам доведеться подзвонити йому і попередити його про ваш приїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Нам не довелося довго чекати. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Як довго вам довелося чекати? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Де ви повинні були зустрітися? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Їм доведеться змінити дорожні знаки на цій ділянці дороги. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Вони повинні були прийти о п'ятій. Уже шоста година, а їх усе ще немає. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я повинен був відвезти їх на залізничний вокзал, але моя машина ніяк не заводилася і їм довелося йти пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я був змушений залишити все і поїхати в лікарню. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Він повинен був приїхати вечірнім поїздом: ми так домовилися. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Тобі обов'язково треба їхати? Чи не можеш ти відкласти цю поїздку? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Погода була дощова, нам довелося відкласти наш пікнік. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Коли він повинен приїхати? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я мушу закінчити цю роботу сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Я повинна була закінчити цю роботу ще в суботу. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Коли ти повинна повернути цю книжку? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ми повинні були йти туди разом, але мама захворіла, і мені довелося йти туди самому. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Ми домовилися, що я повинна була зайти за нею і привести її сюди. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Нам доведеться перезимувати тут. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Я повинна була прийти о другій, але запізнилася. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Мені доводиться зараз багато працювати. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Вам доведеться поговорити з ним особисто. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Вам доводиться вставати дуже рано, чи не так? \_\_\_\_\_
29. Документи повинні бути готові до середи. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Матеріали повинні бути готові до середи. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Нам доведеться підготувати все до середи. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Ми були змушені підготувати все до середи. \_\_\_\_\_

33. Запитай лікаря, що тобі треба зробити, щоб позбутися цього кашлю. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Чи мушу я бути присутнім на цих зборах? \_\_\_\_\_
35. Текст був досить складний, мені довелося користуватися перекладачем. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Її племінниця захворіла, і вона була змушена залишитися вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Я не можу піти з вами, я мушу дочекатися племінника. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Що тобі доводиться робити тут? \_\_\_\_\_
39. Ми промокли до рубця, і нам довелося переодягнутися. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Нам довелося перечекати дощ на станції. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Нам довелося пересісти на тролейбус, оскільки автобус не йшов у тому напрямку. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Я відчуваю, що я мушу зробити щось, але що? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 14. Translate into English. Express obligation using modals *must, to be to, to have to, shall, should, ought to.***

1. Мені доручили зробити доповідь, тому довелося переглянути велику кількість джерел. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Я не повинен був говорити з нею на цю тему. \_\_\_\_\_
3. О котрій годині ви повинні були зустрітися? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Мені доведеться просидіти вихідні вдома. Спека неймовірна, а я її переносити погано. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Вам слід було прийти раніше. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Як постелився, так і виспився. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Це повинно було статися. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ти мусиш кинути палити. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Діти повинні слухатися своїх батьків. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Мені продовжувати? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Вам слід було сказати йому правду. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Звідки мені знати, скільки коштує ця квартира? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Ви мусите вибачитися. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Вам слід було вибачитися. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Мені довелося вибачитися. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Ви мусите зробити це негайно. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Нам доведеться піти до нотаріуса ще раз. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я думаю, вам слід звернутися до адвоката. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Усі повинні знати це. Такі новини не повинні бути приховані. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Усім приходити? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Нам доводиться багато читати, адже ми навчаємося на факультеті іноземної філології. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Ми повинні були закінчити оформлення актового залу ще вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Коли йому перескладати цей екзамен? \_\_\_\_\_
24. Вам слід більше працювати у фонолабораторії. \_\_\_\_\_
25. Необхідно добре подумати, перш ніж відповідати. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Це все, що ви повинні були мені сказати? \_\_\_\_\_
27. Я хворів, пропустив багато уроків, і зараз мені доводиться багато працювати щоб наздогнати групу. \_\_\_\_\_
28. Якби він зробив усе вчасно, йому не потрібно було б зустрічатися з цими неприємними людьми ще раз зараз. \_\_\_\_\_



29. Нам слід було схвалити їхню пропозицію. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Я думаю, вам слід замовити місце на цій базі відпочинку заздалегідь. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Я повинен знати, де ти буваш. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Шкода, що ви мусите йти. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Коли вони повернуться? – Звідки мені знати? \_\_\_\_\_
34. Мені не довелося чекати його, він повернувся вчасно. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Ви мусите вивчити цей вірш напам'ять. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Чи мушу я зустріти його? Я думаю, немає потреби. Він добре знає дорогу сюди. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Я повинна була відправити цю посилку «Новою поштою» ще вчора. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Вам не слід було пускати дітей в гори самих. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Хто повинен опрацьовувати новини сьогодні, щоб донести їх до громадськості? \_\_\_\_\_
40. Ви повинні зробити це для нього. Ми мусимо допомагати один одному. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 15. Translate into English using modals.**

1. Невже це ваше есе? Воно відповідає вимогам і написане на дуже високому рівні! \_\_\_\_\_
2. Не міг він пропустити цей гол. Він високопрофесійний воротар. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Невже він порушив правила руху? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Він, мабуть, не купив мені ці парфуми. Образливо! \_\_\_\_\_
5. Хіба міг хто-небудь подумати, що ця команда посяде перше місце? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Невже вони програли цей матч? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Не може бути, щоб вони не посіли перше місце. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ви могли б виграти. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Дарма ви запитали його про це. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Дарма ти сердишся на Ніну. Вона зовсім не винна. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Ви можете не говорити йому нічого. Він уже все знає. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Де поставити цю вазу? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я бачу, що мені немає потреби закінчувати свою думку. Ви розумієте, що я маю на увазі. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я ніяк не можу зрозуміти, куди він хилить. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Не міг він забути про це. Він дуже відповідальна людина. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Ви могли б умовити його, якби спробували. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Він, напевно, займається програмуванням. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Не треба звертати увагу на нього. Тоді він не поводитьься так зухвало. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Ви, мабуть, усі читали цей роман. Отже, ми можемо обговорити його сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Невже ви ще не бачили цей фільм? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Не могли б ви дати мені цей журнал до понеділка? \_\_\_\_\_

22. Дарма ви доводите, що ви маєте рацію. Його ніколи не можна переконати. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Я ніяк не міг заснути. \_\_\_\_\_
24. З якої вправи починати? \_\_\_\_\_
25. Мені довелося поїхати на заправку вчора, бо я повинна була заправити машину. Але дарма я туди поїхала: там було тільки дизельне паливо. \_\_\_\_\_
26. Мені доведеться залишитися після уроків. Ми повинні обговорити наші наступні дії, які стосуються екскурсії в гори. \_\_\_\_\_
27. Невже ви дійсно зробите це для мене? \_\_\_\_\_
28. Я буду повторювати це знову й знову: дарма ти одружився так рано. \_\_\_\_\_
29. Дарма ти хвилюєшся. Він міг проспати. \_\_\_\_\_
30. Не міг він не знати про наш приїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
31. Невже він не поновився в університеті? Він такий розумний. \_\_\_\_\_
32. Я не застав його вдома, і мені довелося поговорити з його батьком. \_\_\_\_\_
33. Вікно не відчинялося. Я була змушена попросити сусіда допомогти мені. \_\_\_\_\_
34. Ми могли б бути друзями ще в юності. \_\_\_\_\_
35. Немає потреби включати цей пункт в порядок денний. \_\_\_\_\_
36. Земля сира. Тут, напевно, недавно йшов дощ. \_\_\_\_\_
37. Перечитай свій твір ще один раз. Можливо, ти пропустила помилку. \_\_\_\_\_
38. Не могла вона зробити таку помилку. Вона досить добре знає узгодження часів. \_\_\_\_\_
39. Вони, напевно, так і не зустрілися. \_\_\_\_\_
40. Невже вони так і не зустрілися? Вони не бачилися з дитинства. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Ти міг би сказати нам, що тут відбувається. \_\_\_\_\_
42. Тато сказав, що машина не хотіла заводитися і йому довелося йти пішки. \_\_\_\_\_
43. Тобі слід було подзвонити ще раз. – Я знаю, але я не міг зважитися. \_\_\_\_\_
44. Невже вона поїхала з ними в Норвегію? \_\_\_\_\_
45. Невже вони так і не одружилися? \_\_\_\_\_
46. Можливо, вона уже спить. \_\_\_\_\_
47. Вона ніколи не розповідала про своє дитинство. Очевидно, була якась причина. \_\_\_\_\_
48. Невже ти сам це написав? \_\_\_\_\_
49. Де мої окуляри? Я не можу їх знайти. Я, мабуть, забула їх удома. \_\_\_\_\_
50. Він, очевидно, не зумів вас переконати. \_\_\_\_\_
51. Тут дозволяється плавати? \_\_\_\_\_
52. І де я міг його бачити? \_\_\_\_\_
53. Не може бути, щоб ви загубили свій ключ. Ви могли покласти його в сумочку. \_\_\_\_\_
54. Я просто не могла не думати про цю поїздку. \_\_\_\_\_
55. Усі мусять бути попереджені, чи не так? \_\_\_\_\_
56. Вони повинні були одружитися ще в серпні, але Ніна захворіла, і весілля довелося відкласти. \_\_\_\_\_

57. Невже діти все ще граються надворі? Дітям не можна бути у дворі так пізно без дорослих. \_\_\_\_\_
58. Він, мабуть, не захотів з нами спілкуватися. \_\_\_\_\_
59. Мені перекладати цей текст? – Думаю, немає потреби. Вам треба вибрати речення, в яких є модальні дієслова. – Робити це усно чи в письмовій формі? – Письмово. \_\_\_\_\_
60. Мені знову доводиться повторювати тобі, що ти неухажна. Тобі слід бути уважнішою. – Я знаю, але я не можу зосередитися. Тобі, напевно, потрібно відпочити. \_\_\_\_\_
61. Не може бути, щоб він нічого не знав про цю пригоду. Про неї можна було прочитати в інтернеті. \_\_\_\_\_
62. Де можна знайти декана? – Вона, мабуть, зараз у деканаті. \_\_\_\_\_
63. Вона мріяла стати лікарем, але їй не судилося. \_\_\_\_\_
64. Що буде з моєю дитиною? Вона не може добре ходити. – Вам слід негайно проконсультуватися з лікарем. \_\_\_\_\_
65. Я не можу не захоплюватися її наполегливістю. \_\_\_\_\_
66. Ваш син, мабуть, спортсмен. – О, Боже! Як ви могли подумати таке? Чому це він має бути спортсменом? \_\_\_\_\_
67. Тут, напевно, зими сніжні і холодні. \_\_\_\_\_
68. Її часто можна бачити в нашому районі. Вона, напевно, мешкає десь тут. \_\_\_\_\_
69. Ти міг би звернути шию. Не можна бути таким необережним. \_\_\_\_\_
70. Невже не можна взяти таксі? – Я не можу дозволити собі таку розкіш. – Ти могла б, якби захогіла. \_\_\_\_\_
71. Ви, мабуть, голодні. Я можу погодувати вас. – Я справді голодна, але я не можу їсти зараз, оскільки мені видалили зуб годину тому. \_\_\_\_\_
72. І що ж з ними буде? – Нічого особливого. Їм просто доведеться відповідати за свої вчинки. \_\_\_\_\_
73. Не може бути, щоб їй довелося відповідати за все. Вона тут ні при чому. \_\_\_\_\_
74. Даремно ви берете дітей із собою. Ви не зможете добре відпочити. Вам доведеться приділяти їм багато уваги. – Я не можу їхати без дітей. Я вважаю, що батьки повинні бути з дітьми якомога більше. \_\_\_\_\_
75. Не могла вона не прореагувати на ваше запитання. Можливо, вона недочула. Вам слід було повторити ваше запитання. – Не могла вона недочути. \_\_\_\_\_
76. Вам не можна їсти перчені страви. – Але я не можу їсти страви, які не перчені. – Не смій говорити таке! Людина мусить їсти те, що вона може їсти. \_\_\_\_\_
77. Де мої рукавички? – Звідки мені знати, де ти можеш покласти свої рукавички? \_\_\_\_\_
78. Я здивований тим, що ти любиш домашніх тварин. – Чому це ти маєш бути здивованим? Чого це я не можу любити домашніх тварин? \_\_\_\_\_
79. Люба, ти поводиш себе негарно (your behaviour leaves much to be desired). Не можна ображати чийсь

- почуття. \_\_\_\_\_
80. Я думаю, тобі слід подзвонити йому. – Чого це? – Адже він твій родич. \_\_\_\_\_
81. Боюся, нам доведеться відкласти огляд міста, адже лле як із відра. \_\_\_\_\_
82. Мені постійно доводиться нагадувати тобі про твої домашні обов'язки. Мені це набридло. \_\_\_\_\_
83. І що ж буде з моїм котом? – А що трапилося? – Він упав у ставок. – Не треба переживати. Коти вміють плавати. \_\_\_\_\_
84. Кому починати? – Неллі повинна була бути першою, але вона відсутня, отже, доведеться мені. \_\_\_\_\_
85. Які цікаві місця можна побачити у вашому місті? – Їх багато, але вам слід почати із замку Любарта. \_\_\_\_\_
86. Тут має добре рости картопля. \_\_\_\_\_
87. Нам не довелося нікуди йти. Нам усе принесли додому. \_\_\_\_\_
88. Ми повинні були оглянути ще одну пам'ятку архітектури, але через дощ не змогли. \_\_\_\_\_
89. Невже тобі довелося видалити хворий зуб? – Так. – Тобі слід було зберегти його. – Лікар сказав, що нічого не можна зробити. \_\_\_\_\_
90. Вони повинні були одружитися, оскільки вони були вже заручені. Але через той випадок цьому не судилося збутися. \_\_\_\_\_
91. У гори не можна ходити без провідників. Це може бути небезпечно. \_\_\_\_\_
92. Вам також слід було прийти. – Вибачте, але я не міг. Через певні обставини мені довелося залишитись удома. – Всяке трапляється, проте вам слід було зателефонувати й попередити нас. \_\_\_\_\_
93. Я, мабуть, неправильно вас зрозумів. – Ви зрозуміли мене правильно: вам доведеться прийти ще раз. – Ще раз? Але чому я мушу приходити ще раз? Я не зможу, на жаль. – Тоді я нічим не зможу вам допомогти. \_\_\_\_\_
94. Наступ повинен був початися через два дні. \_\_\_\_\_
95. Ти можеш засилити мені нитку в голку? \_\_\_\_\_
96. Вам слід бути обережними, діти відв'язали собаку, і він може вкусити вас. \_\_\_\_\_
97. Нам довелося переїхати. – А що змусило вас зробити це? – Клімат \_\_\_\_\_
98. Не треба так нервувати, усе має бути добре. \_\_\_\_\_
99. Невже він не впізнав вашу доньку? – Нічого дивного, він не бачив її впродовж 10 років. \_\_\_\_\_

## 10. NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB

### 10.1. THE INFINITIVE

#### The Verbal and Noun Characteristics of the Infinitive

##### Ex. 1. Read the following sentences and comment on the form of the Infinitive.

1. "When you've got time to listen," he said crossly, "you might be interested in discussing the poorhouse question with me." \_\_\_\_\_

2. There was also the question of tolerance of injure to be considered. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Professor Bernsdorff was not a man to be mistaken in his beliefs. \_\_\_\_\_

4. There is only one more incident to be related here, and it happens seven years farther on. \_\_\_\_\_

5. But these people are illogical, they want to be reassured by your telling them what they want to believe. \_\_\_\_\_

6. At that hour people were less likely to be coming in or going out. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Young Tom Driscoll appeared and joined the party. He pretended to be seeing the distinguished strangers for the first time when they rose to shake hands. \_\_\_\_\_

8. Everything seems to be moving very nicely nowadays. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Draw water, serve food, lay pillows on the front porch, bind wounds, hold the dirty heads of the dying. No, this could not be happening to her. \_\_\_\_\_

10. Neighbours met on the streets and stared at one another uncertain, uneasy as to what might be impending. \_\_\_\_\_

11 "I am sorry to have upset you, Miss Mary Brodil," he had said gravely. \_\_\_\_\_

12. Now he discussed what he ought to have said instead of what he said. \_\_\_\_\_

13. "Dear me," said Virginia, "I seem to have been frightfully indiscreet." \_\_\_\_\_

14. I was not going to have come all this way for nothing. \_\_\_\_\_

15. "The sound was very slight," said Virginia. "It might have been just my imagination." \_\_\_\_\_

##### Ex. 2. Transform the sentences. Use the Continuous Infinitive.

*Model:* – Your father is reading a newspaper. – No, he only pretends **to be reading**. He is sleeping.

1. Your room-mate is doing her Grammar exercises. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Helen has put on her best clothes. She is going to her office. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Ann is sleeping. Her mother is doing the room. \_\_\_\_\_

4. The bus is overcrowded. There are a lot of elderly people standing everywhere. A young man sits sleeping. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Peter is discussing a serious problem over the telephone. \_\_\_\_\_

##### Ex. 3. Express the action that was planned but not carried out. Give the reason. Use the verbs *to hope, to intend, to mean, to be to* and the Perfect Infinitive.

*Model:* – You stayed at home but didn't study English. You should have done it.

– I intended **to have studied**. My uncle's arrival prevented me from doing it.

1. You bought some medicine but didn't take it. You should have done it. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You knew the answer but didn't write it. You should have done it. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You saw my friends but you didn't speak to them. You should have done it. \_\_\_\_\_
4. You put down John's address but didn't visit him. You should have done it. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You came back home early but didn't ring us up. You should have done it. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Transform the sentences. Use the Infinitive Active Voice with a passive meaning.**

*Model:* – There is no film on TV today that we could watch. – There is no film on TV today **to watch**.

1. There is no dictionary on the shelf that we could use. \_\_\_\_\_
2. There is no money that we could waste right and left. \_\_\_\_\_
3. There is nothing in the forest that we could fear. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There is nobody else that we could invite for dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
5. There is nothing that you could worry about. \_\_\_\_\_
6. There are no more facts that we could add to the evidence. \_\_\_\_\_
7. There is no time that we could lose. \_\_\_\_\_
8. There is nobody at home that you could tell the news. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Explain the reason for your activity. Use the Infinitive Active Voice with a passive meaning.**

*Model:* – Why did you buy this dress? It looks plain.

– But it was the only dress in the shop **to buy**. Besides, it fits me perfectly.

1. Why did you take this book for home reading? It's too dull. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Why do you always refer to the dictionary? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Why do you take interest in this image? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Why do you go only to the mountains when you are on holiday? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Why do you explain the rule in such a complicated way? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Why did you speak to the boy so sharply? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Why are you asking me this question? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Why do you visit Ann so often? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Choose and underline the proper form of the Infinitive in brackets.**

1. I've tried (to plan, to have planned) you a house here with some beauty of its own.
2. "Well," he said, "there's nothing more (to see, to be seen) here."
3. Did he ever ask you (to engage, to be engaged) or talk about marrying?
4. What happened is a very long time ago, I'm going (to ask, to have asked) her to let bygones.

5. Henet was one of those people whose fate is (to devote, to be devoted) to others and to have no one devoted to them.
6. It had been the Christmas Eve custom of the Carters' (to hang, to have hanged) up their children's stockings and (to fill, to have filled) them with inexpensive toys.
7. He promised (to come, to have come) and (to see, to have seen) them before he left.
8. She watched him with lips ready (to speak, to have spoken) at any minute.
9. I had no cases of special interest (to attend, to have attended).
10. He had to say: "I am sorry (to cause, to have caused) you such distress."

**Ex. 7. Use the Infinitive in brackets in the appropriate form.**

1. It was foolish not (to call) \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor, but I did not, well, out of respect for her feeling.
2. She was prepared (to think) \_\_\_\_\_ wrong-headed, but not naive.
3. Come, I have finished (to dig) \_\_\_\_\_ and am going (to plant) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'm deeply sorry (to involve) \_\_\_\_\_ you in this.
5. At home Mrs Goff would have kept my supper. You had to be on the dot if you wanted (to feed) \_\_\_\_\_, so I usually went with one or the other (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ cheese rolls and beer.
6. Don't expect comfort. You've just got (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ thankful if we get a bed (to sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ on and a roof over our heads.
7. "Perhaps," suggested Rollock, "the man didn't want (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ turning into the house from the road."
8. At last Sid allowed himself (to persuade) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. "Do you want (to come) \_\_\_\_\_ in and (to wash) \_\_\_\_\_ up?" he asked suddenly. "No, thanks," said John. "I ought to go home – my wife'll be worried."
10. I began (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_ very slowly.

**The Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence  
The Infinitive as a Subject, a Predicative  
and a Part of a Compound Verbal Predicate**

**Ex. 1. Combine the sentences using the Infinitive in the function of a subject. Give your reasoning.**

*Model:* – Go to Lviv by train. The train starts late at night and arrives in Lviv early in the morning. It's convenient.

- 1. **To go** to Lviv by train is convenient. The train starts late at night and arrives early in the morning.  
– 2. It's convenient **to go** to Lviv by train. The train starts late at night and arrives in Lviv early in the morning.

1. Ring her up and tell her that she is having a Grammar lesson tomorrow. It's necessary. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Don't try to describe the whole system of higher education in England. It's next to impossible. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Fix the appointment with the supervisor on school practice. It's recommended. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'll spend eight weeks on the teaching practice at school. It will do me a lot of good. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Learn the use of different visual aids and take an active part in the discussion. It's obligatory. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Clear up the difference between a residential college and non-residential one. It's useful. \_\_\_\_\_
7. You should read about the traditions of the universities of Oxford and Cambridge. It's interesting. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Tell the difference between a university and a college. I don't quite see it. It's advisable. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You should know that University teaching combines lectures, practical classes and small group teaching in either seminars or tutorials. It is necessary. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Learn that Teachers' Training Colleges have a two-year course, sometimes three, if the student is \_\_\_\_\_

specializing in some particular subject. It's interesting. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Transform the following sentences using the Infinitive as a predicative.**

**Model:** – To become a writer was Judy's greatest dream. – Judy's greatest dream was **to become** a writer.

1. To buy a water resistant sport watch to wear on her wrist was her intention. \_\_\_\_\_
2. To go to Julia's room and sit on the couch in her new crop top and denim skirt was Judy's low motive as she called it. \_\_\_\_\_
3. To pay back the money spent on her education by her guardian, was the girl's ambition. \_\_\_\_\_
4. To receive a letter from her guardian was Judy's cherished dream. \_\_\_\_\_
5. To show her first poem to her guardian was Judy's greatest wish. \_\_\_\_\_
6. To hear from the English instructor that it was a charming piece of work was her greatest ambition. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Judy was not allowed to accept Mrs McBride's invitation but to accept it was her greatest wish. \_\_\_\_\_
8. To spend the summer at their camp was her dream as Jimmie was going to have a college friend visiting him part of the summer. \_\_\_\_\_
9. To learn how to drive horseback and paddle a canoe, and how to shoot was Judy's desire. \_\_\_\_\_
10. To go to Lock Willow and stay there the whole summer was her greatest wish. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex 3. Change the sentences using the Infinitive as part of a predicative.**

**Model 1:** – It's hard to please Mr Peters.

– Mr Peters is hard **to please**.

1. It's impossible to learn by heart these history dates. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's difficult to deal with Mr Peters. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It's almost impossible to read his handwriting! \_\_\_\_\_
4. And to listen to his voice all day is awfully monotonous! \_\_\_\_\_
5. It's hard to follow his explanations. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It's difficult to answer this question correctly. \_\_\_\_\_
7. It's boring to read these recommended books. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's not very interesting to attend his lessons. \_\_\_\_\_
9. To get on with him out of school isn't easy either. \_\_\_\_\_
10. It's impossible to have fun with him. \_\_\_\_\_



**Model 2:** – It was difficult for young Burton to get rid of his bad habits.

– His bad habits were difficult to get rid of.

1. It wasn't pleasant to talk to young Burton. He was all to pieces. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It was hopeless to rely upon him. He never fulfilled his promises. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It was always pleasant to look at the young man. He was always well-dressed and smart-looking. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It was dangerous to swim round the beacon on account of the currents. The currents round the beacon were more than he could manage. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It was hardly possible to make friends with him. He was always sulky and unsociable. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Develop the following situations. Express your preference using *I'd rather/sooner* and the Infinitive as part of a compound verbal modal predicate.**

1. The lessons are over. After dinner my friends are going to have a walk. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I feel unwell. My friend advises me to take some medicines for my headache and running nose. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Summer has come. My family are discussing where to spend the holiday. They want to have a good rest at the seaside. I would sooner \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My mother's birthday is coming. My younger sister wants to present her with a fluffy scarf. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I don't know how to do the exercise. I can't find any rules to help me. I'd sooner \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 5. Give advice using the structure *You'd better* and the Infinitive as part of a compound verbal modal predicate.**

**Model:** – I have a cold. What would you advise me to do?

– You'd better **stay** in bed for a day or two. It won't do you any harm.

1. I have a splitting headache. What must I do? \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's raining hard. What would you advise me to do? \_\_\_\_\_
3. I lost my temper with her. What do you want me to do? \_\_\_\_\_
4. My God! I've spilt coffee on your new jeans. What is it necessary to do? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm lagging behind my group. What would you advise me to do? \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using the Infinitive as a subject, a predicative or a part of a compound verbal predicate.**

1. Сказати їй правду за даних обставин означає зменшити її шанси на видужання. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Сказати "так" було неможливо, сказати "ні" було б неввічливо. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Пояснити йому все було дуже важко. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Помилятися легко, значно важче зрозуміти свою помилку. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Так дивно, коли з тобою поведуться, як з малою дитиною. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Все, що я хочу, – щоб мене залишили в спокої. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Єдиний вихід з цього становища – це забезпечити безперервну роботу лабораторії. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Що мені довелося зробити – це продати свою улюблену картину. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Єдиний шанс встигнути на поїзд – це взяти таксі. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Його основний принцип – ніколи не показувати свою зверхність. \_\_\_\_\_
11. З товариськими людьми легко мати справу. \_\_\_\_\_
12. На неї завжди приємно дивитись. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Цю сцену було неприємно спостерігати. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ці формули неможливо запам'ятати. \_\_\_\_\_
15. На це питання було важко відповісти. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Тобі не слід було бути відвертою з ним. Він ніколи не вмів зберігати чужі таємниці. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Ще так рано! Вам доведеться зачекати. Вона з'явиться з хвилини на хвилину. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Ти б краще знайшов хоча б тимчасову роботу. Скільки можна залежати від батьків. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вони продовжували перевіряти результати підрахунків, оскільки попередні дані видались їм підозрілими. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Ми перестали сперечатися через дрібниці і прийшли до взаємної згоди. \_\_\_\_\_

### The Infinitive as an Object and an Attribute

#### Ex. 1. Paraphrase the sentences using the Infinitive as an object.

*Model:* – Judy was happy that she had been sent to college. – Judy was happy **to have been sent** to college.

1. She was pleased that she had made friends with Sally. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The girl was glad that she had visited the theatre in New York. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She was happy that she had been staying at the farm for two months. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The girl was sorry that she had left the farm but very glad that she had come to the campus again. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Judy was extremely pleased that she had been presented with a smart watch. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She was really happy that she had passed all her exams with excellent marks. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The girl was quite sorry that she had had no opportunity to see her guardian. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She was happy that they had made up their quarrel. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Answer the following questions using the Infinitive as an object.**

**Model:** – Do you find it normal to tell a lie? – No, not in the least. I find it not normal **to tell a lie**.

1. Do you consider it quite normal to study at night? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Do you find it very easy to give up going to the gym? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Do you think it easy for second-year students to read “The Times”? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you believe it quite useful to keep to a diet of salads and fruit? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you consider it interesting to read English books in the original? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you find it possible to swim a long distance when the currents are strong? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Do you think it useful to do morning exercises in the open air? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Do you feel it pleasant to listen to good music? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Combine the two sentences into one expressing somebody’s wish or intention which was not carried out. Use the Perfect Infinitive as an object. Make changes if it is necessary.**

**Model:** – The girl wanted to go to the camp. Her parents didn’t allow her to.

– The girl meant **to have gone** to the camp, but she didn’t, as her parents didn’t allow her to.

1. The sportsmen were sure that they would win the game. They had been training hard for many months, but they didn’t win. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The weightlifter was going to set a new record. But he was the first to lose it. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The forward was passing the ball towards the goal to score a goal. The ball hit the post and bounced back into the field. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Jan heard that the Selection Committee would be at the match. He did his best to play well but he couldn’t as he was out of form. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. In my first year I went in for athletics. But it interfered with my studies so I had to give it up. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Combine the following sentences according to the model given. Make the necessary changes. Use the infinitive as an attribute.**

**Model:** – You are a great football fan, you should go and see the match. This is a good chance.

– You are a great football fan, you should go and see the match as there is a good chance **not to be missed**.

1. There was a great number of opponents and he wanted to compete with all of them. His hope was very strong, he wanted to win. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. It was a long run distance competition. We couldn’t take part in it, as we had nobody who could run this distance. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Our country is famous for its championship in athletics. There are hundreds of people who can take part in it. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The gymnast who had won the gold medal was very happy. She was surrounded by a lot of people who wanted to congratulate her on the occasion. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Nick’s dream was to get a ticket for the football match. He managed to buy a ticket for the match and it was the last one. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. To achieve good results is a real sportsman's dream. Peter has the same desire. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Every tennis player knows a lot about Wimbledon. Their desire is strong, they want to take part in the world-famous competitions. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's very pleasant to watch the figure-skaters dancing gracefully on the ice. I'll have an opportunity and I'm sure to watch them on television. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Your favourite basketball team is to play in our city. If you come early in the morning, you will probably succeed in buying a ticket. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Replace the attributive clauses by the Infinitive.**

*Model:* – Bob bought an illustrated paper which he could look through.

– Bob bought an illustrated paper **to look through**.

1. He is a man you can rely on. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I have some work I should cope with. \_\_\_\_\_
3. There are a lot of songs you should listen to. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Is there any news we should pay attention to? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Have you got anybody whom you must take care of? \_\_\_\_\_
6. The only thing which should be done is to find my laptop. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He had some hair-raising stories that he could tell. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Translate into English using the Infinitive as an object and an attribute.**

1. Вона не хотіла, щоб її бачили в такому товаристві. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Він наполягає, щоб йому сказали всю правду. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Вона не любить, коли їй заважають під час роботи. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Ми були раді, що запросили його провести з нами вечір. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ми були дуже раді, що щиро поговорили з вами і отримали цінну пораду. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ви дуже засмучені, що втратили цю можливість? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Вона завжди дуже задоволена, коли її вважають молодшою, ніж вона є насправді. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Він боявся, що його побачать в такому товаристві. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Він саме та людина, на яку можна покластися. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Йому більше не було що сказати. \_\_\_\_\_
11. У дитини немає нікого, хто міг би потурбуватися про неї. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Він не така людина, яка легко змінить свою думку. \_\_\_\_\_

13. Дайте мені час подумати про оптимальні шляхи вирішення цієї проблеми. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
14. Я не пам'ятаю, хто перший це сказав. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
15. Його завжди запитують останнім, і він, зазвичай, говорить те, на що потрібно звернути увагу. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
16. Є ще одна справа, яку треба зробити. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

### The Infinitive as an Adverbial Modifier

**Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of consequence.**

**Model 1:** – The storm was very strong, it was impossible to continue the yachting competition.

– The storm was **too** strong **to continue** the yachting competition.

**Model 2:** – The opponent was very strong, he won the game.

– The opponent was strong **enough to win** the game.

1. The coach was very experienced and from the very beginning he understood that the game would be lost. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. Peter is fond of football, he never misses the opportunity of watching football matches. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. My sister is very busy with her musical lessons, she has no time to go in for sports. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. The European championship in figure-skating was very exciting and everybody followed it with great interest. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Greyhound racing – a modern sport in England – is a very interesting kind of sport and it attracts attention of many young people in different countries. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. All kinds of sport are good, they make us strong and healthy. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. Her illness was a serious one, it made her break off with sport completely. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. He was very fortunate, he scored three goals during the first time only. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. His nervousness before the cup finals was very strong, it prevented him from setting a new record. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.**

**Model:** – At last Jack reached the railway station and learnt that the train had left.

– At last Jack reached the railway station **to learn** that the train had left.

1. Mother came home and saw that the guests had not arrived. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. He looked around and found that a man was doing the job. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Arthur left his brother's house and never returned there. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. She looked into the sky and saw that the full moon was floating like a white balloon. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Cathy answered the phone and heard her husband's voice. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

6. My sister came home and learnt that her group-mate had called on her. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The headmaster saw Alice and realized she hadn't changed much. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Doris went to the mountains and caught a cold there. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Thousands of fans came to see the competition in track and field events and they were unexpectedly struck by the new record. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Mary started going in for sports without any enthusiasm and quite of a sudden she became a champion. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Expand the phrases with the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of condition. (Remember that the verb of the predicate should be used in the Conditional Mood).**

*Model:* – To hear him, \_\_\_\_\_. – To hear him, one would think he was as poor as a church mouse.

1. To see that security guard ran after the boy, \_\_\_\_\_
2. To read only some pages in this book, \_\_\_\_\_
3. To see the student work hard during the term, \_\_\_\_\_
4. To see her put on her warm coat in spring, \_\_\_\_\_
5. To hear her singing Ukrainian songs, \_\_\_\_\_
6. To light the way, \_\_\_\_\_
7. To look at her steadily, \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Change the complex sentences into simple ones using the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of cause.**

*Model:* – He will be foolish if he doesn't accept their offer. – He will be foolish **not to accept** her offer.

1. He will be stupid if he doesn't jump at a chance. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Timmy is very strong if he can lift such a heavy box. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mr. White is a good orator if he can speak in public so well without any preparation. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sally is a shallow person if she finds this book boring. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Teddy is very clever if he can do such complicated sums. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Pete is rather silly if he doesn't want to take part in the activities of our English speaking club. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ann is very tall if she can reach the upper shelf. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier.**

1. Він увімкнув геологацію, щоб показати нам маршрут експедиції. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Для того, щоб добитись успіху у спорті, необхідно тренуватись день і ніч. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Його наміри виглядають надто дивно, щоб не викликати здивування. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Вона досить гарна, щоб суперничати з тобою. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Вона зупинилась на розі і зрозуміла, що потрібно йти далі. \_\_\_\_\_
6. У віці сорока п'яти років він подав у відставку і ніколи не повертався до думки про роботу. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Вона почервоніла і прошепотіла щось, ніби хотіла сказати, що їй соромно. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Це було на неї не схоже, але вона розплакалась, ніби показуючи, що його слова образили її. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Якщо подивитись на його картини, можна було подумати, що Моне, Мане та інші імпресіоністи ніколи не існували. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Вона була б нещасна, якби вийшла заміж через гроші. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Більше нічого не залишалось, окрім як молитись за нього. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Вони тільки й роблять, що набридають йому розмовами про свої сімейні справи. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Вона засмутилась, коли почула, що її сестра хвора. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Він здивувався, коли дізнався, скільки витратив на нові комп'ютерні програми \_\_\_\_\_

### Predicative Constructions with the Infinitive The Objective with the Infinitive Construction

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences. Comment on the verbs after which the Objective with the Infinitive Constructions are used.**

1. After a ten-minute wait I watched the train pull out. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Jennie was intensely sorry. She had never heard Lester complain before. \_\_\_\_\_
3. How can you expect anyone to think well of us when such things are written about us? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Her smile was friendly and she made you feel, that she was really pleased to see you. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Next day, though I pressed him to remain, Andrew left me. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I am not at all sure that in her own interests I shan't require her to return to me. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I didn't mean you to hear, or that old person. \_\_\_\_\_
8. So I think I'd like you to know that it's just well to be prepared, so that if she did go suddenly it wouldn't be any shock to you \_\_\_\_\_
9. I wanted us to be married at once, but she was quite firm that she wouldn't. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He perceived nothing to be done. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Remembering that after the verbs of physical perception and after the verbs *to make* and *to let* the Infinitive is used without the particle *to*, fill in the blanks with one of the verbs from the list below. In some sentences, more than one verb is correct.**

1. The question \_\_\_\_\_ him feel embarrassed. 2. They \_\_\_\_\_ me to run. 3. When I \_\_\_\_\_ him go downstairs I went down after him. 4. She could not \_\_\_\_\_ herself to tell him about

it. 5. Paul \_\_\_\_\_ his heart melt. 6. Suddenly he \_\_\_\_\_ her rise and turn away. 7. At first he \_\_\_\_\_ them to be married. 8. My feelings as a father \_\_\_\_\_ me to ask you yet again whether you will not reconsider your decision. 9. I \_\_\_\_\_ him to eat, and after lunch I \_\_\_\_\_ him to lie down, but he couldn't sleep. 10. I \_\_\_\_\_ him take me to a restaurant of his choice.

**(to want, to make, to force, to hear, to see, to bring, to observe, to feel, to let, to order, to tell, to compel)**

**Ex. 3. Complete each sentence by using the Objective with the Infinitive Construction.**

*Model:* – I consider (Mary is a bright student). – I consider Mary **to be** a bright student.

1. She found (the pupils are serious enough). \_\_\_\_\_
2. Most of all newcomers find (the climate of this district is trying). \_\_\_\_\_
3. The teacher finds (Helen is a very absent-minded girl). \_\_\_\_\_
4. Harry considered (the letter is odd). \_\_\_\_\_
5. We consider (Jack is a talented poet). \_\_\_\_\_
6. His colleagues find (he is a distinguished scientist). \_\_\_\_\_
7. I think (the boy is a promising painter). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Transform the following sentences using the Objective with the Infinitive Construction.**

*Model 1:* – I still consider they are right. – I still consider them **to be** right.

1. He saw that the woman turned the corner. \_\_\_\_\_
2. They required that I should arrive at 8 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The judge ordered that the criminal should be imprisoned. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I believe they are very good at physics and other sciences. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He did what he could, though considered he got little thanks for it from his wife and five kids. \_\_\_\_\_

*Model 2:* – She reddened on hearing these words. (to see) – He saw her redden on hearing these words.

1. He went downstairs. (to hear) \_\_\_\_\_
2. They married a year ago. (to believe) \_\_\_\_\_
3. He ate much and slept after lunch. (to force, to induce) \_\_\_\_\_
4. His clothes looked smart. (to like) \_\_\_\_\_
5. I feel quite at home here. (to make) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English using the Objective with the Infinitive Construction.**

1. Я ніколи не чув, щоб він читав вірші. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Він примусив її кинути гарну роботу \_\_\_\_\_



3. Нехай він вступає, куди хоче, і сам зрозуміє, якщо це неправильний вибір. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Я побачила, як він відчинив двері і зайшов, коли нікого не було вдома. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ці події примусили президента виступити з промовою. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Не думала, що він знущається над власною дитиною. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Не повірю, що вони відмовились від нової квартири. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Я вважаю, що його доповідь – це нове слово в науці. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мені не подобається, коли ви приходите без попередження. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Вони сподівалися, що цей експеримент виявиться вдалим. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я бачив, що сонце зайшло і темні хмари з'явилися на небі. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Ці міркування примусили нас змінити план дій. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Дозвольте мені нагадати вам про вашу обіцянку. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Він ніколи не наказує комусь щось робити, а просто просить своїх колег. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Його політичний досвід дозволив йому об'єднати людей. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Я не дозволю, щоб ви паплюжили його чесне ім'я. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Він помітив, що вона дуже засмучена. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Я вважаю, що цей фільм не для дітей. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Вам доведеться примусити їх пояснити свої дії. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Ми знаємо, що Бернард Шоу був дуже дотепною людиною. \_\_\_\_\_

### The Subjective Infinitive Construction

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences. Comment on the verbs with which the Subjective Infinitive Constructions are used.**

1. I have often thought, Lester, if mamma had not been compelled to worry so much she might be alive today. \_\_\_\_\_
2. They were seen to just touch each other's hands. \_\_\_\_\_
3. After that Tommy was forced to admit the prospect looked dreary. \_\_\_\_\_
4. But he was expected to go down to keep up his father's prestige. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He could be made to fight easily enough. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Children appear to go through definite stages as they develop. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Before Krebs went away to the war he had never been allowed to drive the family car. \_\_\_\_\_
8. So he was found to be unfit for active service. \_\_\_\_\_

9. He seemed to be wondering whether much anxiety of mind had affected his eyesight. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with one of the verbs from the list below, using *to appear, to seem, to happen* in the active form and the rest of the verbs in the passive form. In some sentences more than one verb is possible.**

1. But I don't \_\_\_\_\_ to know anything. 2. The picture \_\_\_\_\_ to be of a well-known artist. 3. We have not been \_\_\_\_\_ to undertake any work. 4. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ to see any difference between them. 5. That \_\_\_\_\_ to be a rose. 6. He \_\_\_\_\_ to give up this work last December because of chronic arthritis. 7. I \_\_\_\_\_ to have so much influence over her. 8. He, as you know, \_\_\_\_\_ to be a star. 9. She \_\_\_\_\_ to have been moved by her uncle's last words and looked at him doubtfully. 10. That evening he was very excited, and he \_\_\_\_\_ to take no thought to disguise his excitement.

(to appear, to seem, to expect, to be sure, to force, to suppose, to think, to happen)

**Ex. 3. Turn the following sentences into sentences with the Subjective Infinitive Constructions.**

**Model 1:** – It seems that he is not in the habit of coming in time. – He seems not to be in the habit of coming in time.

1. It seemed to him that his father was inclined to be patient with him. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It was felt that she was perfectly capable of taking care of herself. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is believed that his advice was ignored. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They say that he is honest. \_\_\_\_\_
5. A group of people at the gangway saw that the boat came into harbour. \_\_\_\_\_

**Model 2:** – He was taken aback (to seem). – He seemed to be taken aback.

1. She is busy today (to seem). \_\_\_\_\_
2. The situation has changed a lot (to appear). \_\_\_\_\_
3. The Carpathians were visited by numerous hikers last summer (to know). \_\_\_\_\_
4. He didn't have any money with him (to happen). \_\_\_\_\_
5. Amy Driffield would never speak to me again (unlikely). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Change the Objective with the Infinitive Construction into the Subjective Infinitive Construction.**

**Model:** I saw him cross the road safely and run away. – He was seen to cross the road safely and run away.

1. They noticed Mary say good-bye to somebody. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The doctor felt her pulse beat unevenly. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They can't make me do what they want. \_\_\_\_\_
4. John heard the doorbell ring three times. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We saw the postman enter the house. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They watched the tourists climb the hill. \_\_\_\_\_

7. The teacher made the pupil repeat the sentence a few times. \_\_\_\_\_
8. We heard somebody speak English in the next room. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They don't permit visitors to touch the exhibits. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The doctor declared the patient to be out of danger. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English using the Subjective Infinitive Construction.**

1. Відомо, що комісія перевірила всі результати виборів. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Відомо, що він гарний спеціаліст у сфері електроніки. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Відомо, що він має іншу думку з цього питання. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Повідомили, що конференція відбудеться за тиждень у Парижі. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Виявляється, що він зараз здає екзамени. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Передбачають, що переговори відбудуться відразу ж після приїзду делегації. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ніколи не чули, як він виголошує промову на захист демократії. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Відомо, що історія повторюється. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Очікують, що договір буде підписаний цього тижня. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Навряд чи вона отримає президентську стипендію. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Навряд чи парламент підтримає новий закон про охорону довкілля. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Бачили, що студенти збираються в актовому залі для участі в політичних дебатах. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Виявилось, що у трьох штатах демократи набрали більшу кількість голосів. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Шахтарів попросили підтримати загальнонаціональний страйк. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Розраховували, що новий уряд покращить становище найбідніших верств населення. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Звичайно ж, прем'єр-міністр робить все можливе, щоб тримати ситуацію в країні під контролем. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Навряд чи країни Європи підтримають Європейську конституцію. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Випадково ми усвідомили, що країна знаходиться на грані політичної кризи. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Їм ніколи не дозволяють вільно висловлювати свою думку. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Навряд чи він досягне успіху в житті, він надто інфантильний. \_\_\_\_\_

## The For-to-Infinitive Construction

### Ex. 1. Underline the for-to-Infinitive Constructions in the following sentences and state their functions.

1. They feel that what they tell you will excite your interest in an impersonal way that will make it easier for them to discharge their souls. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The lady was speaking too fast for me to catch what she said. \_\_\_\_\_
3. "This question of company," he said, "is something for me to decide." \_\_\_\_\_
4. So now she waited for Frank to speak. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It was better for me to live in a place like this. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It would not be possible for a human and intelligent person to invent a rational excuse for slavery. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I told them that the plan was for them to come and have a bit of breakfast at my house and then drive home. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Look here, there's no need for you to wait about; you have your housework to do which is more important than seeing me off. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He was anxious for her to get settled so that she could begin work. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Ned suggested books for him to read and he took them out of the library. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 2. Translate the following sentences. Underline the for-to-Infinitive Constructions and comment on their functions.

1. Is it possible for any man to disregard others entirely? \_\_\_\_\_
2. In a minute it would be fitting for me to take my leave. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They were grouped about the mother, waiting for something to happen. \_\_\_\_\_
4. You all used to be sweet and loving to each other, it was a joy for me to see you. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You know, Harry, you do make it hard for me to keep the place looking nice when you leave your things about everywhere. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She waited for Violet to say something. \_\_\_\_\_

### Ex. 3. Use the for-to-Infinitive Construction as a complex object to express your wish.

*Model:* – We always so much wish everyone were happy. – We always so much wish for everyone to be happy.

1. We always so much wish the students passed all the exams well. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We always so much wish our team won the first prize. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We always so much wish everybody were treated fairly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We always so much wish the holiday were spent at the seaside. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We always so much wish the exhibition were visited. \_\_\_\_\_
6. We always so much wish every man planted a tree. \_\_\_\_\_

7. We always so much wish our child didn't fall ill. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Use the for-to-Infinitive Construction as a complex adverbial modifier of consequence.**

**Model 1:** – Why haven't you translated this article? – The article is too difficult for me to translate.

1. Why haven't you seen the new film yet? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Can you bring this heavy box upstairs? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Do you like travelling by air? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why has Nick failed his English exam? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Do you approve of John's behaviour? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Model 2:** – Can you translate this article? – I think so. The article is easy enough for me to translate.

1. Do you enjoy studying English? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Can you bring this stuff upstairs? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Have you read the novel "The Moon and Sixpence" by W. S. Maugham? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Do your parents live not far away? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. How hard did it rain? Could Nan catch a cold? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Transform the following sentences so as to use the for-to-Infinitive Construction.**

**Model 1:** – He came in the nick of time. It was usual of him. – It was usual for him to come in the nick of time.

1. She told them the truth. It was easy for her. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Your child must spend more time outdoors. It will be better for him. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. He speaks too fast. I cannot follow him. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. We are going to the country on the coming weekend. It will be good for us. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Old people do not usually change their habits. It is hard for them. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Model 2:** – He watched his father repair their TV set. It was a good experience for him.

– It was a good experience for him to watch his father repair their TV set.

1. He always took part in the discussions. It was a natural thing for him. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. She translated the whole article without a dictionary. It was not an easy thing for her. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. I received a message from him. It was a real joy for me. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Our little daughter can't join us on this trip. It will be too long a journey. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 10.2. THE GERUND

### The Verbal Characteristics of the Gerund

#### Ex. 1. Use the Gerund in the active or passive form.

1. I prefer (to drive) \_\_\_\_\_ to (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_. 2. Stop (to argue) \_\_\_\_\_ and start (to work) \_\_\_\_\_. 3. He liked neither (to read) \_\_\_\_\_ nor (to read) \_\_\_\_\_ aloud to. 4. It's no use (to cry) \_\_\_\_\_ over spilt milk. (*proverb*). 5. I suggest (to hold) \_\_\_\_\_ another meeting next week. 6. We insist on (to send) \_\_\_\_\_ him there at once. 7. He insists on (to send) \_\_\_\_\_ my sister there instead of me. 8. He showed no sign of (to know) \_\_\_\_\_ them. 9. She showed no sign of (to impress) \_\_\_\_\_. 10. I was annoyed at (to interrupt) \_\_\_\_\_ every other moment. 11. On (to introduce) \_\_\_\_\_ they easily fell to (to talk) \_\_\_\_\_. 12. Imagine (to live) \_\_\_\_\_ with someone who never stops (to talk) \_\_\_\_\_. 13. The old man could not stand (to make) \_\_\_\_\_ fun of. 14. He hates (to remind) \_\_\_\_\_ people of their duties or (to remind) \_\_\_\_\_ of this. 15. She was so eagerly looking forward to (to give) \_\_\_\_\_ the leading part to play that she was greatly disappointed at not even (to offer) \_\_\_\_\_ it. 16. By (to work) \_\_\_\_\_ day and night he succeeded in (to finish) \_\_\_\_\_ the job in time. 17. He liked to do things without (to disturb) \_\_\_\_\_ anyone or (to disturb) \_\_\_\_\_. 18. If a thing is worth (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ at all it is worth (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ well. 19. After (to talk) \_\_\_\_\_ for ten minutes I succeeded in (to convince) \_\_\_\_\_ him that there was no danger. 20. He stopped for a moment and then went on (to speak) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Ex. 2. Use the Gerund in the appropriate form instead of the Infinitive in brackets.

1. "Of course," I said, disappointed at (to give) \_\_\_\_\_ such a trifling commission. 2. Here, they felt, was someone worth (to take) \_\_\_\_\_ a little trouble over. 3. He was so young, so gay, he laughed so merrily at other people's jokes that no one could help (to like) \_\_\_\_\_ him. 4. I remember (to go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the British Museum one day to read up the treatment for some slight ailment. 5. I was disappointed at (to deprive) \_\_\_\_\_ of my catch. 6. So I got out my Norfolk suit, which already had the appearance of (to put) \_\_\_\_\_ away for a long time. 7. That charming lady is capable of (to tell) \_\_\_\_\_ any lie to her advantage. 8. Women told one another that (to photograph) \_\_\_\_\_ by Mulliner was like (to undergo) \_\_\_\_\_ some wonderful spiritual experience. 9. I can't help (to feel) \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for her. 10. He could not recollect ever (to see) \_\_\_\_\_ the man before in his life. 11. I don't think I was unduly sensitive; in my experience most people mind (to laugh) \_\_\_\_\_ at more than anything else. 12. Mother jumped to the conclusion that the girl had gone out for the evening without (to tell) \_\_\_\_\_ anybody. 13. I wondered if I should apologise for never (to call) \_\_\_\_\_ her back.

#### Ex. 3. Insert the appropriate form of the Gerund.

1. Stark sat down without \_\_\_\_\_ (to speak). 2. He did not go without \_\_\_\_\_ by Amy (to congratulate). 3. After \_\_\_\_\_ more closely than usual and \_\_\_\_\_ his hair, he took the bus uptown (to shave, to brush). 4. At South Square, on \_\_\_\_\_ that Michael and Fleur were out, he did not dress for dinner, but went to the nursery (to discover). 5. I had to sound as if I didn't mind \_\_\_\_\_, as though I had no temper of my own (to insult). 6. She kept on \_\_\_\_\_, her voice low and controlled (to talk). 7. The house wanted \_\_\_\_\_ (to do up). 8. Even a criminal must be told the nature of his crime before \_\_\_\_\_ (to convict). 9. She showed none of the usual feminine pleasure at \_\_\_\_\_ hard to understand, inscrutable, mysterious (to be). 10. I still reproached myself for not \_\_\_\_\_ open with Douglas Osbaldiston from the start, when he had invited me to do so (to be). 11. No woman looks her best after \_\_\_\_\_ up all night (to sit). 12. His legs were somewhat stiff from not \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ for days (to hike, to climb). 13. I'm tired of \_\_\_\_\_ like a silly fat lamb (to treat). 14. I know everyone who's worth \_\_\_\_\_ (to know). 15. There is vivid happiness in merely \_\_\_\_\_ alive (to be). 16. "Your tie needs \_\_\_\_\_," Mrs. Simpson said (to straighten). 17. The attempt is at least worth \_\_\_\_\_ (to make). 18. Mr. Creakle then caned Tommy Traddles for \_\_\_\_\_ in tears, instead of cheers, on account of Mr. Mell's departure (to discover). 19. He apologized to Hooker for \_\_\_\_\_ so late (to be down). 20. One could not walk or drive

about Philadelphia without \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ with the general tendency toward a more cultivated and selective social life (to see, to impress). 21. I just couldn't stand \_\_\_\_\_ away from you any longer (to be). 22. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ him with her and Marner going away from church (to see). 23. When I told him that I meant to live in Paris for a while, and had taken an apartment, he reproached me bitterly for not \_\_\_\_\_ him know (to let). 24. Let me tell you whose house you've come into without \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ (to ask, to want). 25. I'm tired of \_\_\_\_\_ to you (to talk).

### The Gerund as a Subject, a Predicative, Part of Compound Verbal Predicate, a Direct Object, a Prepositional Object

**Ex. 1. Combine the two sentences into one using the Gerund as a subject with the introductory *it*. Expand on the situation.**

**Model:** – Don't try to pack a few more things. (no use)

– It's no use trying to pack a few more things. There's no more room in the suitcase.

1. Don't take the heavy suitcase down all by yourself. (no good) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Don't come to the station right before the train's departure. (awful) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Don't try to get tickets when holiday season is in full swing. (waste of time) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Don't go to bed late at night before your departure (silly) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Don't ask all your friends to see you off. (no good) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Don't leave by day. Night is the most suitable time if you don't like to be seen off. (worthwhile) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Answer the questions using the Gerund as a predicative. Develop the situation.**

**Model:** – What is the best way of travelling? – In my opinion, the best way of travelling is travelling by air. It is more comfortable, more convenient and of course far quicker than any other method.

1. What is the cheapest method of travelling? (to walk) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What troubles people most of all when they are travelling? (to change from train to another train) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is the means of travelling which combines speed, comfort and pleasure? (to go by train) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What is the best way to see the country at leisure? (to walk, to hike, to hitchhike) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What is the best change from the dust, smells and bustle and hustle of the city? (to go to a quiet country place) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Paraphrase the sentences using *can't (couldn't) help + Gerund* as a compound verbal modal predicate.**

**Model:** – When at a big railway station I always admire the movement, the excitement, the gaiety of the people going away and I am sorry for those who are seeing others off.

– When at a big railway station I can't help admiring the movement, the excitement, the gaiety of the people going away and I can't help being sorry for those who are seeing others off.

1. After putting my luggage on a rack I always get out on the platform to breathe some fresh air. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. When I am on the way I always try to start a conversation with my fellow-passengers \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. When the excitement of the day is over I always begin to feel hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
4. After a hearty meal I always observe the beauty of the changing scenes that fly past me. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Lying on the upper berth I always think of the troubles of the day. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Protest against the following statements using the Gerund as part of a compound verbal aspect predicate.**

*Model:* – I'm going to leave for the station. I may be late. (to begin, to pack, my suitcase)  
 – You'll have to wait a bit. I've just begun packing my suitcase.

1. I'm going to telephone for a taxi. (to start, to help to pack, not to want, to miss the train). \_\_\_\_\_
2. I'm going to put on my coat. I like it best. (to stop, to be a bore, not to take it from the cleaner's). \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm going to switch off the radio. (to go on, to listen to the weather forecast, to take a raincoat). \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'm going to smoke a lot when I'm out of town. (to give up, to smoke, had better, to eat sweets instead). \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm going to inform Pete he is not going with me. (had better, not to inform, to burst out, to cry). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Respond to the following statements using the Gerund as a direct object.**

*Model:* – I must take your coat to the cleaner's. (to clean) – Yes, my coat needs (wants) cleaning.

1. You must take your computer to the computer service centre. (to repair) \_\_\_\_\_
2. Look how long your hair is. You must go to the barber's. (to cut) \_\_\_\_\_
3. Your grey overcoat is crumpled. I must press it. (to press) \_\_\_\_\_
4. My bad tooth troubles me. I must go to the dentist. (to pull out) \_\_\_\_\_
5. My summer dress is too long. I must shorten it. (to shorten) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with the prepositions. Observe the use of the Gerund as a prepositional object.**

1. After all I'm personally responsible \_\_\_\_\_ bringing you back safe and sound.
2. They positively insisted \_\_\_\_\_ visiting all the rooms.
3. At last I succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ backing the car into the parking space.
4. What are your reasons to accuse her \_\_\_\_\_ taking the papers.?
5. Everything depends \_\_\_\_\_ being on the spot.
6. I thanked him again \_\_\_\_\_ lending me the car.
7. The author vigorously objected \_\_\_\_\_ being misquoted.
8. They are particularly clever \_\_\_\_\_ finding the faintest traces of finger prints.
9. Are you thinking \_\_\_\_\_ leaving already?
10. Nothing could prevent her \_\_\_\_\_ buying a new laptop.

**Ex. 7. Translate into English using the Gerund in the functions of a subject, a predicative, part of compound verbal predicate, a direct object.**

1. Коли вона в такому настрої, з нею не посперечаєшся. \_\_\_\_\_



2. Немає користі розмовляти з народними депутатами тепер, коли відомі попередні результати виборів.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Так швидко цю справу не владнаєш. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Розмовами справі не допоможеш. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Це неможливо було заперечити \_\_\_\_\_
6. Він був проти того, щоб тренуватися для участі у Лондонському марафоні. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Якщо тобі хотілося працювати на користь своєї країни, чому ти не робив цього? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Члени нашого екологічного клубу були за те, щоб привернути увагу до проблем довкілля. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Нікому не хотілося нести важкий тягар різноманітних обов'язків. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Моїм завданням було проводити заняття відповідно до розкладу. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Коли ви почнете обговорювати нову концепцію розвитку вашої фірми? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Учні продовжували запізнюватися та прогулювати заняття. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я почав турбуватися про можливість участі у конференції з проблем економічного розвитку країни.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Коли він почав говорити так грубо, я перестав слухати. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Люди продовжували приходити і займати вільні місця. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Терпіти не можу дивитись дешеві детективи та мильні опери. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Чи не будете ви ласкаві пройти до зали очікування? \_\_\_\_\_
18. Чи варто читати цей новий бестселер? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Я не можу дозволити собі вибрати неконкурентноздатну кар'єру. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Вона нічого не мала проти того, щоб подорожувати заради задоволення. \_\_\_\_\_

### The Gerund as an Attribute and an Adverbial Modifier

**Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following sentences using the Gerund as an attribute. Make use of the suggested nouns with prepositions.**

*Model:* – He doesn't intend to tour the country on foot. (intention of)  
– He has no intention of touring the country on foot.

1. I don't hope to get tickets for the train. (no hope of) \_\_\_\_\_
2. They don't find it reasonable to change their plans for the summer. (no reason for) \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm not experienced in climbing the mountains. (no experience in) \_\_\_\_\_
4. He doesn't find it useful to sunbathe for hours. (no use in) \_\_\_\_\_

5. She doesn't find it possible to refuse their offer to spend a fortnight at the sea. (no possibility of) \_\_\_\_\_
6. He was disappointed that we hadn't accepted his invitation to go fishing. (to show disappointment at) \_\_\_\_\_
7. She was very skilful when she gathered mushrooms. (to demonstrate an unusual skill in) \_\_\_\_\_
8. We don't think it important to spend time discussing the trip. (to see no importance of) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following using the Gerund as an adverbial modifier of time.**

**Model:** – When Rose arrived at the music-hall she heard a great deal of noise made by audience. – On arriving at the music-hall Rose heard a great deal of noise made by audience.

1. When she bought a programme, she gave it to Mrs Burlow, and looked about her brightly. \_\_\_\_\_
2. When Rose looked at the actors, she understood that youth had fled from the theatre. \_\_\_\_\_
3. After the eccentric fellow made little jokes, fell over himself and played the accordion, he looked weary and desolate. \_\_\_\_\_
4. When Rose saw an elderly woman standing in the wings, she wanted the man to stop clowning for them. \_\_\_\_\_
5. When Rose looked at Mrs. Burlow, she saw that she was enjoying herself laughing and clapping as hard as anyone there. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Answer the following questions using the Gerund as an adverbial modifier of manner.**

**Model:** – How did you manage to get tickets for the first night? (to book in advance)  
– We managed to get tickets for the first night by booking them in advance.

1. How did he make his monologue sound neutral? (to rehearse many times) \_\_\_\_\_
2. How did the audience show their admiration with the acting? ( to applaud as hard as they could) \_\_\_\_\_
3. How did he remind you of the tune he liked so much? (to hum it) \_\_\_\_\_
4. How did you manage to remember the song? (to listen to it several times) \_\_\_\_\_
5. How did the actress manage to hold the attention of the audience? (to perform her part splendidly) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Use the Gerund as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances with the preposition *without*.**

**Model:** – They went to the theatre and didn't inform us they would be late.  
– They went to the theatre without informing us they would be late.

1. He booked tickets for the first night in advance and didn't let me know about it. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She admired the music and didn't concentrate on the dialogue and the acting. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We sat motionless greatly impressed by the acting and didn't applaud. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I entered the hall on tiptoe and didn't prevent anybody from listening to the music. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He listened to her excuse for being late and didn't believe any word. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Paraphrase the sentences using the Gerund as an adverbial modifier of concession.**

*Model:* – Though they came to the theatre at the very last moment they managed to pick two tickets.  
– In spite of coming to the theatre at the very last moment they managed to pick two tickets.

1. Though the actress was very young, she produced a favourable impression on us. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Though the play was about young people, their work and life, it was a complete failure. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Though we liked the music of the opera we couldn't make out half the words and that took away from enjoyment a little. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Though they were on the stage the first time they tried not to depend on the prompter. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Though we left our opera-glasses at home we could see the stage very well. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Change the sentences using the Gerund as an adverbial modifier of condition.**

*Model:* – One can't be a good actor if he doesn't get over stage-fright.  
– One can't be a good actor without getting over stage-fright.

1. The actor won't impress you if he doesn't perform his part realistically, true to life. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The young actor can't play the part of an old man if he doesn't use make up. \_\_\_\_\_
3. You'll never know who takes part in the performance if you don't buy a programme. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sitting in the balcony you won't be able to see the stage well if you don't take your opera-glasses. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The audience will never applaud if they don't like the acting. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Read the following sentences and state the type of the adverbial modifier expressed by the Gerund.**

1. Without giving myself time to reflect, I walked straight to the house. \_\_\_\_\_
2. When a little while ago, my publisher expressed a wish to reissue it (a novel), I felt that, before consenting to this, I really should read it again. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Sometimes Liza fell into light doze and Jim would keep very still for fear of waking her. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The rain poured down without ceasing. \_\_\_\_\_
5. That night, before going to bed, Jean sat at the small table before her open bedroom window and re-read the letter from George. \_\_\_\_\_
6. On the second floor he paused, knocked on the door, then without waiting for an answer, turned the handle and led Stephen in. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Then he said, "If you excuse me for a moment..." and glanced up again, before continuing to leaf through the papers. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You never realize that by lying back in an armchair, with the eyes closed, one can come nearer to the solution of any problem. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Without much searching, I found an apartment on the fifth floor. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Well, doubtless we'll come across that in looking through Captain Trevelyan's papers. \_\_\_\_\_

11. I consoled myself by thinking that it was useless. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Of course he's been feeling ill for months without seeing anybody. \_\_\_\_\_
13. She sailed back through the typists' room without deigning to give anyone a word or a glance. \_\_\_\_\_
14. After leaving the factory on the eve of the holidays, Dubbo went straight to the house where he lodged. \_\_\_\_\_
15. I tried to put her at her ease by saying conventional things. \_\_\_\_\_

### Predicative Constructions (Complexes) with the Gerund

**Ex. 1. Combine the following using the Predicative Constructions with the Gerund.**

*Model:* – Mary won a scholarship. We are excited about that fact.  
 – We are excited about Mary's (Mary) winning a scholarship.

1. He didn't want to go. I couldn't understand that fact. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You took the time to help us. We greatly appreciate that fact. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We talked about him behind his back. The boy resented that fact. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They ran away to get married. That fact shocked everyone. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You don't want to do it. I don't understand that fact. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ann borrowed Sally's clothes without asking her first. Sally complained about that fact. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Transform the following sentences so as to use the Predicative Constructions with the Gerund. Use prepositions where necessary.**

*Model 1:* – Everyone was surprised that she was there. – Everyone was surprised at her being there.

*Model 2:* – The thought she would leave so soon was unbearable.  
 – The thought of her leaving so soon was unbearable.

1. I boasted that my father was different; he would understand that I was an artist. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She took a peculiar delight in the fact that he was Peter's son. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He felt proud of the fact that he had been able to win a woman whom everybody admired. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She gave no sign that she heard that he had slammed the door. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He was clever, no one had ever denied that he was clever. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Presently I became aware that someone was moving softly about this room. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I was about to suggest that you should lunch with me. \_\_\_\_\_
8. For my part I have never before suspected that Kate had a deep vein of superstition in her nature. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I cut short his lamentations by suggesting that we should start for the camp at once. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I like you so much because you are such a good cook. \_\_\_\_\_
11. There was a possibility that we should join them in a day. \_\_\_\_\_

12. We were sure that the trip would be very pleasant. \_\_\_\_\_
13. There was little hope that the weather would keep fine at least for a couple of days. \_\_\_\_\_
14. We could not even think that the trip might be postponed. \_\_\_\_\_
15. We all agreed that our group would go to the country on Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences using the elements in brackets to form Predicative Constructions with the Gerund.**

1. I hated to think of (she, to be) \_\_\_\_\_ alone there.
2. The sound I heard was the sound of (a child, to cry) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I couldn't stop (she, to come) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
4. I hope you don't object to (I, to accompany) \_\_\_\_\_ you as far as the door.
5. No one would dream of (he, to be) \_\_\_\_\_ so near at hand.
6. Slipping into the room like a ghost, she crept into her grandmother's bed, and finished (she, to cry) \_\_\_\_\_ until she fell asleep.
7. "You must not mind (we, to be surprised) \_\_\_\_\_" she said.
8. She had been looking forward so intensely to (Tim's, to come) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. They might, she always felt, disapprove of (women, to smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ in public places.
10. I did ask her why she could not sleep and what kept (she, to think) \_\_\_\_\_ so much as she listened to the nightingale.

**Ex. 4. Translate into English using the Predicative Constructions with the Gerund.**

1. Я не можу вибачити їй, що вона не відповіла на моє запрошення. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ми були проти того, щоб він показував вам свої нотатки. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Я наполягаю на тому, щоб діти йшли додому. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Вона заздрила йому в тому, що він отримує гарну платню. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Режисер був проти того, щоб вона грала головну роль. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Мені було приємно, що мій друг дав мені старовинні монети для моєї колекції. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Ми були здивовані тим, що він знайшов таку хорошу річ на розпродажу. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Капітан заперечує проти того, щоб корабель залишив порт у такий шторм. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Мені не подобається, що він використовує тільки неофіційні джерела інформації. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я не маю нічого проти того, щоб вона взяла мій підручник. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Я не можу терпіти, коли ти заперечуєш і сперечаєшся. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Вона була вдячна за те, що ми взяли її з собою. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Я не могла перешкоджати йому бачити вас. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Він пішов так, що ми цього не помітили. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Я пам'ятаю, що він брав участь у змаганнях з легкої атлетики. \_\_\_\_\_

### 10.3. THE PARTICIPLE

#### PARTICIPLE I

**Ex. 1. Underline Participle I and state whether the action expressed by it is prior or simultaneous with the action of the predicate-verb.**

1. Three nights later, Theresa having announced that she would be out for the evening, had dinner and left. \_\_\_\_\_
2. But I wasn't listening, absorbing the atmosphere of canvases I now knew so well. \_\_\_\_\_
3. "Twenty-five minutes past five," said Mr Rycroft glancing at the clock \_\_\_\_\_
4. "Tea," I said, setting the big white cup in front of him. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Buttoning her raincoat up to her throat and knotting a scarf round her hair she went to Victoria Street. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Getting up, I ran impulsively across the room and flung my arms round her neck \_\_\_\_\_
7. Waking as the sun crept over his pillow, he yawned, sat up and perceived that another day had arrived. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Stella stood openly waiting with the look of one for whom the ordinary rules did not apply \_\_\_\_\_
9. Listening with sympathy, watching the play of light upon those clean-cut features, Stephen was conscious of a deep surge of affection for his brother. \_\_\_\_\_
10. One evening in the following spring Apothecary Hay, having shut up his shop, took his customary stroll towards the road \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Give the reason why either Non-perfect Participle I or Perfect Participle I is used.**

1. Having signed the documents, we were ready for the next round of negotiations. \_\_\_\_\_
2. At last raising herself from the sofa with difficulty, as though she had had an illness, she found her feet were still weak. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Feeling ill I went to bed early. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I saw him going home. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Having settled into the chair, the cat was beginning to wash itself. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They were, indeed, old friends, having been at school together. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The children, having eaten their fill, were allowed to leave the table. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ann spent the time in the country helping her grandmother in the orchard \_\_\_\_\_
9. The weather having improved, we enjoyed the game. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Choose the proper form of Participle I in brackets. Underline it.**

1. "Nonsense," said Caroline in reply... "You'll see. Ten to one she's left a letter (confessing, being confessed) everything."
2. (turning, having turned) slowly, holding on to the wall, he dragged his way back into his room.
3. The following evening, (refusing, having refused) Elliot's telephoned order to fetch me, I arrived quite safely at Mrs. Bradley's house.
4. (pushing, having pushed) the people aside, he made his way through the crowd.
5. And for a moment they all three stood silently (looking, being looked) at one another.
6. Quickly (taking, having taken) her handkerchief, she hid her face in it and began to sob broken-heartedly.
7. (entering, having entered) his own room, he returned speedily with a heavy volume.
8. And (seeing, being seen) Collings now through Tony's eyes she realized how wicked he was.
9. He paused, (looking, being looked) from one to the other.
10. Nick looked at the moon, (coming, having come) up over the hills.
11. I got a message from Bill's uncle (asking, being asked) me to come.
12. (getting, having got) his son back like this, he felt he must know what was his financial position.

**Ex. 4. Use Participle I in the appropriate form instead of the Infinitive in brackets.**

1. I saw Blanche little by little (to try) \_\_\_\_\_ all her tricks.
2. He turned (to inspect) \_\_\_\_\_ me from beneath his eyebrows.
3. I came down here, (to hope) \_\_\_\_\_ that I would get over it.
4. She drank deeply, and, (to do) \_\_\_\_\_ so, sighed with satisfaction.
5. Again the hands rose eloquently, (to express) \_\_\_\_\_ better than words could do Mr. Hercule Poirot's sense of utter outrage.
6. Sam, feeling that the interview, (to reach) \_\_\_\_\_ this point might be considered over, got up.
7. "This is your grandmother," Dora was saying (to smooth) \_\_\_\_\_ the boy's hair gently.
8. His father, (to retire) \_\_\_\_\_, lived in an unpretentious, but not mean, house.
9. (to revolve) \_\_\_\_\_ these and other matters in my mind, I went mechanically on my round.
10. I had been dining by myself at a restaurant, and (to return) \_\_\_\_\_ to my small apartment, was sitting in my parlour, reading.

**Ex. 5. Translate into English using Participle I in the appropriate form.**

1. Читаючи статтю в англійському журналі, я виписував нові слова. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Знаючи англійську мову, ти можеш спілкуватися з людьми з різних країн. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Увійшовши до кімнати, він швидко наблизився до вікна. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Розмовляючи з ним, не забудь розповісти йому новини. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Отримуючи посилку, він забув поставити підпис. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Живучи в Китаї, вони вивчали культуру цієї країни. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Вони переходили річку, перестрибуючи з каменя на камінь. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Голос, який чується з сусідньої кімнати, надто гучний. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Будівля, яку будують у нашому районі, буде новим басейном. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Дай мені послухати: промова, яку зараз виголошують, дуже хвилююча. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Мій дідусь посадив квіти, які зараз поливають. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Коли її запитали про квитки, вона відповіла, що вже придбала їх. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Йому подобається стаття, яку зараз обговорюють? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Коли пташку посадили до клітки, вона перестала співати. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Проживши багато років в Англії, він добре розмовляє англійською мовою. \_\_\_\_\_

**Participle I as an Attribute, a Predicative, Parenthesis**

**Ex. 1. Combine two ideas into one by introducing Participle I as an attribute.**

1. This river forms a boundary between the rural districts. It flows into the North Sea. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Farming land in England is divided into fields by hedges. They take up a considerable part of soil suitable for ploughing. \_\_\_\_\_
3. There are several rivers in Britain that bear the name of Avon, the longest of which is the Bristol Avon. It flows into the Bristol Channel. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Shallow water is warmer than deep water. It helps to keep the shores from extreme cold. \_\_\_\_\_

5. The Cambrian Mountains are in the west of England. They occupy the greatest part of Wales. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Change the following sentences so as to use Participle I in the function of an attribute.**

**A. Use Participle I Non-Perfect Active.**

1. The seas which surround the British Isles are very shallow, usually less than 300 feet deep. \_\_\_\_\_
2. There are various types of wild vegetation which include the natural flora of woods, fens and marches. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The forests which give a good supply of timber are of great value. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The south-eastern plain which reaches the west coast only at one or two places is very fertile. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The hills of the Highlands that stretch endlessly were many thousands of feet higher than they are now. \_\_\_\_\_

**B. Use Participle I Non-Perfect Passive.**

1. The word which is being written now has two spelling variants. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The land which is being cultivated now will be under wheat. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The canal which is being built now will be used for ships. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The picture which is being painted now will be of great value, I think. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The rare varieties of trees which are being planted now are brought from America. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences using Participle I as a predicative.**

1. Great heavy tears ran down her face, and her quietness was terribly \_\_\_\_\_ (to move).
2. Tom was slim and graceful in his long white trousers. She had never seen him smoke a pipe before. It was strangely \_\_\_\_\_ (to touch).
3. I hate seeing you pay the bill when we go out to supper. It is so \_\_\_\_\_ (to humiliate).
4. The sight of the stormy sea was \_\_\_\_\_ (to terrify).
5. The examining board expected this student to give a good answer, but the answer was \_\_\_\_\_ (to disappoint).
6. Canada is a big country. The climate contrasts are quite \_\_\_\_\_ (to strike) there.

**Ex. 4. Answer the questions using one of the following Participles as a predicative: *exciting, astonishing, terrifying, striking, inviting*.**

1. Great Britain is one of the most beautiful islands in the world. Do you like its beauty? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Britain is comparatively small, but there is variety almost everywhere. Do you see this variety? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Great Britain is a small island. Nature has carefully adjusted mountains, plains, rivers, lakes to the scale of the island itself. A mountain 12,000 feet high would be a horrible monster here, wouldn't it? \_\_\_\_\_
4. England looks like one great well-ordered park with its old trees, green meadows and hedges. What do you say about its "park-like" appearance? \_\_\_\_\_
5. As you remember, we saw the coast of Spain from the deck. It was rather bare and monotonous in fact. Did you like it? \_\_\_\_\_



**Ex. 5. Complete the following situations. Point out the phrases with Participle I in the function of parenthesis.**

1. Kate hates to see people off. Generally speaking she \_\_\_\_\_
2. If you cross the USA from the extreme North to the South, you will get a good idea of the climate contrasts, saying nothing of \_\_\_\_\_
3. Some days ago I met Frank, an old friend of mine whom I hadn't seen for some months. Judging by his appearance \_\_\_\_\_
4. Sheep in this part of the country are more numerous than human beings. I don't know the exact figure, but roughly speaking \_\_\_\_\_
5. This student knew the material rather well and answered all the teacher's questions. But speaking frankly \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Make up sentences of your own using the phrases with Participle I in the function of parenthesis.**

1. Frankly speaking \_\_\_\_\_
2. Talking about \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mildly saying \_\_\_\_\_
4. Saying nothing of \_\_\_\_\_
5. Judging by the description \_\_\_\_\_

**Participle I as an Adverbial Modifier**

**Ex. 1. Change the following sentences so as to use Participle I as an adverbial modifier of time.**

1. When he was making a tour of England he saw many types of natural scenery there. \_\_\_\_\_
2. After he had visited the country he learnt that the hedges took up a considerable part of soil suitable for ploughing there. \_\_\_\_\_
3. When Bob was asked to show the centre of the cotton industry, he did it willingly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. When he came to the south-eastern coast, he understood how picturesque the scenery was there. \_\_\_\_\_
5. After she had sent the children to one of the popular resorts on the southern coast of England, she decided to relax a little. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Change the following sentences so as to use Participle I as an adverbial modifier of reason.**

1. As the English people are fond of gardening, they grow beautiful gardens. \_\_\_\_\_
2. As the students had been supplied with the necessary equipment, they decided to get to the top of the mountain. \_\_\_\_\_
3. As he was extremely interested in building ships, he visited the shipbuilding yards in Newcastle. \_\_\_\_\_
4. As these forests had been taken a good care of for many years, they gave a good supply of timber. \_\_\_\_\_
5. As she had realized the value of his advice, she followed it and went to one of the resorts on the south-eastern coast. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Change the following sentences so as to use Participle I as an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.**

1. He looked out of the window and enjoyed the beautiful scenery. \_\_\_\_\_
2. She refused to go with us to the seaside and stayed alone in the room. \_\_\_\_\_

3. The tourists stood at the lake and watched its beauty. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The student spoke on the topic and showed all the big cities of Great Britain on the map. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Express the manner of somebody's spending time. Use Participle I as an adverbial modifier of manner.**

*Model:* – I wonder what Ann was doing in the country in summer. – Oh, she spent the time there helping her grandmother in the orchard.

1. Tell me what Robert is doing in the library now. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to read up for the exam).
2. I'd like to know how you spent your time in this country? – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to do the sights of the cities).
3. Tell me, please, what you were doing on Saturday? – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to do the room).
4. Will you tell me how Judy spent her first months at the college? – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to read much to catch up with the girls).
5. I wonder what you were doing in the reading-room. – \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ (to look for the material for the report).

**Ex. 5. Combine the following sentences so as to use Participle I as an adverbial modifier of comparison.**

*Model:* The boy spoke loudly and distinctly. He seemed to be explaining something to the girl. – The boy spoke loudly and distinctly as though explaining something to the girl.

1. The girl was walking quickly along the path. She seemed to be in a hurry. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The man stood on the doorstep. He seemed to be closing the door. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. His sister didn't turn her head when he entered. She didn't seem to notice him. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The sun was setting down. It seemed to hide itself behind the mountains. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The girl read the poem several times. She seemed to be learning it by heart. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Combine the following sentences, using Participle I as an adverbial modifier of concession. Give the reason for what is stated in the sentence.**

*Model:* – Jim knew his friend's telephone number. Yet he could not ring him up. – Though knowing his friend's telephone number, Jim could not ring him up. The telephone was out of order.

1. Doreen felt giddy. Yet she went to take her examination. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Andrew answered Rose's questions. But he concealed from her some details of his life. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Jessica provided Arthur with money. But she did not even pretend to love the lad. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Montanelli was in high spirits in the mountains. Yet he could not begin a conversation with Arthur. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The mother had no spare time. Yet she went to the cinema. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Underline an adverbial modifier expressed by Participle I. Define its type.**

1. She felt as if she could sit there all through the night looking out into the cool, dark street. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Having arrived in front of it, she put her hands to her mouth in trumpet form and shouted: "I! I! I! Sally!" \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Charles, as if sensing that even then I might back off and drive away, came purposefully out of his front door

- and strode across the gravel. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He peered at her, blinking. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He got out of his seat and walked over and stood in front of Janet and Mary, looking down at them. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
6. He writes a long email to his critic, telling him he is very sorry he thought his book was bad. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### Predicative Constructions with Participle I

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences. Underline the Objective Participial Construction. Comment on the verbs after which the Objective Participial Construction with Participle I is used.**

1. He noticed a girl standing listlessly by a pillar and he slowed his pace. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. I thought I saw something moving along the track. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. But he found his traps waiting for him in the porter's lodge. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. I opened the door with extreme reluctance and found Morton standing outside. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
5. The four soldiers noticed Christian watching them. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
6. She ran up the drive and I heard her fumbling for the key. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
7. From where she stood she could hear everything going on at once. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
8. I heard the guards moving behind us. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
9. Their ears spread wide to hear the first noise that would send them rushing into the bush. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
10. It set him thinking. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Combine the two sentences into one with the Objective Participial Construction.**

*Model:* – I found my father. He was reading a newspaper. – I found my father reading a newspaper.

1. I left the girls. They were talking about the film stars. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. Tom caught his kitten. It was drinking milk. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. People slowed their cars to see the Weeds. They were being photographed for their Christmas card. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. She opened the door and found two small boys. They were standing in the halfway. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
5. She was half asleep when she heard them. They were knocking at the door. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
6. He saw a car. It was coming over the rise of a hill. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Translate into English using a complex object with Participle I.**

1. Ми чули, як співають пташки у лісі. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. Мати спостерігала, як діти плавають у басейні. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ти хочеш почути, як ехо повторює твої слова? \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. Пасажири спостерігали, як він намагається встигнути на поїзд. \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

5. Вона відчула, як вітер дув крізь відчинене вікно. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ти коли-небудь бачила, як кіт ловить мишу? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Я спостерігав, як птахи відлітають на південь. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ніхто не помітив, як старий чоловік витирив скупку сльозу. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Стоячи біля вікна, вона спостерігала, як вітер грає сухим листям \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я відчув, як моє серце б'ється від щастя. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Ми часто спостерігали, як бавляться маленькі звірята у зоопарку. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Дівчина відчула, як сльози котяться по її щоках. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Ти коли небудь спостерігав, як граються дельфіни? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Ти любиш дивитись, як падають сніжинки? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Багато людей спостерігало, як їхня команда намагається виграти автоперегони. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences. Underline the Subjective Participial Construction. Comment on the verbs after which the Subjective Participial Construction with Participle I is used.**

1. They were heard talking together \_\_\_\_\_
2. The horse was seen descending the hill. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The boots of Albert could be heard racing upstairs. \_\_\_\_\_
4. You're found hanging around the grounds of a big house after dark. \_\_\_\_\_
5. In a few moments Danvers was seen speaking to a young American girl. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Jennie was seen wearing the gold watch. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He could often be seen walking with his eyes fixed anxiously on a little sailing-boat \_\_\_\_\_
8. Here the nurse's voice was heard calling from the top landing \_\_\_\_\_
9. Many students were seen running down the side streets to avoid arrest. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The old Judge was found sitting grin and straight in his chair \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Change the Objective Participial Construction into the Subjective Participial Construction.**

*Model:* – I saw him crossing the road among all the traffic. – He was seen crossing the road among all the traffic.

1. We distinctly saw the postman entering the house. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I heard the baby crying. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He felt the pain in his leg increasing. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They overheard two people talking about her \_\_\_\_\_

5. Mary watched her son playing in the garden. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Somebody is coming. I hear the dog barking \_\_\_\_\_
7. We saw him exchanging glances with that man \_\_\_\_\_
8. They noticed the host waiting for them on the doorsteps \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Finish off the following sentences with the Nominative Absolute Participial Constructions. Use the elements given in brackets.**

1. She looked around, (her eye, to dwell, upon, the litter in the room) \_\_\_\_\_
2. (at last, the preparations, to be completed) \_\_\_\_\_ his eyes surveyed the scene with satisfaction.
3. (the examinations, to be, close, at hand) \_\_\_\_\_, a queer calmness settled upon him.
4. (his brain, to be inactive, almost dull) \_\_\_\_\_, he felt that he knew nothing.
5. (the moment, to come) \_\_\_\_\_, he felt it difficult to speak.
6. (they, to go) \_\_\_\_\_, he sat thinking the matter over.
7. He woke during the still hot nights (his hand, to reach, automatically, for a cigarette) \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 7. Translate into English using the Nominative Absolute Participial Construction.**

1. Оскільки часу залишилось небагато, ми змушені були поспішати. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Був чудовий день, на небі не було ні хмаринки. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Оскільки робочий день закінчився, ми пішли додому. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Якщо серпень буде теплим, я поїду до моря. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Якщо ти вчасно їх повідомиш, вони зможуть зустріти тебе на вокзалі. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Оскільки пасажирські поїзди тут не зупиняються, нам доведеться зійти на наступній станції. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Стара жінка розповідала свою історію, а її очі наповнювались сльозами. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Коли помилку в розрахунках було знайдено, він відчув полегшення. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Коли справу було завершено, вони вирішили відсвяткувати цю подію. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Пожежа тривала кілька годин, полум'я піднімалося до неба. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Коли обговорення нової книжки закінчилось, багато людей захотіло її придбати. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Цю проблему описано в першому томі, мені доведеться продивитись його. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Якщо час дозволить, ми ще відвідаємо музей. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Вона стояла мовчки, стиснувши зуби. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Молода жінка глянула на нього, її очі яскраво сяяли. \_\_\_\_\_

## PARTICIPLE II

### The Functions of Participle II in the Sentence

#### Ex. 1. Transform the following sentences so as to use Participle II as an attribute.

*Model:* – I have a message. Your friend has left it for you. – I have a message left for you by your friend.

1. There is a good poem in the book. J. Byron wrote it. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Here is a new parcel. Our neighbour has brought it. \_\_\_\_\_
3. There are some students in the Dean's office. The Dean has invited them. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Will you download a new video? I've just found it for you. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mother is watering the flowers in the garden. She planted them in spring. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Will you have a piece of cake? I've made it specially for you. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 2. Express your agreement. Use Participle II as an attribute.

*Model 1:* – You planned that visit carefully. – You are right. That was a carefully planned visit.

*Model 2:* – You answered my question easily. – Yours was an easily answered question.

1. You found that way out easily. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You finished the race triumphantly. \_\_\_\_\_
3. That play was performed wonderfully. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The author wrote this novel masterfully. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The boy fulfilled that work unwillingly. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Joan returned the smile coldly. \_\_\_\_\_
7. She painted the picture skilfully. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I chose the subject for the essay seriously. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They delivered the experiment willingly. \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex. 3. Expand the sentences as to give the reason for what is stated. Use Participle II as an adverbial modifier of reason.

*Model:* – Judy feared appearing in high school (to be dressed in checked gingham).

– Dressed in checked gingham, Judy feared appearing in high school.

1. Judy was an abyss of ignorance (to be brought up in an orphan asylum). \_\_\_\_\_
2. Judy studied much to catch up with the other girls at college (to be interested in education). \_\_\_\_\_
3. Judy began to study hard (to be embarrassed by the first days at college). \_\_\_\_\_
4. Judy could not answer questions on the subject of her family (to be asked by Julia). \_\_\_\_\_
5. Judy did not expect any news from her guardian in return (to be warned by the guardian). \_\_\_\_\_
6. Judy's presents got to her guardian (to be directed by the secretary). \_\_\_\_\_
7. Sometimes Judy couldn't sleep at night (to be excited by the guardian's arrival). \_\_\_\_\_
8. Judy became a writer (to be supported by the guardian). \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 4. Respond to the following statements using Participle II as an adverbial modifier of concession.**

*Model:* – The girl felt lonely and ill at ease. Nobody spoke to her. – Even if spoken to the girl would have felt lonely and ill at ease. All the people at the party were strangers to her.

1. The scientist didn't finish the experiment. Nobody assisted him. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Bill looked worn out and old. He had not been shaven for a fortnight. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Maggie didn't take part in the competition. She had not been invited. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Jane didn't answer the question. Nobody asked her to do it. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The neighbour was disturbed but didn't lose his temper. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The city was ruined but not defeated. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The picture was placed far from the entrance. It was not noticed by the public. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The girl was frightened but she continued to walk in the darkness. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Paraphrase the sentences so as to use Participle II as an adverbial modifier of comparison.**

*Model:* – She was breathing fast and deep as if she were frightened. – She was breathing fast and deep as if frightened.

1. Sinclair was panting as if he were pursued. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He leaned back as if he had been given a violent blow. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He stood in front of his house as if he were surprised. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Betty was at a loss what to say as though she were unprepared to see her cousin. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. She went into the house by the back door as if she were punished. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Roy smiled awkwardly as if he had been insulted. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Michael spoke of that as if he were disappointed. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 6. Expand the sentences with Participle I or Participle II as an adverbial modifier of time/ condition/ concession/ comparison. Develop the situation.**

1. While doing his English exercises, he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. When reading, he always \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. While coming here, I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. When heated, metals \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Though impressing the examiners, he nevertheless \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. If asked, I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Even if asked, I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Although living many miles away, he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Although told to stop, he \_\_\_\_\_

10. Whether invited or not, I \_\_\_\_\_

### Predicative Constructions with Participle II

**Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences. Comment on the use of the Objective Participial Construction with Participle II.**

1. Martha pulled herself free again, and said, "I don't want to have my hair cut \_\_\_\_\_

2. I'll have your things brought up and unpacked at once. \_\_\_\_\_

3. She found herself so much disturbed by this visit that she could hardly find tongue to answer his questions. \_\_\_\_\_

4. He saw the question written in her wondering ashamed face. \_\_\_\_\_

5. And then I heard a box kicked across the floor, and the next moment Rob came into the bedroom. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Harold put his hand to her face and felt it flushed. \_\_\_\_\_

7. When Stella comes out I shall tell her I won't have my car repaired \_\_\_\_\_

8. Never, never had I heard it sung so beautifully. \_\_\_\_\_

9. Almost the entire school saw the box delivered and all awaited the outcome with ill-repressed anticipation. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 2. Study the problem situations and try to solve them by using the Objective Participial Construction.**

1. There's something wrong with the computer. You can do nothing about it now. Usually your friend repairs the computer himself, but he is on a long business trip now. \_\_\_\_\_

2. The flat needs repairing. Your brother likes to wallpaper the flat himself. He enjoys the work. But this year he can't afford it. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Your tooth is bad. It needs filling. You must go to see a dentist. You are not very willing to do it. \_\_\_\_\_

4. You are engaged in some urgent work. As a rule, you do all the things about the house by yourself and never use the services of the laundry, the cleaner's, the dressmaker's, etc. But now you are too pressed for time. \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 3. Answer the following questions using the Objective Participial Construction with Participle II.**

1. When and where did you have your new lovely dress made? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Has your friend had her blood pressure tested? She is constantly suffering from her headache. \_\_\_\_\_

3. When are you going to have your chest X-rayed? You are always coughing. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Will you go to the nearest chemist's to have your prescription made up? \_\_\_\_\_

5. How often do you have your hair cut? \_\_\_\_\_



**Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences using the Objective Participial Construction with Participle II.**

1. Я роблю стрижку в перукарні кожного місяця. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. У нього вкрали документи в минулому році. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Вам потрібно почистити і випрасувати костюм. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Тут можна віддати почистити плащ? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Вам не відремонтують кран до понеділка. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Їй пофарбували кухню у світло-зелений колір. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Я не хочу, щоб це питання обговорювалося. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Чому ви залишили двері незамкненими? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Я хочу, щоб все було зроблено сьогодні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Він не хотів, щоб його слова були записані. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Ми не збиралися ремонтувати холодильник, але тепер змушені. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Я збираюсь завезти меблі в свою квартиру через три дні. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Ми повинні підписати наші папери завтра. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Вони збираються зрізати дерева в садку? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Де ти лікуєш зуби \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Ex. 5. Combine the two sentences so as to use either the Nominative Absolute Construction or Nominative Absolute Participial Construction with Participle II.**

*Model 1:* – The boy stood at the door of the classroom. His cap was in his hand.

– The boy stood at the door of the classroom, his cap in his hand.

1. The poor woman stood by the window. Her eyes were fixed on the portrait of her daughter. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Tom was slowly walking along the street. His hands were in his pockets. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Ann was sitting in the corner of the School Hall. Her notebook was open on her lap. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The lesson was over. The pupils merrily rushed into corridors. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The concert was over. The audience warmly greeted the pianist with applause. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Dinner was ready. The family went to the dining-room. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The academic year was over. The students left for Lviv. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## PART III. REVISION TESTS

### TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

#### PRESENT TENSES

#### TEST 1

1. Every morning he \_\_\_\_\_ before breakfast.
  - a) has got a shower
  - b) is having a shower
  - c) has a shower
  - d) have a shower
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets?
  - a) Has you got
  - b) Have you got
  - c) Do you have got
  - d) Does you have
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 8.
  - a) have usually
  - b) usually have
  - c) am usually having
  - d) usually am having
4. The coffee \_\_\_\_\_ awful.
  - a) tastes
  - b) is tasting
  - c) taste
  - d) are tasting
5. Why \_\_\_\_\_ your coffee?
  - a) tastes
  - b) is tasting
  - c) are you tasting
  - d) do you taste
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ a few hours on the bank of the river, aren't you?
  - a) are going to spend
  - b) is going to spend
  - c) going to spend
  - d) aren't going to spend
7. Children \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time out-of-doors.
  - a) spends usually
  - b) spend usually
  - c) usually spends
  - d) usually spend
8. Your parents don't live in the countryside, \_\_\_\_\_?
  - a) do they
  - b) don't they
  - c) aren't they
  - d) are they
9. I'm not sure when she \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) comes
  - b) come
  - c) will come
  - d) shall come
10. When she \_\_\_\_\_ call me, please.
  - a) comes
  - b) come
  - c) will come
  - d) shall come

## TEST 2

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ Lubart's Castle?
  - a) Have ..... ever visited
  - b) Have ..... visited ever
  - c) Has ..... ever visited
  - d) Has ..... visited ever
2. I can't find Ann! Where \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  - a) has she been
  - b) has she gone
  - c) have she been
  - d) have she gone
3. Oh, hello, Ann! Where \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  - a) has she been
  - b) has she gone
  - c) have she been
  - d) have she gone
4. Don't feed the cat! I've \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) done it yet
  - b) done already it
  - c) already done it
  - d) done it already
5. Nick has studied at the university \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) since two years
  - b) for two years
  - c) two years ago
  - d) two years yet
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a new flat yet?
  - a) Do .....buy
  - b) Have .....buy
  - c) Have ..... bought
  - d) Are .....buying
7. After he \_\_\_\_\_ all the money, he can call the house his own.
  - a) has paid
  - b) have paid
  - c) will pay
  - d) pay
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ you are leaving for London.
  - a) hear
  - b) am hearing
  - c) is hearing
  - d) have heard
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ to Ukraine several times to visit his family.
  - a) has been
  - b) go
  - c) goes
  - d) has gone
10. Something \_\_\_\_\_ good. Is it fresh bread?
  - a) smells
  - b) is smelling
  - c) has smelled
  - d) are smelling

### TEST 3

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee for ten minutes. Hurry up!
  - a) have been drinking
  - b) usually drinks
  - c) usually is drinking
  - d) have drunk
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ her for two years.
  - a) have been knowing
  - b) have known
  - c) has been knowing
  - d) has known
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ for a year.
  - a) have been jogging
  - b) is jogging
  - c) has been jogging
  - d) jogs
4. John \_\_\_\_\_ his cousin since 2020.
  - a) hasn't seen
  - b) hasn't been seeing
  - c) doesn't see
  - d) isn't seeing
5. Where's the bus? I have no idea. We \_\_\_\_\_ for over an hour.
  - a) have been waiting
  - b) is waiting
  - c) have waited
  - d) waited
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ to buy this house all my life.
  - a) have been wanting
  - b) am wanting
  - c) have wanted
  - d) am wanted
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ an automatic car before?
  - a) Do ..... drive
  - b) Have .....drive
  - c) Have .....been driving
  - d) Have .....driven
8. My children \_\_\_\_\_ this museum twice.
  - a) have been visiting
  - b) has been visiting
  - c) have visited
  - d) has visited
9. Why are you so hot? I \_\_\_\_\_ at the gym.
  - a) run
  - b) have run
  - c) am running
  - d) have been running
10. I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ all morning.
  - a) have been driving
  - b) have driven
  - c) drive
  - d) am driven

**PAST TENSES**  
**TEST 1**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ my car two weeks ago.
  - a) sell
  - b) have been selling
  - c) have sold
  - d) sold
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ to this doctor twice.
  - a) was
  - b) has been
  - c) has gone
  - d) is going
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the theatre twice last year.
  - a) went
  - b) have been
  - c) have gone
  - d) were
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ "Pride and Prejudice" but she's only half way through it.
  - a) reads
  - b) have read
  - c) has read
  - d) has been reading
5. My husband works in an office now but he \_\_\_\_\_ on a farm.
  - a) worked
  - b) has worked
  - c) used to work
  - d) has been working
6. When we lived in the country, people \_\_\_\_\_ much friendlier.
  - a) was
  - b) were
  - c) used to be
  - d) have been
7. The Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ paper.
  - a) invent
  - b) invented
  - c) have invented
  - d) have been inventing
8. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of sweets when you were a child?
  - a) Do you use to eat
  - b) Did you use to eat
  - c) Are you used to eat
  - d) Used you to eat
9. She thought her coffee \_\_\_\_\_ horrible.
  - a) tastes
  - b) is tasting
  - c) tasted
  - d) was tasting
10. When he was younger, he used to go on expeditions and he \_\_\_\_\_ risks.
  - a) would take
  - b) used to take
  - c) took
  - d) has taken

## TEST 2

1. While he \_\_\_\_\_ some water, I was waiting in my car.
  - a) is buying
  - b) bought
  - c) has been buying
  - d) was buying
2. When we \_\_\_\_\_, the sun was shining.
  - a) was arriving
  - b) arrived
  - c) have been arriving
  - d) have arrived
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ to study medicine, but I couldn't.
  - a) was planning
  - b) planned
  - c) have been planning
  - d) have planned
4. My grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ about everything.
  - a) was constantly complaining
  - b) have been constantly complaining
  - c) constantly complained
  - d) constantly complain
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ football when you sprained your ankle?
  - a) Did ..... play
  - b) Have ..... been playing
  - c) Have .....played
  - d) Were ..... playing
6. We were walking when the storm \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) was starting
  - b) has started
  - c) started
  - d) has been starting
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ in Kyiv at 10 and \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi.
  - a) was arriving .....was taking
  - b) arrived ..... was taking
  - c) arrived ..... took
  - d) was arriving ..... took
8. More and more women \_\_\_\_\_ to become pilots nowadays.
  - a) are training
  - b) were training
  - c) is training
  - d) trained
9. These roses \_\_\_\_\_ lovely.
  - a) smell
  - b) are smelling
  - c) were smelling
  - d) have been smelling
10. France \_\_\_\_\_ a king.
  - a) has
  - b) have got
  - c) is having
  - d) used to have

### TEST 3

1. When I arrived at the party, my sister \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ home.
  - a) has ..... gone
  - b) had ..... gone
  - c) didn't..... go
  - d) were .....going
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ tennis when I was on holiday last summer.
  - a) haven't played
  - b) hadn't played
  - c) didn't play
  - d) wasn't played
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work, now I drive my car.
  - a) took
  - b) have taken
  - c) had taken
  - d) used to take
4. I called my sister and asked for help after I \_\_\_\_\_ my essay for two hours.
  - a) wrote
  - b) were writing
  - c) had been writing
  - d) had written
5. He was tired when he arrived – he \_\_\_\_\_ all night.
  - a) drove
  - b) were driving
  - c) had driven
  - d) had been driving
6. John was exhausted because he \_\_\_\_\_ three kilometres.
  - a) was running
  - b) had been running
  - c) has been running
  - d) had run
7. Tom was exhausted too because he \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour.
  - a) was running
  - b) had been running
  - c) has been running
  - d) had run
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ some tea but there was none left
  - a) was not drinking
  - b) was going to drink
  - c) had drunk
  - d) had been drinking
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ you for ages.
  - a) haven't seen
  - b) hadn't seen
  - c) didn't see
  - d) never saw
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ driving lessons for several months when she passed the test.
  - a) was taking
  - b) has been taking
  - c) had been taking
  - d) took

## FUTURE TENSES

### TEST 1

1. What time \_\_\_\_\_ the train \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  - a) does ..... leave
  - b) will .....leave
  - c) is ..... leaving
  - d) is .....going to leave
2. It's very cold here. – Ok, I \_\_\_\_\_ the heating.
  - a) turn on
  - b) will turn on
  - c) am going to turn on
  - d) had turned on
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ late. She's always on time.
  - a) is going to be
  - b) was going to be
  - c) will be
  - d) won't be
4. The buss is very late. I \_\_\_\_\_ late for my meeting.
  - a) am going to be
  - b) was going to be
  - c) will be
  - d) won't be
5. Mary has been ill but she \_\_\_\_\_ better now.
  - a) is going to get
  - b) gets
  - c) is getting
  - d) has been getting
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ me late at night. I'm really furious with her for doing this.
  - a) always calls
  - b) calls always
  - c) has always called
  - d) is always calling
7. I live with my parents now but I \_\_\_\_\_ into a flat with friends tomorrow.
  - a) move
  - b) am moving
  - c) is moving
  - d) will move
8. Do you think he \_\_\_\_\_ the job?
  - a) get
  - b) gets
  - c) is getting
  - d) will get
9. We are going to miss our appointment. \_\_\_\_\_ the earlier train?
  - a) Shall we get
  - b) Will we get
  - c) Are we going to get
  - d) Are we getting
10. Our classes \_\_\_\_\_ on December the 20<sup>th</sup>.
  - a) finish
  - b) will finish
  - c) shall finish
  - d) are going to finish



## TEST 2

1. If I am late, Mother \_\_\_\_\_ uneasy.
  - a) will be getting
  - b) was going to get
  - c) was getting
  - d) used to get
2. I'll be preparing my lessons while he \_\_\_\_\_ his report.
  - a) will be typing
  - b) is typing
  - c) was typing
  - d) will type
3. He will work in his garden from 9 till 12 and \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk.
  - a) go
  - b) goes
  - c) will be going
  - d) is going
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ in his garden from 9 till 12.
  - a) will work
  - b) will be working
  - c) work
  - d) would work
5. By this time tomorrow we \_\_\_\_\_ home.
  - a) are going to near
  - b) are nearing
  - c) will be nearing
  - d) will nearing
6. I will be sleeping if you \_\_\_\_\_ so late.
  - a) come
  - b) will come
  - c) will be coming
  - d) will be going to come
7. Don't call me. I \_\_\_\_\_ for my exam.
  - a) revises
  - b) would revise
  - a) would be revising
  - b) will be revising
8. Let's go to the theatre. – Ok. \_\_\_\_\_ tickets?
  - a) Am I going to book
  - b) Will I be booking
  - c) Shall I book
  - d) Shall I booking
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ while he \_\_\_\_\_ his e-mails.
  - a) will be reading .....will be writing
  - b) will read ..... will be writing
  - c) read .....write
  - d) will be reading .....is writing
10. Children \_\_\_\_\_ some time out-of-doors but it started to rain.
  - a) were going to spend
  - b) are going to spend
  - c) will be spending
  - d) will spend

### TEST 3

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours when we return home.
  - a) will sleep
  - b) will be sleeping
  - c) will have been sleeping
  - d) have been sleeping
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ here for two hours by the time you come back.
  - a) will be
  - b) will have been
  - c) will have been being
  - d) has been
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ all day tomorrow.
  - a) will pack
  - b) will be packing
  - c) will have been packing
  - d) have been packing
4. She's texting me. She \_\_\_\_\_ us in front of the theatre.
  - a) will be meeting
  - b) is meeting
  - c) will have been meeting
  - d) has been meeting
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour when he came.
  - a) will have been reading
  - b) had been reading
  - c) is reading
  - d) was reading
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ painting your house by the time you get home.
  - a) will finish
  - b) will be finishing
  - c) will have finished
  - d) will have been finishing
7. By the end of this year I \_\_\_\_\_ in Kyiv for three years.
  - a) will live
  - b) will be living
  - c) will have lived
  - d) will have been living
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ in his office from 9 till 12.
  - a) will work
  - b) will be working
  - c) work
  - d) will have been working
9. By six o'clock I \_\_\_\_\_ my translation.
  - a) will finish
  - b) will have finished
  - c) will have been finishing
  - d) will be finishing
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ "Dombey and Son" for three days.
  - a) have been reading
  - b) had been reading
  - c) am reading
  - d) was reading

## VERBS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

### TEST 1

1. Sorry. Your clothes \_\_\_\_\_ et.
  - a) didn't been ironed
  - b) haven't done iron
  - c) haven't been ironed
2. Film stars love \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) been photographing
  - b) being photographed
  - c) being photograph
3. \_\_\_\_\_ in the 1960s?
  - a) Did the house build
  - b) Was the house built
  - c) Was built the house
4. What happened? \_\_\_\_\_ hurt?
  - a) Did he get
  - b) Did he been
  - c) Got he
5. The novel was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) by Charles Dickens written
  - b) written of Charles Dickens
  - c) written by Charles Dickens
6. The experiment \_\_\_\_\_ under strict medical supervision.
  - a) we carried out
  - b) was carried out
  - c) was carrying out
7. Thanks for the medicine. \_\_\_\_\_ before or after meals?
  - a) Should it be taken
  - b) It should take
  - c) Should be taken it
8. This heater \_\_\_\_\_ in a bathroom.
  - a) can't to use it
  - b) not can be used
  - c) cannot be used
9. David \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) a car was given by his uncle
  - b) to his uncle was given a car
  - c) was given a car by his uncle
10. I'm not surprised your camera isn't working. It \_\_\_\_\_ out in the rain!
  - a) shouldn't have left
  - b) shouldn't have been left
  - c) shouldn't to be left

## TEST 2

1. Rome is often \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) as the Eternal City known
  - b) known as the Eternal City
  - c) as known the Eternal City
2. Mrs Osbourne \_\_\_\_\_ once a month.
  - a) her hair coloured
  - b) has coloured her hair
  - c) has her hair coloured
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ serviced next week.
  - a) am being the car
  - b) am having the car
  - c) have done the car
4. Don't worry, sir. I \_\_\_\_\_ you the contract this afternoon.
  - a) will have my assistant fax
  - b) will have faxed my assistant
  - c) have my assistant done fax
5. Those curtains are very dirty. They really need \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) to wash
  - b) washing
  - c) have washed
6. The painting \_\_\_\_\_ worth at least fifty million dollars.
  - a) is thought to be
  - b) it is thought to be
  - c) is thought being
7. The ancient Romans \_\_\_\_\_ central heating.
  - a) are believed to invent
  - b) are believed have invented
  - c) are believed to have invented
8. We were expected \_\_\_\_\_ the match against the army team.
  - a) to lose
  - b) losing
  - c) to be lost
9. You can't park there. You \_\_\_\_\_ at the side of the building.
  - a) supposing to park
  - b) are supposed parking
  - c) are supposed to park
10. Where's the report? It was supposed \_\_\_\_\_ by this morning.
  - a) to being finishing
  - b) to have been finished
  - c) to have done finished

### TEST 3

1. The table was made \_\_\_\_\_ a carpenter.
  - a) by
  - b) with
  - c) from
2. A jewellery shop \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
  - a) was broken into
  - b) has been broken into
  - c) had been broken into
3. The flowers need \_\_\_\_\_ once a day.
  - a) to being watered
  - b) to be watered
  - c) been watered
4. The building \_\_\_\_\_ by a French architect.
  - a) will design
  - b) will be designed
  - c) will be designing
5. The omelette was made \_\_\_\_\_ mushrooms and cheese.
  - a) by
  - b) with
  - c) from
6. The letter must \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
  - a) be sent
  - b) being sent
  - c) to be sent
7. Lisa likes \_\_\_\_\_ flowers.
  - a) being given
  - b) been given
  - c) to being given
8. Breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ at 8 o'clock every day.
  - a) was serve
  - b) is served
  - c) has been served
9. My car \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
  - a) is served
  - b) is being served
  - c) has been served
10. Her secret \_\_\_\_\_ away by her friend by mistake.
  - a) being given
  - b) was given
  - c) been given

**DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH  
THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

**TEST 1**

1. The policeman said they had to leave the area immediately.
  - a) "You must leave the area now."
  - b) "You had to leave the area then."
  - c) "You must leave the area then."
  
2. Steven said he had finished his homework before he went out.
  - a) "I have finished my homework before I went out."
  - b) "I finished my homework before I went out."
  - c) "I had finished my homework before I went out."
  
3. She told them the letter had been sent the day before.
  - a) "The letter have been sent now."
  - b) "The letter had been sent yesterday."
  - c) "The letter was sent yesterday."
  
4. Jane said that she might have upset her best friend.
  - a) "I may upset my best friend."
  - b) "I may have upset my best friend."
  - c) "I might have upset my best friend."
  
5. Harry said that they were going to continue working the next day.
  - a) "We are going to continue working tomorrow."
  - b) "We are going to continue working the next day."
  - c) "We were going to continue working tomorrow."
  
6. Sarah said it was the best birthday present she had ever received.
  - a) "This is the best birthday present I've ever received."
  - b) "This was the best birthday present I've ever received."
  - c) "This was the best birthday present I received."
  
7. They begged the teacher not to give them any homework.
  - a) "You won't give us any homework," they said to the teacher.
  - b) "Please, please don't give us any homework," they said to the teacher.
  - c) "No. You don't give us any homework," they said to the teacher.
  
8. The reporter asked Mr Jones why he had become a skier.
  - a) "Why had you become a skier?"
  - b) "Why have you become a skier?"
  - c) "Why did you become a skier?"
  
9. Tom asked how long it would take Ann to finish an essay.
  - a) "How long will you finish the essay?"
  - b) "How long will it take you to finish the essay?"
  - c) "How long would it take you to finish the essay?"
  
10. The doctor advised him to exercise three times a week.
  - a) "Let's exercise three times a week."
  - b) "You must exercise three times a week."
  - c) "You should exercise three times a week."

## TEST 2

1. Maria said last Saturday that she \_\_\_\_\_ her mother in hospital the day before.
  - a) had visited
  - b) visited
  - c) was visiting
2. Mike said yesterday that he \_\_\_\_\_ us as soon as he had any news.
  - a) calls
  - b) will call
  - c) would call
3. The doctor told me that I \_\_\_\_\_ drink less coffee.
  - a) shall
  - b) should
  - c) to
4. Jenna said the other day that she \_\_\_\_\_ to your party this evening.
  - a) comes
  - b) had come
  - c) is coming
5. "Are you and I both in the team for Saturday?" "Yes, Lewis said he'd selected both of \_\_\_\_\_"
  - a) us
  - b) you
  - c) we
6. When I called the cinema the other day, they said all the tickets had sold out \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) the day before
  - b) the next day
  - c) yesterday
7. The receptionist asked us if \_\_\_\_\_ upgrade to a better room.
  - a) we like to
  - b) would we like to
  - c) we would like to
8. My mum wanted to know which restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ go to for Sunday lunch.
  - a) we want to
  - b) we want
  - c) do we want to
9. I asked that man where \_\_\_\_\_, but he doesn't know the city.
  - a) is the nearest metro
  - b) was the nearest metro
  - c) the nearest metro was
10. Your sister wants to know where \_\_\_\_\_ her football boots.
  - a) you put
  - b) did you put
  - c) do you put

### TEST 3

1. Salima asked us why \_\_\_\_\_ to the club recently.
  - a) we didn't go
  - b) we hadn't been
  - c) we weren't
2. The general ordered his soldiers \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) not to shoot
  - b) not shoot
  - c) to not shoot
3. "Will you stay for supper?"- She asked \_\_\_\_\_ for supper.
  - a) if I stayed
  - b) me stay
  - c) me to stay
4. There are signs warning \_\_\_\_\_ the city centre this weekend.
  - a) drivers avoid
  - b) drivers to avoid
  - c) avoid drivers
5. The shop assistant advised \_\_\_\_\_ the following day.
  - a) me to come back
  - b) me come back
  - c) me coming back
6. The presenter told \_\_\_\_\_ the show was over.
  - a) to her guests that
  - b) her guests that
  - c) that
7. The woman at the front \_\_\_\_\_ we could use the back entrance.
  - a) said us
  - b) said to
  - c) said
8. The gym instructor suggested that \_\_\_\_\_ do forty minutes a day at first.
  - a) me to
  - b) I should
  - c) me doing
9. The managing director thanked all his staff \_\_\_\_\_ him during the crisis.
  - a) for supporting
  - b) for support
  - c) to support
10. I was very tired when I got home, so Pete offered \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
  - a) me to cook
  - b) to cook
  - c) cooking



## THE OBLIQUE MOOD

### TEST 1 Subjunctive I

1. The exam is difficult to pass. \_\_\_\_\_ success \_\_\_\_\_ you!
  - a) Need, attend
  - b) Can, attend
  - c) May, attend
  - d) May, attended
2. You choose this woman for a wife! God \_\_\_\_\_ you!
  - a) blesses
  - b) bless
  - c) blessed
  - d) has blessed
3. Frankly speaking, he didn't want to move in another city. But \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) happen what may
  - b) curse that day
  - c) devil take that day
  - d) God bless you
4. This country is desperately struggling for its freedom. Long \_\_\_\_\_ heroes!
  - a) lives
  - b) are living
  - c) lived
  - d) live
5. Don't believe him! \_\_\_\_\_ from me to say such provocative information about you!
  - a) Far be it
  - b) Far it were
  - c) It is far away
  - d) It be far
6. It's hard to drive! I can't see anything! \_\_\_\_\_ this fog!
  - a) Happen
  - b) Take
  - c) Curse
  - d) Live
7. She's deceived us several times. \_\_\_\_\_ this friendship!
  - a) Confound
  - b) Let, be
  - c) May, be
  - d) God bless
8. We start a new project. – \_\_\_\_\_ you!
  - a) God forbid
  - b) Heaven help
  - c) Let it be
  - d) May success
9. The official way of greeting the King is “ \_\_\_\_\_ ”
  - a) The King lives long!
  - b) Long lives the King!
  - c) Long live the King!
  - d) The King is living long!
10. The way to success is long. So \_\_\_\_\_ attend you!
  - a) Let it
  - b) May success
  - c) Can success
  - d) Will success

**TEST2**  
**Subjunctive II in Simple Sentences**

1. Don't you see she is furious? You \_\_\_\_\_ silent.
  - a) had better keep
  - b) had better kept
  - c) had kept
  - d) will better kept
2. Oh, if only I \_\_\_\_\_ there now!
  - a) am
  - b) were
  - c) have been
  - d) should be
3. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ such provocative questions. But I had to.
  - a) not have answered
  - b) haven't answered
  - c) had answered
  - d) didn't answer
4. What are the plans? – I would sooner \_\_\_\_\_ tonight, I meet with my family.
  - a) don't go anywhere
  - b) go nowhere
  - c) didn't go
  - d) haven't gone
5. I've lost her telephone number. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell her about our future meeting?
  - a) Should
  - b) Could
  - c) Dare
  - d) Need
6. Oh, if only she \_\_\_\_\_ so many mistakes in the examination test!
  - a) hadn't made
  - b) had made
  - c) hasn't make
  - d) doesn't make
7. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ so much coffee in the evening, it's bad for your health.
  - a) drank
  - b) didn't drink
  - c) drink
  - d) not drink
8. Don't you go with us? – No, I \_\_\_\_\_ here.
  - a) wait
  - b) would wait
  - c) would rather wait
  - d) waited
9. Let's go swimming! – Oh, if only the water \_\_\_\_\_ cold!
  - a) was
  - b) weren't
  - c) hadn't been
  - d) hasn't be
10. You'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ twice before making the final choice.
  - a) think
  - b) thought
  - c) had thought
  - d) will think

**TEST 3**  
**Subjunctive II in Complex Sentences**

1. We were in desperate mood. I wished somebody \_\_\_\_\_ us.
  - a) will help
  - b) helped
  - c) was helping
  - d) would have helped
2. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ this rule.
  - a) know
  - b) had known
  - c) knew
  - d) will know
3. It was as if she \_\_\_\_\_ something about the accident. She was rather frightened.
  - a) knew
  - b) knows
  - c) had known
  - d) will know
4. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ with Ann in such a tone then. She got offended.
  - a) didn't speak
  - b) hadn't spoken
  - c) had spoken
  - d) spoke
5. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish. I could have talked to the guide on yesterday's excursion.
  - a) know
  - b) will know
  - c) knew
  - d) had known
6. He walked slowly as if it \_\_\_\_\_ him to move.
  - a) ached
  - b) aches
  - c) had ached
  - d) was ached
7. It looks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ about today's conference.
  - a) was forgotten
  - b) had forgotten
  - c) is forgetting
  - d) forgot
8. I do wish we \_\_\_\_\_ at yesterday's party.
  - a) meet
  - b) met
  - c) had met
  - d) were meeting
9. It's high time the child \_\_\_\_\_ his address and telephone number.
  - a) had known
  - b) was known
  - c) knew
  - d) has known
10. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ so many questions at once, I get lost.
  - a) not ask
  - b) didn't ask
  - c) asked
  - d) had asked

**TEST 4**  
**Conditional Mood in Simple Sentences**

1. I like this picture! I \_\_\_\_\_ it at any cost.
  - a) would buy
  - b) have buy
  - c) am going buy
  - d) had bought
2. But for the nasty weather we \_\_\_\_\_ in the park now.
  - a) should walk
  - b) would be walking
  - c) walked
  - d) would walked
3. Why didn't you tell me about the problem? I \_\_\_\_\_ you with the car then.
  - a) can help
  - b) could help
  - c) couldn't helped
  - d) could have helped
4. But for the noise of loud music, the holiday \_\_\_\_\_ great fun.
  - a) would have been
  - b) would be
  - c) has been
  - d) had been
5. Thank you for your help! Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ such a hard work better than you.
  - a) can't do
  - b) didn't do
  - c) could have done
  - d) can done
6. But for the rain we \_\_\_\_\_ a nice picnic then.
  - a) had
  - b) would have had
  - c) had had
  - d) will have
7. I like my room, I \_\_\_\_\_ anything here.
  - a) wouldn't change
  - b) changed
  - c) will change
  - d) had changed
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to order, sir?
  - a) do, liked
  - b) would, like
  - c) can, like
  - d) have, liked
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ them with the luggage, it was too heavy.
  - a) can help
  - b) will help
  - c) could have helped
  - d) was helped
10. You helped us a lot. Thank you! You \_\_\_\_\_ more.
  - a) wouldn't have done
  - b) would do
  - c) had done
  - d) did

**TEST 5**  
**Conditional Mood in Complex Sentences**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ abroad if we had hot summer here.
  - a) go
  - b) wouldn't go
  - c) will be going
  - d) have gone
2. I'd sooner you \_\_\_\_\_ this money on something useful.
  - a) will spend
  - b) spend
  - c) spent
  - d) are spending
3. Take an umbrella in case it \_\_\_\_\_ cold.
  - a) get
  - b) got
  - c) will get
  - d) gets
4. Even if she hadn't come yesterday to our meeting I \_\_\_\_\_ the same information.
  - a) should have presented
  - b) shouldn't had presented
  - c) presenting
  - d) have present
5. Enough time's passed. It's high time we \_\_\_\_\_ Freddy all the truth.
  - a) told
  - b) tell
  - c) are telling
  - d) have told
6. It seems as if it \_\_\_\_\_ the whole night. There are a lot of puddles in the streets.
  - a) were
  - b) has rain
  - c) had been raining
  - d) will rain
7. Don't say anything more! I'll behave as if nothing \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) happens
  - b) is happening
  - c) happened
  - d) had happened
8. If you were a better student, you \_\_\_\_\_ this university last year.
  - a) could have entered
  - b) could enter
  - c) can enter
  - d) entered
9. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ French. Then I could have talked to the guide in Paris on that excursion.
  - a) know
  - b) will know
  - c) knew
  - d) have known
10. My little niece recites poems as if she \_\_\_\_\_ a real actress.
  - a) were
  - b) has been
  - c) had been
  - d) weren't

**TEST 6**  
**Suppositional Mood**

1. It is necessary that you \_\_\_\_\_ your documents with you.
  - a) are taking
  - b) took
  - c) should take
  - d) should have taken
2. The doctor suggest that she \_\_\_\_\_ mineral water twice a day.
  - a) should drink
  - b) should have drunk
  - c) drink
  - d) is drinking
3. The police insisted that the measures \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
  - a) were taken
  - b) should be taken
  - c) took
  - d) have been taken
4. The children feared lest they \_\_\_\_\_ in rain.
  - a) should have got
  - b) should get
  - c) got
  - d) have got
5. The doctor left a detail instruction so that I \_\_\_\_\_ the pills in a right way.
  - a) could take
  - b) will take
  - c) took
  - d) was taking
6. Call to your Mum to say, that everything is OK lest she \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) worries
  - b) worried
  - c) should worry
  - d) will worry
7. Whatever the reasons \_\_\_\_\_, the fact remains.
  - a) are
  - b) should be
  - c) were
  - d) should are
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ Helen tomorrow, tell her about our plans.
  - a) If, will meet
  - b) When, meets
  - c) Should, meet
  - d) Shouldn't, meet
9. I feared that I \_\_\_\_\_ the train.
  - a) can have missed
  - b) will be able to miss
  - c) could miss
  - d) could have missed
10. You must find him, wherever he \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) was
  - b) were
  - c) has been
  - d) should be

### Progress test 1 (Moods)

1. Oh, if only they \_\_\_\_\_ their promise!
  - a) haven't forgot
  - b) didn't forgot
  - c) weren't forgetting
  - d) didn't forget
2. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ at the party yesterday. It was great fun there.
  - a) had been
  - b) was
  - c) have been
  - d) were
3. It looks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ for you now.
  - a) will wait
  - b) were waiting
  - c) have waited
  - d) had waited
4. If you had informed me some days before, I \_\_\_\_\_ in another way then.
  - a) should have behaved
  - b) should behaved
  - c) would had behaved
  - d) had behaved
5. Are you going to marry Lizy? God \_\_\_\_\_ you!
  - a) blesses
  - b) is blessing
  - c) bless
  - d) was blessing
6. It is demanded that you \_\_\_\_\_ Grammar rules before doing exercises.
  - a) should learn
  - b) should have learned
  - c) will learn
  - d) learned
7. If it became warmer tomorrow, we \_\_\_\_\_ to the forest.
  - a) could will go
  - b) can go
  - c) can be going
  - d) could go
8. She was looking at me as if she \_\_\_\_\_ me for the first time.
  - a) was seeing
  - b) had seen
  - c) saw
  - d) have seen
9. He feared lest somebody \_\_\_\_\_ his notes.
  - a) will read
  - b) was reading
  - c) shouldn't read
  - d) should read
10. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_ for the trip. Hurry up! We are late!
  - a) get, arranged
  - b) got, arranged
  - c) will get, arranged
  - d) got, arrange

## Progress test 2 (Moods)

1. I don't know what's wrong with this computer. If I press F1, it always \_\_\_\_\_ down.  
A close  
B closes  
C will close
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Grainger arrives while I'm at lunch, please ask him to wait in my office.  
A When  
B Unless  
C If
3. If it's raining when you arrive, \_\_\_\_\_ to the station and pick you up.  
A I come  
B I'll come  
C you come
4. I won't accept the job \_\_\_\_\_ they offer me more money than I'm earning now.  
A unless  
B if  
C when
5. The manager won't give Kevin his job back, \_\_\_\_\_ he gets on his knees and begs!  
A as long as  
B in case  
C even if
6. He would certainly buy a better car if he \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
A had  
B would have  
C didn't have
7. Imagine you \_\_\_\_\_ have a superpower, which one would you choose?  
A could  
B would  
C can
8. If I \_\_\_\_\_ Geraldine, I'd definitely tell her son to leave home.  
A am  
B would be  
C were
9. Where would you go if you \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday next year?  
A had  
B have  
C will have
10. The government \_\_\_\_\_ lost the election if they hadn't put taxes up.  
A won't have  
B hadn't  
C wouldn't have



### Progress test 3 (Moods)

1. I felt sorry for Jane. If anybody \_\_\_ such a thing to me, I \_\_\_ hurt.  
A would say, felt  
B said, would feel  
C had said, would feel  
D will say, will feel
2. "I wish I \_\_\_ your health and vitality. I \_\_\_ a new life for myself", she said with a smile.  
A had, would make  
B would have, made  
C have, will have made  
D was having, would have made
3. It is desirable that she \_\_\_ at the conference. Our direction demands that everybody \_\_\_ at 3 o'clock  
A is present, comes  
B will be present, will come  
C be present, come  
D would be present, would come
4. He speaks to me as though he \_\_\_ something on his mind. It's time he \_\_\_ and \_\_\_ everything to us.  
A had had, had come, had explained  
B had, came, explained  
C has, will come, will explain  
D had, should come, should explain
5. \_\_\_ themselves at Victoria or Vancouver they \_\_\_ themselves a large amount of money.  
A Had the miners outfitted, would have saved  
B Should the miners have outfitted, would have saved  
C If the miners outfitted, would have saved  
D If the miners had outfitted, should save
6. He wished they \_\_\_ his embarrassment at the moment she was introducing him.  
A hadn't noticed  
B would have noticed  
C would not have noticed  
D didn't noticed
7. At first, when we began to laugh, the expression of his face was one of intense surprise; as if laughter \_\_\_ the very last thing he had expected to be greeted with.  
A was  
B were  
C had been  
D would be
8. Even if I \_\_\_ down there in the middle of the night, I \_\_\_ my way all over that little town.  
A would be put, would be able to find  
B was put, could have found  
C were put, could find  
D had been put, would be able to find
9. \_\_\_, they would lose everything.  
A would the contract be terminated  
B should be contract be terminated  
C had the contract been terminated  
D could the contract be terminated
10. If mother \_\_\_ him to the skating rink in his childhood, he \_\_\_ two times Olympic champion.  
A didn't take, would never have become  
B hadn't taken, would never have become  
C wouldn't take, had never become  
D wouldn't have taken, had never become

## MODAL VERBS

### TEST 1

#### Can

#### I. Choose the correct answer.

1. Can she \_\_\_\_\_ him at yesterday's conference?
  - a) had failed to see
  - b) have failed to see
  - c) fails to see
  - d) didn't see
2. I'm sorry, but I \_\_\_\_\_ to your party on Sunday.
  - a) don't will come
  - b) can't come
  - c) couldn't came
  - d) could came
3. The boy asked if he \_\_\_\_\_ have some more apples.
  - a) can
  - b) could
  - c) could have
  - d) will be able
4. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ really you? You've changed so much!
  - a) Can, is
  - b) Could, was
  - c) Can, be
  - d) Could, has been
5. \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ him at yesterday's party? There were not so many guests there.
  - a) Could, had seen
  - b) Can, have failed to see
  - c) Can, has failed to see
  - d) Could, hadn't seen

#### II. Choose the correct meaning of the modal verb CAN.

6. Who can swim?
  - a) request
  - b) physical ability
  - c) advice
7. At ancient times a man could be sentenced to death for a small crime.
  - a) possibility
  - b) ability
  - c) reproach
8. If you have a microwave, you can cook this frozen dinner in five minutes.
  - a) command
  - b) possibility
  - c) promise
9. You could have lent him the money. Why didn't you do this?
  - a) advice
  - b) possibility
  - c) reproach
10. You can't have broken the car.
  - a) strong doubt
  - b) prohibition
  - c) possibility

## TEST 2

### May

#### I. Choose the correct answer.

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ enter this room until I say so.
  - a) might
  - b) may
  - c) may not
  - d) might not
2. The students \_\_\_\_\_ calculators at the exam.
  - a) may had used
  - b) might using
  - c) may use
  - d) may are using
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ about this situation. She was absent at the meeting.
  - a) may didn't know
  - b) don't may
  - c) may not know
  - d) may don't know
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ me yesterday to tell about that problem, I could have helped you.
  - a) might phoned
  - b) may haven't phoned
  - c) might have phoned
  - d) may phoned
5. We are waiting for the group of tourists today. They \_\_\_\_\_ arrive in an hour.
  - a) may
  - b) may have arrived
  - c) might not
  - d) may have

#### II. Choose the correct meaning of the modal verb MAY.

6. May I take your book?
  - a) request
  - b) permission
  - c) prohibition
7. Where is Tom? – He may be working in the garden.
  - a) supposition
  - b) doubt
  - c) permission
8. She's got colds. Her Mum says she may not go out to play.
  - a) possibility
  - b) permission
  - c) prohibition
9. You might order a taxi by phone.
  - a) reproach
  - b) possibility
  - c) supposition
10. You might at least have offered to help.
  - a) prohibition
  - b) reproach
  - c) advice

### TEST 3

#### Must

#### I. Choose the correct answer.

1. He that would eat the fruit \_\_\_\_\_ the tree.
  - a) must climb
  - b) must have climbed
  - c) must not climb
  - d) must not have climbed
2. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ him enter the hall, as nobody knows where he is.
  - a) must see
  - b) must have seen
  - c) must saw
  - d) must had seen
3. She knows all the details of the case. She \_\_\_\_\_ about this.
  - a) must have been told
  - b) must has told
  - c) must have told
  - d) will be told
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ me. I didn't say anything of that kind!
  - a) must understood
  - b) must had understood
  - c) must have misunderstood
  - d) mustn't understand
5. They will not come today. They will \_\_\_\_\_ come tomorrow.
  - a) must
  - b) probably
  - c) have
  - d) can

#### II. Choose the correct meaning of the modal verb MUST.

6. His grammar skills are poor, he must study very hard.
  - a) advice
  - b) obligation
  - c) supposition
7. Many patients want to consult Doctor Smith. He must be a good specialist.
  - a) obligation
  - b) advice
  - c) supposition
8. The children mustn't play with matches.
  - a) prohibition
  - b) suggestion
  - c) obligation
9. Where is Helen? – She must be busy with her documents.
  - a) permission
  - b) possibility
  - c) supposition
10. You must come to see us. My grandmother will be glad to talk to you.
  - a) obligation
  - b) permission
  - c) emphatic advice, invitation

**TEST 4**  
**Have to, Be to**

1. There was a long line in front of the theatre. We \_\_\_\_\_ almost an hour to buy our tickets.
  - a) had to wait
  - b) hadn't waited
  - c) had wait
  - d) hadn't wait
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ my best friend.
  - a) was to become
  - b) is to
  - c) has become
  - d) has become
3. Kate \_\_\_\_\_ up late with her diploma paper. She was to finish it by December.
  - a) have to sit
  - b) had to sit
  - c) is to sit
  - d) was to sat
4. The band \_\_\_\_\_ its first concert in August.
  - a) was to give
  - b) had to give
  - c) gave
  - d) had given
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ never to see her again.
  - a) will
  - b) were
  - c) was
  - d) has
6. I am sorry, I'm late. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ wait for a long time?
  - a) Had, to
  - b) Did, had
  - c) Did, have to
  - d) Was, to
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ to tell anyone about it. I'll do it myself.
  - a) are not
  - b)
  - c)
  - d)
8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the police station?
  - a) are, have
  - b) did, have
  - c) are, to
  - d) have, not
9. When \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  - a) was, be
  - b) is, to be
  - c) has, to be
  - d) had, was
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ as you are told.
  - a) are to do
  - b) were to do
  - c) have do
  - d) had done

**TEST 5**  
**Ought to, Should**

1. What do you think I \_\_\_\_\_?
  - a) should doing
  - b) ought to do
  - c) ought have done
  - d) should to do
2. I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ that yesterday.
  - a) said
  - b) should say
  - c) shouldn't have said
  - d) oughtn't to said
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ those unpleasant facts. She is disappointed.
  - a) oughtn't mentioned
  - b) ought have mentioned
  - c) ought to mention
  - d) oughtn't to have mentioned
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ be more careful in the street. It is slippery.
  - a) should
  - b) ought
  - c) shouldn't
  - d) oughtn't
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ her. Why didn't they do this?
  - a) should had helped
  - b) ought to have helped
  - c) ought to help
  - d) should to help

**II. Choose the correct meaning of the modal verbs OUGHT TO, SHOULD.**

6. You ought to help her, she is an old woman.
  - a) advice
  - b) moral obligation
  - c) supposition
7. She should not sit in the sun for a long time. It's dangerous for her health.
  - a) duty
  - b) advice
  - c) probability
8. The film ought to be interesting. Let's go to the cinema this Saturday!
  - a) obligation
  - b) duty
  - c) supposition
9. He shouldn't have said that. She is offended now.
  - a) reproach
  - b) obligation
  - c) supposition
10. You ought to feel some respect for your parents.
  - a) supposition
  - b) moral obligation
  - c) reproach

**TEST 6**  
**Shall, Need**

1. I say, I \_\_\_\_\_ never forgive you!
  - a) can
  - b) need
  - c) shall
  - d) am
2. Must we do all these exercises in written form? – No, you \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) shall not
  - b) needn't
  - c) mustn't
  - d) can't
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I read the text aloud? – Do, please.
  - a) Will
  - b) Shall
  - c) Need
  - d) Am
4. The enemy \_\_\_\_\_ see that day of reckoning for everything they've done to our country!
  - a) shall
  - b) need
  - c) can
  - d) may
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ the lectures, I've got email with lectures from the teacher.
  - a) need have copied
  - b) need copy
  - c) needn't have copied
  - d) mustn't copy

**II. Choose the correct meaning of the modal verbs SHALL, NEED.**

6. Shall we start right now?
  - a) necessity
  - b) suggestion, asking for instructions
  - c) obligation
7. She needn't have come so early. The bus station is closed.
  - a) suggestion
  - b) absence of necessity, waste of time
  - c) threat
8. He shall do as he is told.
  - a) strict order
  - b) future action
  - c) duty
9. You shall be punished for such behaviour!
  - a) threat, warning
  - b) strict order
  - c) future action
10. You needn't rewrite the text. I have copies for you.
  - a) absence of necessity
  - b) strict order
  - c) suggestion

**TEST 7**  
**Will, Would, Dare**

1. The little girl was scared, she was crying and \_\_\_\_\_ what had happened.
  - a) was telling
  - b) would tell
  - c) wouldn't tell
  - d) told
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you pass me the salt, please?
  - a) Will
  - b) Dare
  - c) Will be
  - d) Would have
3. That house saw many tragedies. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ live there since.
  - a) dared not
  - b) didn't dare
  - c) dared
  - d) dared have lived
4. You changed your mind and now you're moving to another city. Well, what \_\_\_\_\_ be \_\_\_\_\_ be.
  - a) will, need
  - b) will, will
  - c) will, must
  - d) will, can
5. How \_\_\_\_\_ she come here after yesterday's scandal!
  - a) will
  - b) must
  - c) dare
  - d) has
6. Boys, you are so noisy today! \_\_\_\_\_ you be quiet!
  - a) Dare
  - b) Will
  - c) Need
  - d) Must
7. I need a spacious car, the one which \_\_\_\_\_ hold 6 or 7 persons.
  - a) will
  - b) dare
  - c) has to
  - d) is to
8. No, I \_\_\_\_\_ say, you are wrong. We've adopted this document 2 months ago.
  - a) dare not
  - b) dare
  - c) wouldn't
  - d) shouldn't
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ tell him about our conversation. I'm sure he'll stand for our idea before the boss.
  - a) will have
  - b) will not
  - c) will
  - d) will had
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ often have dinner in the garden in sunny weather.
  - a) dare
  - b) would
  - c) shall
  - d) must



### Progress Test 1 (Modal Verbs)

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ late. He is always so punctual.
  - a) hasn't been
  - b) couldn't
  - c) can't have been
  - d) is not to
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you come a little later? The director is busy now.
  - a) Must
  - b) Need
  - c) Could
  - d) Shall
3. They \_\_\_\_\_. The party was a bore.
  - a) shouldn't stay
  - b) couldn't stay
  - c) wouldn't
  - d) needn't have stayed
4. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ so late? We've talked too much! I must hurry up!
  - a) Need, be
  - b) Must, be
  - c) Can, be
  - d) Has, been
5. Our company is open to everyone. We \_\_\_\_\_ discuss any problem you have.
  - a) can
  - b) must
  - c) need
  - d) dare
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ come tomorrow at 7 p.m., but nobody is sure whether he'll come.
  - a) must
  - b) may
  - c) has
  - d) need
7. \_\_\_\_\_ it be still raining? I have to take an umbrella.
  - a) Must
  - b) Can
  - c) May
  - d) Shall
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 a.m., but the train was late and we didn't meet.
  - a) had to come
  - b) were to have come
  - c) could have come
  - d) would come
9. There was an urgent call, so I \_\_\_\_\_ everything and hurry to the hospital.
  - a) had to leave
  - b) was to leave
  - c) could leave
  - d) will leave
10. When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the book? – On Friday.
  - a) will, to return
  - b) are, to return
  - c) must, to return
  - d) need, to return

## Progress Test 2 (Modal Verbs)

1. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ sing well.
  - a) can
  - b) have ability to
  - c) be able to
2. We ran out of milk last night but I \_\_\_\_\_ buy some at the corner shop.
  - a) could
  - b) was able to
  - c) can't
3. The buses \_\_\_\_\_ get very crowded before they built the new Underground.
  - a) could
  - b) can
  - c) were able to
4. It took us a long time, but eventually we managed \_\_\_\_\_ a refund.
  - a) to get
  - b) get
  - c) getting
5. This \_\_\_\_\_ be your book. It's got your name on it.
  - a) can
  - b) must
  - c) perhaps
6. It's quite a popular course. There \_\_\_\_\_ be any places left on it.
  - a) might not
  - b) must not
  - c) could not
7. The heating's been on all day so there \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of hot water for your bath.
  - a) could be
  - b) should be
  - c) can't be
8. Everything's soaking wet. It \_\_\_\_\_ have rained very heavily last night.
  - a) should
  - b) could
  - c) must
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ to football practice yesterday but I had a bit of a stomach ache.
  - a) can't go
  - b) should have gone
  - c) couldn't have gone
10. It's eight o'clock. We \_\_\_\_\_ leave now.
  - a) 've got to
  - b) are have to
  - c) 've got

### Progress Test 3 (Modal Verbs)

1. Where is Kate? She \_\_\_\_\_. She has told me to come at 5. – She \_\_\_\_\_ on the balcony, that's why she \_\_\_\_\_ your call.
  - a) can't go away, may sunbathe, can't have heard
  - b) can't have gone away, must be sunbathing, can't hear
  - c) must not go away, need to sunbathe, should not hear
  - d) should not go away, could have sunbathed, must not have heard
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ golf well, but today he \_\_\_\_\_ it because he has a backache.
  - a) is not to play, can do
  - b) can play, is unable to do
  - c) ought not to play, should have done
- D might have played, must not have done
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ at the wrong station, that's why it took you so long to get here. I \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday to explain everything to you in more detail.
  - a) may change, ought to phone
  - b) must have changed, may phone
  - c) must have changed, may have phoned
  - d) may have changed, ought to have phoned
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ the work so carelessly. \_\_\_\_\_ I do it again? – Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ by noon.
  - a) can't do, will, must be doing
  - b) can't have done, shall, must be done
  - c) must not have done, may, may have done
  - d) must not do, will, must have been done
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ at seven, but I \_\_\_\_\_ come here in time. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ till I came.
  - a) had to meet, couldn't have, may wait
  - b) were to meet, was not able, should have waited
  - c) were to have met, couldn't, might have waited
  - d) had to have met, might not have, should wait
6. Why are you so upset? She \_\_\_\_\_ the dates. – She \_\_\_\_\_ about our meeting. She fixed the day and time herself.
  - a) could have mixed up, might not have forgotten
  - b) may have mixed up, couldn't have forgotten
  - c) is able to mix up, can't forget
  - d) must mix up, was not able to forget
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ have a right to such strong local attachment. You \_\_\_\_\_ at Longbourn.
  - a) cannot, cannot have always lived
  - b) must not, must not have always lived
  - c) should not, should not always lived
  - d) may not, ought not always live
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ an hour ago. That they \_\_\_\_\_ without ill consequence is least probable.
  - a) had to come, should meet
  - b) must have come, ought meet
  - c) had come, must have met
  - d) were to come, might have met
9. It is one of Harris's fixed ideas that he \_\_\_\_\_ a comic song; the fixed idea, on the contrary, among those of Harris's friends who have heard him try, is that he \_\_\_\_\_, and never \_\_\_\_\_, and that he \_\_\_\_\_ to try.
  - a) must have sung, must not, will have to, should not allow
  - b) can sing, can't, will be able to, ought not to be allowed
  - c) will be able to sing, should not, must not, should not be allowed
  - d) should, shouldn't, shouldn't, must not be allowed
10. I had no accurate idea of the time, for I \_\_\_\_\_ my watch, but I thought we \_\_\_\_\_ about four hours ago.
  - a) was unable to see, had to start
  - b) could not see, must have started
  - c) did not see, would have started
  - d) was not able to see, would start

**NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB  
THE INFINITIVE**

**Test 1**

**Choose the proper form of the Infinitive.**

1. Mary has come \_\_\_\_\_ something interesting.
  - a) to tell
  - b) to have told
  - c) to be telling
  - d) to have been told
2. When Paris got to Sparta, he went \_\_\_\_\_ Helen and Menelaus.
  - a) to have been visiting
  - b) to have visited
  - c) to be visiting
  - d) to visit
3. The cat seemed \_\_\_\_\_ how important this was and kept still and silent.
  - a) to have been realized
  - b) to have realized
  - c) to realize
  - d) to be realized
4. The fatal portrait was \_\_\_\_\_ away.
  - a) to hide
  - b) to have hidden
  - c) to have been hidden
  - d) to be hidden
5. I was born \_\_\_\_\_ you happy.
  - a) to be making
  - b) to have been made
  - c) to make
  - d) to have made
6. What an idiot he was not \_\_\_\_\_ of it before.
  - a) to be thinking
  - b) to have thought
  - c) to think
  - d) to have been thinking
7. It ought \_\_\_\_\_ long ago; at least before their leaving Blackstable.
  - a) to be done
  - b) to have been done
  - c) to have been doing
  - d) to do
8. They are supposed \_\_\_\_\_ at the article for the last three hours.
  - a) to be working
  - b) to have worked
  - c) to have been worked
  - d) to have been working
9. She seemed \_\_\_\_\_ no attention to what was going round her.
  - a) to be paying
  - b) to have been paying
  - c) to pay
  - d) to have paid
10. She wanted \_\_\_\_\_ by him one more time.
  - a) to kiss
  - b) to have been kissed
  - c) to be kissed
  - d) to have been kissing

## Test 2

### Define the syntactic function of the Infinitive.

1. To see your tears gives me a lot of pleasure.
  - a) a subject
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) an object
  - d) an adverbial modifier
2. I'm going to make her a declaration of love tonight.
  - a) a subject
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an adverbial modifier
3. Are you crazy to have invited them?
  - a) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an object
4. I did everything I could and there is nothing to regret.
  - a) a subject
  - b) an object
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an adverbial modifier
5. I changed school never to see her.
  - a) an adverbial modifier
  - b) a subject
  - c) an object
  - d) an attribute
6. He began to be afraid that some accident had happened to her.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
7. His first thought was to defend her.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
8. It has become his habit to look at me all the time.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
9. The temptation was too strong to resist.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) an adverbial modifier
  - d) an attribute
10. If he wouldn't mind, I should love to come.
  - a) an attribute
  - b) a predicative
  - c) an adverbial modifier
  - d) an object

### Test 3

#### Choose the correct variant of translation.

1. Ніхто не сподівався, що вони поїдуть так швидко.
  - a) Nobody expected them to have been leaving so soon.
  - b) Nobody did not expect them to leave so soon.
  - c) Nobody expected them to leave so soon.
  - d) Nobody expected they to leave so soon.
2. Я бачив, що машина повернула за рiг і зникла.
  - a) I saw the car turn round the corner and disappear.
  - b) I saw the car to turn round the corner and to disappear.
  - c) I saw the car to have turned round the corner and to have disappeared.
  - d) I saw the car has turned round the corner and disappeared.
3. Здавалося, що його здивували ці плітки.
  - a) He seems to surprise by the gossip.
  - b) He was seemed to have been surprised by the gossip.
  - c) He seemed to have surprised by the gossip.
  - d) He seemed to have been surprised by the gossip.
4. Найкраще, що ти можеш зробити, це зізнатися.
  - a) The best thing for you to have done is to confess.
  - b) The best thing for you to do is to confess.
  - c) The best thing to you to do is to confess.
  - d) The best thing for your to do is to confess.
5. Він зробив все можливе, щоб примусити сина змінити своє рішення.
  - a) He did his best to make his son to change his mind.
  - b) He did his best to make his son to have changed his mind.
  - c) He did his best to make his son change his mind.
  - d) He made his best to make his son change his mind.
6. Сподіваються, що договір буде підписаний цього тижня.
  - a) The agreement is expected to be signed this week.
  - b) The agreement is expecting to be signed this week.
  - c) The agreement is expecting to have been signed this week.
  - d) The agreement is expected to have signed this week.
7. У неї не було шансу знайти хорошу роботу.
  - a) There was no chance for she to find a good job.
  - b) There was no chance for her to have found a good job.
  - c) There was no chance for her to find a good job.
  - d) There were no chance for her to find a good job.
8. Думають, що чоловік, який утримує заручників, дуже добре озброєний.
  - a) The man to be holding the hostages is thought to be heavily armed.
  - b) The man who held the hostages is thought to be heavily armed.
  - c) The man who was holding the hostages are thought to have been heavily armed.
  - d) The man holding the hostages is thought to be heavily armed.
9. Мене примусили детально розповісти їм про мої банківські рахунки.
  - a) I had been made giving them details of my bank accounts.
  - b) I was making to give them details of my bank accounts.
  - c) I was made to give them details of my bank accounts.
  - d) I was made give them details of my bank accounts.
10. Туман був надто густий, щоб ми могли йти далі.
  - a) The fog was enough thick for us to go on.
  - b) The fog was too thick for us to go on.
  - c) The fog was too thick for we go on.
  - d) The fog was thick enough for us to going on.

## THE GERUND

### Test 1

#### Choose the proper form of the Gerund.

1. He looked up and burst out \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) having laughed
  - b) laughing
  - c) being laughed
  - d) having been laughed
2. I'm tired of \_\_\_\_\_ alone such a long time.
  - a) living
  - b) being lived
  - c) having been lived
  - d) having lived
3. Nobody was surprised at \_\_\_\_\_ such horrible things about him before.
  - a) being heard
  - b) hearing
  - c) having heard
  - d) having been heard
4. The coat showed evident signs of \_\_\_\_\_ on the preceding night.
  - a) having been worn
  - b) being worn
  - c) having worn
  - d) wearing
5. Nobody ever commits a crime without \_\_\_\_\_ something stupid.
  - a) having been done
  - b) being done
  - c) having done
  - d) doing
6. She begged the favour of \_\_\_\_\_ to her room.
  - a) showing
  - b) having shown
  - c) being shown
  - d) having been shown
7. She denies \_\_\_\_\_ of him every minute.
  - a) being thought
  - b) thinking
  - c) having been thought
  - d) having thought
8. The strongest need in our life is the need of \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - a) having been loved
  - b) being loved
  - c) having loved
  - d) loving
9. He complained of \_\_\_\_\_ by the police.
  - a) having been tortured
  - b) torturing
  - c) being tortured
  - d) having tortured
10. He was accused of \_\_\_\_\_ the country illegally.
  - a) entering
  - b) being entered
  - c) having been entered
  - d) having entered

## Test 2

### Define the syntactic function of the Gerund.

1. But instead of soothing Shelton these words had just the opposite effect.
  - a) a subject
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) an object
  - d) an adverbial modifier
2. The kind woman started crying before the boy had finished his sad story.
  - a) a subject
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an adverbial modifier
3. It was no good taking the little darling up to town, she got only tired.
  - a) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) a subject
  - d) an object
4. He enjoyed teaching and knew that he did it well.
  - a) a subject
  - b) an object
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an adverbial modifier
5. The main thing to do in this situation is getting away as soon as possible.
  - a) a predicative
  - b) a subject
  - c) an object
  - d) an attribute
6. The idea of settling down in that little town filled her with nothing but regret.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
7. I walked to my place as fast as I could without breaking into run.
  - a) a subject
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
8. However hard he tried he could not help thinking about it.
  - a) a subject
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
9. He was in the habit of dozing after dinner in his favourite armchair.
  - a) an attribute
  - b) a subject
  - c) a predicative
  - d) an adverbial modifier
10. Charlie did not succeed in taking things easy.
  - a) an attribute
  - b) a predicative
  - c) an adverbial modifier
  - d) an object



### Test 3

#### Choose the correct variant of translation.

1. Вам не варто було наполягати на тому, щоб вам сказали правду.
  - a) You shouldn't have insisted on having told the truth.
  - b) You shouldn't have insisted on telling the truth.
  - c) You shouldn't have insisted on being told the truth.
  - d) You shouldn't have insisted on been told the truth
2. Замість того, щоб їсти вдома, він пішов у ресторан.
  - a) Instead to eat at home, he went to a restaurant.
  - b) Instead of eating at home, he went to a restaurant.
  - c) Instead of being eaten at home, he went to a restaurant.
  - d) Instead of have eaten at home, he went to a restaurant.
3. Його батьки були проти того, щоб він пізно повертався додому.
  - a) His parents did not approve against he to come home so late.
  - b) His parents did not approve him to be coming home so late.
  - c) His parents did not approve of him coming home so late.
  - d) His parents did not approve that he will come home so late.
4. Я не заперечую проти того, щоб ти брав участь у місцевих виборах цього року.
  - a) I don't mind your run for local elections this year.
  - b) I don't mind your to run for local elections this year.
  - c) I don't mind your having run for local elections this year.
  - d) I don't mind your running for local elections this year.
5. Студентський консультаційний центр запропонував опитати студентів про їхні проблеми .
  - a) Student Advice Center suggested questioning students about their problems.
  - b) Student Advice Center suggested to question students about their problems.
  - c) Student Advice Center suggested having questioned students about their problems.
  - d) Student Advice Center suggested questioned students about their problems.
6. Ти коли-небудь чув, щоб розумна людина відмовилась від такої пропозиції?
  - a) Have you ever heard of a sensible person being rejected such an offer?
  - b) Have you ever heard of a sensible person rejecting such an offer?
  - c) Have you ever heard of a sensible person rejected such an offer?
  - d) Have you ever heard of a sensitive person rejects such an offer?
7. Якраз перед обідом йому сказали, що місіс Річардс почувається недобре.
  - a) Just before dinner he was told of Mrs Richard's not been well.
  - b) Just before dinner he was told of Mrs Richard's not be well.
  - c) Just before dinner he was told of Mrs Richard's not is well.
  - d) Just before dinner he was told of Mrs Richard's not being well.
8. Давайте поговоримо не звинувачуючи один одного.
  - a) Let's talk instead of blaming each other.
  - b) Let's talk besides blaming each other.
  - c) Let's talk without blaming each other.
  - d) Let's talk in spite of blaming each other.
9. Вона продовжувала мріяти про своє майбутнє життя.
  - a) She went on to dream about her future life.
  - b) She went on dreaming about her future life.
  - c) She went on dream about her future life.
  - d) She went on having dreamt about her future life.
10. Що завадило вам покращити стосунки з колегами
  - a) What prevented you from improving relations with your colleagues.
  - b) What prevented you to improve relations with your colleagues.
  - c) What prevented you from been improving relations with your colleagues.
  - d) What prevented you from improved relations with your colleagues.

## THE PARTICIPLE

### Test 1

#### Choose the proper form of the Participle I.

1. It was a bright Sunday morning of early summer, \_\_\_\_\_ heat.
  - a) having promised
  - b) promising
  - c) being promised
  - d) having been promised
2. \_\_\_\_\_ long ago, the parcel found its addressee at last.
  - a) having been sent
  - b) being sent
  - c) having sent
  - d) sending
3. \_\_\_\_\_ his pockets with apples, the boy was about to run away.
  - a) being filled
  - b) filling
  - c) having filled
  - d) having been filled
4. I'm afraid it's the moon \_\_\_\_\_ so much like a slice of lemon.
  - a) having been looked
  - b) being looked
  - c) having looked
  - d) looking
5. "It's awful! Do you hear the questions \_\_\_\_\_ by those people?" cried Katy.
  - a) having been asked
  - b) being asked
  - c) having asked
  - d) asking
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the film we were anxious to start conversation.
  - a) watching
  - b) having been watched
  - c) having watched
  - d) being watched
7. \_\_\_\_\_ long ago, the famous Charles Bridge requires some maintenance work.
  - a) having been built
  - b) being built
  - c) having built
  - d) building
8. "All right!" cried Harry \_\_\_\_\_ the elf's arm to stop him.
  - a) having grabbed
  - b) having been grabbed
  - c) being grabbed
  - d) grabbing
9. \_\_\_\_\_ long ago, the novel is likely to be re-translated.
  - a) having been translated
  - b) being translated
  - c) having translated
  - d) translating
10. "No, no, no", squeaked Dobby \_\_\_\_\_ his head.
  - a) having been shaken
  - b) being shaken
  - c) shaking
  - d) having shaken

## Test 2

### Define the syntactic function of Participle I or Participle II.

1. I sat quite silent, watching his face, a strong and noble face.
  - a) an attribute
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) a predicative
  - d) an adverbial modifier
2. The letter, beginning with “Dear sir” was not signed.
  - a) parenthesis
  - b) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - c) an attribute
  - d) a predicative
3. Susie came running in the room with morning newspaper at her hand.
  - a) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) a predicative
  - d) an attribute
4. Generally speaking, older people are less able to speak up for their rights.
  - a) a predicative
  - b) parenthesis
  - c) an attribute
  - d) an adverbial modifier
5. Organizers said the display was amusing but warned that some people might consider it unsuitable for young children.
  - a) a predicative
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) parenthesis
  - d) an attribute
6. The audience burst into applause and the actress, though looking tired, was smiling happily.
  - a) an adverbial modifier
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a compound verbal predicate
  - d) an attribute
7. Her picture is incredible as if painted by the hand of real master.
  - a) a predicative
  - b) an adverbial modifier
  - c) part of a complex object
  - d) an attribute
8. It’s rush hour, there are a lot of jams on the streets, and every bus is overcrowded.
  - a) an adverbial modifier
  - b) an attribute
  - c) part of a complex object
  - d) a predicative
9. I entered the room and found her killed
  - a) an attribute
  - b) a predicative
  - c) part of a complex object
  - d) an adverbial modifier
10. London was soon far behind them, replaced by neat green fields.
  - a) an attribute
  - b) a predicative
  - c) an adverbial modifier
  - d) part of a complex object

### Test 3

#### Define the type of the Participial Construction with Participle I or Participle II.

1. "You don't respect me," said Dora, her voice trembling.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
2. Soams saw Bossiney watching her and smiling to himself.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
3. He could be seen following her with her eyes.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
4. Mrs Mooney watched the table cleared and the broken bread collected.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
5. Men, their caps pulled down, their collars turned up, passed by.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
6. The strange man stood near the front door with his eyes hidden under the dark glasses.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
7. At that moment Charles was noticed sitting a little farther in the hall.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
8. The voices had receded and James was left alone, fear creeping about his inwards.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
9. Get the rooms dusted and aired by the time they arrive.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction
10. Just now, with the harvest coming on, everything looks its richest.
  - a) The Objective Participial Construction
  - b) The Subjective Participial Construction
  - c) The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction
  - d) The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction

## Progress Test (Verbals)

### Choose the correct item.

1. John is fortunate now \_\_\_\_\_ a scholarship last month.
  - a) to give
  - b) given
  - c) to have been given
  - d) giving
2. Then he looked out of the window and saw clouds \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.
  - a) gathering
  - b) to gather
  - c) gathered
  - d) to be gathered
3. He is complaining \_\_\_\_\_ too much trouble with this problem.
  - a) to have
  - b) with having
  - c) about having
  - d) have
4. I hope you have a good excuse \_\_\_\_\_ so late.
  - a) to be
  - b) of being
  - c) for being
  - d) be
5. Please, forgive me for not \_\_\_\_\_ here to help you yesterday.
  - a) to be
  - b) been
  - c) have been
  - d) having been
6. Everyone knew him \_\_\_\_\_ the author of this article.
  - a) be
  - b) to be
  - c) being
  - d) do not be
7. The boys could not leave the house without \_\_\_\_\_ for permission.
  - a) asking
  - b) to ask
  - c) asked
  - d) to have asked
8. Greg is ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ his team during the championship last year.
  - a) have supported
  - b) to support
  - c) not to have supported
  - d) not to support
9. Several minutes ago he saw them \_\_\_\_\_ in the entrance hall.
  - a) to talk
  - b) talking
  - c) talked
  - d) have talked

10. When can I have my umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
a) to mend  
b) mending  
c) mend  
d) mended
11. My mother objected \_\_\_\_\_ a dog in the house  
a) to having  
b) about having  
c) to have  
d) have
12. Lillian deserves \_\_\_\_\_ the truth about what happened last night.  
a) to tell  
b) to be told  
c) told  
d) to have told
13. I could not understand his not \_\_\_\_\_ to go out.  
a) to want  
b) wanted  
c) wanting  
d) have wanted
14. \_\_\_\_\_ the door behind her, Isabel waited a little.  
a) to close  
b) closed  
c) to be closed  
d) having closed
15. Other footsteps were heard \_\_\_\_\_ the room below.  
a) have crossed  
b) crossed  
c) being crossed  
d) to cross
16. \_\_\_\_\_ by her father, she went to her new room.  
a) to accompany  
b) accompany  
c) accompanied  
d) to have accompanied
17. Sometimes children complain about not \_\_\_\_\_ by their parents.  
a) being understood  
b) to understand  
c) to be understood  
d) understanding
18. He expected \_\_\_\_\_ to the party, but he wasn't.  
a) to invite  
b) to be invited  
c) invite  
d) inviting
19. Her daughter sat quite silent, with her eyes \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground.  
a) to fix  
b) fixed  
c) fixing  
d) have fixed

20. All her shopping \_\_\_\_\_, she rushed home.  
a) having done  
b) doing  
c) having been done  
d) to be done
21. \_\_\_\_\_ in her room, she flung herself on the bed and cried bitterly.  
a) locking  
b) have locked  
c) lock  
d) locked
22. \_\_\_\_\_ by their happy faces they enjoyed the scenery.  
a) judging  
b) judged  
c) to be judged  
d) to have judged
23. Three men are reported \_\_\_\_\_ in an accident.  
a) to injure  
b) to have been injured  
c) injured  
d) injuring
24. The boy looked at the foot of the bed as if \_\_\_\_\_ from what was going on.  
a) has detached  
b) detaching  
c) detached  
d) to be detaching
25. You are unfortunate \_\_\_\_\_ all the exams this year.  
a) to pass  
b) not to pass  
c) do not pass  
d) of passing

## APPENDICES

### GRAMMAR TERMS GLOSSARY

English Term	Ukrainian Term
<b>A</b>	
active voice	активний (дійсний) стан
adjective	прикметник
adverb	прислівник
adverbial clause	підрядне речення обставини
adverbial modifier <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of time</li> <li>• of place</li> <li>• of manner</li> <li>• of reason (cause)</li> <li>• of concession</li> <li>• of comparison</li> <li>• of exception</li> <li>• of condition</li> <li>• of degree and measure</li> <li>• of attendant circumstances and subsequent events</li> <li>• result (consequence)</li> <li>• purpose</li> </ul>	обставина <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• часу</li> <li>• місця</li> <li>• способу дії</li> <li>• причини</li> <li>• поступки</li> <li>• порівняння</li> <li>• виключення</li> <li>• умови</li> <li>• міри та ступеня</li> <li>• супровідних обставин і наступних подій</li> <li>• результату (наслідку)</li> <li>• мети</li> </ul>
affirmative sentence	стверджувальне речення
agreement	узгодження
alternative question	альтернативне питання
animate noun	іменник, що позначає живу істоту
apposition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• close</li> <li>• loose (detached)</li> </ul>	прикладка <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• невідокремлена прикладка</li> <li>• відокремлена прикладка</li> </ul>
aspect	аспект
asyndetical connection	безсполучниковий зв'язок
attribute	означення
attributive clause	підрядне означальне речення
auxiliary verb	допоміжне дієслово
<b>B</b>	
bare infinitive	інфінітив без частки 'to'
basic forms of the verb	основні форми дієслова
<b>C</b>	
cardinal numeral	кількісний числівник
clause	підрядне речення
collective noun	збірний іменник
common case	загальний відмінок
common nouns	загальні іменники
comparative degree	порівняльний ступень
complete sentence	повноскладне речення
complex object	складний додаток
complex sentence	складнопідрядне речення
composite sentence	складне речення
compound nominal predicate	складений іменний присудок
compound noun	складений іменник
compound sentence	складносурядне речення
compound verbal aspect predicate	складений дієслівний аспектний присудок
compound verbal modal predicate	складений дієслівний модальний присудок
concession	поступка
conjunctive pronoun	сполучниковий займенник
countable nouns	злічувальні іменники



<b>D</b>	
decimals	десяткові дроби
declarative sentence <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• declarative affirmative</li> <li>• declarative negative</li> </ul>	розповідне речення <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• розповідне стверджувальне</li> <li>• розповідне заперечне</li> </ul>
defining pronoun	означальний займенник
degrees of comparison	ступені порівняння
demonstrative pronoun	вказівний займенник
derivative	похідне слово
direct object	прямий додаток
direct speech	пряма мова
disjunctive question	розділове питання
durative verb	неграничне дієслово
dynamic verb	дієслово дії
<b>E</b>	
emphasis	емфаза, посилення
exclamation	вигук
exclamatory sentences	окличне речення
extended sentence	поширене речення
<b>F</b>	
finite forms of the verb	особові форми дієслова
fractions	прості дроби
frequency	частота, частотність
<b>G</b>	
general question	загальне питання
genitive case	непрямий відмінок
gerund	герундій
gerundial phrase	герундіальний зворот
<b>H</b>	
homogeneous members of the sentence	однородні члени речення
<b>I</b>	
imperative mood	наказовий спосіб
imperative sentence	спонукальне речення
impersonal sentence	безособове речення
inanimate noun	іменник, що позначає неживу істоту
incomplete sentence	неповне речення
indefinite pronoun	неозначений займенник
indicative mood	дійсний спосіб
indirect object	непрямий додаток
infinitive	інфінітив (початкова форма дієслова)
interjection	вигук
interrogative pronoun	питальний займенник
interrogative sentence	питальне речення
intransitive verb	неперехідне дієслово
irregular verb	неправильне дієслово
<b>L</b>	
link verb	дієслово-зв'язка
<b>M</b>	
main clause	головне речення
main word	головне слово
manysyllabic	багатоскладовий
(verbs of ) mental activity = mental perception	дієслова розумової діяльності (сприйняття)
modal verb	модальне дієслово
monosyllabic	односкладовий
mood	спосіб
morphological	морфологічний

<b>N</b>	
negative-interrogative sentence	питально-заперечне речення
negative pronoun	заперечний займенник
nominative case	називний відмінок
non-finite forms of the verb (verbals)	неособові форми дієслова
notion	поняття
notional verb	сміслове дієслово
noun	іменник
number	число
numeral	числівник
numerical expression	числівниковий вираз
<b>O</b>	
object	додаток
objective case	непрямий (об'єктний) відмінок
one-member sentence	односкладне речення
ordinal numeral	порядковий числівник
<b>P</b>	
participle <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• present participle</li> <li>• past participle</li> </ul>	дієприкметник <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• дієприкметник теперішнього о часу</li> <li>• дієприкметник минулого часу</li> </ul>
participial construction	дієприкметниковий зворот
passive voice	пасивний стан
pattern	модель, зразок, шаблон
person	особа
personal pronoun	особовий займенник
phrasal verbs	фразове дієслово
plural	множина
polysyllabic adjective	багатоскладовий прикметник
positive degree	позитивний ступень (порівняння)
possessive case	присвійний відмінок
possessive pronoun	присвійний займенник
postposition	післялог (у складі фразового дієслова)
predicate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• simple verbal</li> <li>• compound verbal aspect</li> <li>• compound verbal modal</li> <li>• compound nominal</li> </ul>	присудок <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• простий дієслівний присудок</li> <li>• складений дієслівний аспектний присудок</li> <li>• складений дієслівний модальний присудок</li> <li>• складений іменний присудок</li> </ul>
predicative	предикатив; іменна частина складеного іменного присудка
present continuous (progressive)	теперішній тривалий час
present indefinite (simple)	теперішній неозначений час
present perfect	теперішній доконаний час
principal clause	головне речення
principal member of the sentence	головний член речення
pronoun <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• personal pronoun</li> <li>• possessive pronoun</li> <li>• reflexive pronoun</li> <li>• reciprocal pronoun</li> <li>• defining pronoun</li> <li>• indefinite pronoun</li> <li>• demonstrative pronoun</li> <li>• interrogative pronoun</li> <li>• relative pronoun</li> <li>• conjunctive pronoun</li> <li>• negative pronoun</li> </ul>	займенник <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• особовий займенник</li> <li>• присвійний займенник</li> <li>• зворотний займенник</li> <li>• взаємний займенник</li> <li>• означальний займенник</li> <li>• неозначений займенник</li> <li>• вказівний займенник</li> <li>• питальний займенник</li> <li>• відносний займенник</li> <li>• сполучниковий займенник</li> <li>• заперечний займенник</li> </ul>
proper noun	іменник, що позначає власну назву

<b>Q</b>	
qualitative adjective	якісний прикметник
question word	питальне слово
quotation	цитата
<b>R</b>	
reciprocal pronoun	взаємний займенник
regular verb	правильне дієслово
reflexive pronoun	зворотний займенник
relative adjective	відносний прикметник
relative pronoun	відносний займенник
reported question	непряме питання
reported speech	непряма мова
request	прохання
<b>S</b>	
secondary members of the sentence	другорядні члени речення
sense perception	чуттєве сприйняття
simple sentence	просте речення
simple verbal predicate	простий дієслівний присудок
singular	однина
special question	спеціальне питання
statement	ствердження
stative verb	дієслово стану
stem of the verb (word)	основа дієслова (слова)
subject	підмет
subject group	група підмета
subject-predicate agreement	узгодження підмета і присудка
subject-predicate unit	граматична основа
subjunctive mood	умовний спосіб
subordinate clause	підрядне речення
substantivized adjective	субстантивований прикметник
succession of actions	послідовність дій
superlative degree	найвищий ступінь
syndetical connection	сполучниковий зв'язок
<b>T</b>	
tag-question	розділове питання
tense	час (дієслова)
tense form	часова форма дієслова
terminative verb	граничне дієслово
transitive verb	перехідне дієслово
two-member sentence	двоскладне речення
<b>U</b>	
uncountable noun	незчислювальний іменник
unextended sentence	непоширене речення
<b>V</b>	
verb	дієслово
verbals = verbids (non-finite forms of the verb)	неособові частини мови
voice	стан
<b>W</b>	
word order	порядок слів
<b>Y</b>	
'yes-no' question	загальне питання

## IRREGULAR VERBS

№	Неозначена форма дієслова The Infinitive	Минулий час Past Indefinite Simple Past	Дієприкметник Past Participle Participle II	Основні значення дієслова
1	2	3	4	5
1	arise	arose	arisen	виникати, походити; підніматися
2	awake	awoke (awaked)	awoken (awaked)	будити, прокидатися
3	be	was/were	been	бути, знаходитися
4	bear	bore	born	носити; народжувати, створювати
5	beat	beat	beaten	бити, лупити
6	become	became	become	зробитися, стати
7	befall	befell	befallen	траплятися, ставатися
8	begin	began	begun	починати(ся)
9	bend	bent	bent	гнути
10	beseech	besought (beseached)	besought (beseached)	заклинати, благати
11	bet	bet	bet	битися об заклад
12	bid	bid	bid	просити
13	bind	bound	bound	зв'язувати, переплітати
14	bite	bit	bitten	кусати (ся)
15	bleed	bled	bled	сходити кров'ю
16	bless	blest (blessed)	blest (blessed)	благословляти
17	blow	blew	blown	дути, роздувати
18	break	broke	broken	ламати(ся), порушувати
19	breed	bred	bred	розводити, вирощувати
20	bring	brought	brought	приносити, доставляти
21	broadcast	broadcast(ed)	broadcast(ed)	передавати по радіо
22	build	built	built	будувати
23	burn	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)	горіти, палати
24	burst	burst	burst	лопнути, вибухнути
25	bust	bust, busted	bust, busted	збанкрутувати, збанкрутувати
26	buy	bought	bought	купувати
27	cast	cast	cast	кидати
28	catch	caught	caught	ловити, хапати
29	choose	chose	chosen	вибирати, добирати
30	cling	clung	clung	чіплятися, липнути
31	come	came	come	приходити
32	cost	cost	cost	коштувати
33	creep	crept	crept	повзати, плазувати
34	cut	cut	cut	різати, рубати, стригти
35	deal	dealt	dealt	розподіляти, торгувати
36	dig	dug	dug	рити, копати
37	dive	dived, dove	dived	пірнати, занурюватися
38	do	did	done	робити, виконувати
39	draw	drew	drawn	тягти, малювати
40	dream	dreamt (dreamed)	dreamt (dreamed)	мріяти, бачити уві сні
41	drink	drank	drunk	пити
42	drive	drove	driven	везти, гнати
43	dwell	dwelt	dwelt	жити, перебувати
44	eat	ate	eaten	їсти

№	Неозначена форма дієслова The Infinitive	Минулий час Past Indefinite Simple Past	Дієприкметник Past Participle Participle II	Основні значення дієслова
45	fall	fell	fallen	падати
46	feed	fed	fed	годувати, вигодовувати
47	feel	felt	felt	почувати (себе)
48	fight	fought	fought	боротися, битися
49	find	found	found	знаходити
50	fit	fit (fitted)	fit (fitted)	підходити, обладнувати
51	flee	fled	fled	тікати, рятуватися
52	fling	flung	flung	кидати, жбурнути, швиргнути
53	fly	flew	flown	літати
54	forbid	forbade	forbidden	забороняти
55	forecast	forecasted (forecast)	forecasted (forecast)	передбачати
56	forget.	forgot	forgotten	забувати
57	forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощати, вибачати
58	forsake	forsook	forsaken	залишати, кидати
59	foresee	foresaw	foreseen	передбачати
60	freeze	froze	frozen	мерзнути, заморожувати
61	get	got	got	одержувати, ставати, робитися
62	give	gave	given	давати
63	go	went	gone	іти, ходити
64	grind	ground	ground	молоти, терти
65	grow	grew	grown	рости, ставати, збільшуватися
66	hang	hung	hung	вішати, висіти
67	have	had	had	мати
68	hear	heard	heard	чути
69	hew	hewed	hewed (hewn)	рубати, різати, тесати
70	hide	hid	hidden	ховати
71	hit	hit	hit	вдаряти
72	hold	held	held	тримати
73	hurt	hurt	hurt	ранити, завдавати болю
74	input	input, inputted	input, inputted	вводити інформацію
75	keep	kept	kept	тримати, зберігати
76	kneel	knelt	knelt	ставати навколішки
77	know	knew	known	знати
78	lay	laid	laid	класти, розкласти, висловлюватися
79	lead	led	led	вести
80	lean	leaned (leant)	leaned (leant)	нахиляти, нагинати
81	leap	leaped (leapt)	leaped (leapt)	стрибати
82	learn	learnt	learnt	вчити(ся), дізнаватися
83	leave	left	left	залишати, заповідати
84	lend	lent	lent	позичати
85	let	let	let	дозволяти, здавати в найм
86	lie	lay	lain	лежати
87	light	lit (lighted)	lit (lighted)	запалювати, засвічувати

№	Неозначена форма дієслова The Infinitive	Минулий час Past Indefinite Simple Past	Дієприкметник Past Participle Participle II	Основні значення дієслова
88	lose	lost	lost	губити, втрачати
89	make	made	made	робити, готувати, змушувати
90	mean	meant	meant	значити, припускати
91	meet	met	met	зустрічати
92	melt	melted	melted (molten)	танути, плавити
93	mislead	misled	misled	вводити в оману
94	mistake	mistook	mistaken	помилятися
95	misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	неправильно зрозуміти
96	mow	mowed	mowed (mown)	косити
97	overhear	overheard	overheard	підслуховувати
98	overpay	overpaid	overpaid	переплачувати
99	overtake	overtook	overtaken	наздоганяти
100	partake	partook	partaken	брати участь
101	pay	paid	paid	платити, винагороджувати
102	plead	pleaded (pled)	pleaded (pled)	звертатися з проханням, клопотатися
103	put	put	put	класти
104	read	read	read	читати
105	rewrite	rewrote	rewritten	переписувати
106	rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt	перебудовувати
107	repay	repaid	repaid	повертати борг
108	rend	rent	rent	роздирати
109	retell	retold	retold	переказувати
110	rid	rid	rid	звільняти
111	ride	rode	ridden	їздити верхи
112	ring	rang	rung	дзвонити
113	rise	rose	risen	підводитися
114	rive	rived	riven	розколювати, розщеплювати
115	run	ran	run	бігти
116	saw	sawed	sawn	пиляти
117	say	said	said ,	сказати
118	see	saw	seen	бачити
119	seek	sought	sought	шукати, домагатися
120	sell	sold	sold	продавати, торгувати
121	send	sent	sent	посилати, відправляти
122	set	set	set	поміщати, заходити (про сонце)
123	sew	sewed	sewed (sewn)	шити, пришивати, зашивати
124	shit	shit	shit	паскудити
125	shake	shook	shaken	трясти, коливатися, тиснути руку
126	shape	shaped	shaped(shapen)	надавати форму
127	shear	sheared	shorn	зрізати, стригти
128	shed	shed	shed	лити
129	shine	shone	shone	сяяти, блищати
130	shoe	shod	shod	взувати, підковувати
131	shoot	shot	shot	стріляти
132	show	showed	shown	показувати
133	shred	shred(ed)	shred(ed)	шматувати

№	Неозначена форма дієслова The Infinitive	Минулий час Past Indefinite Simple Past	Дієприкметник Past Participle Participle II	Основні значення дієслова
134	shrink	shrank	shrunk	стискатись, скорочуватися
135	shrive	shrove(shrived)	shriven (shrived)	сповідати
136	shut	shut	shut	закривати
137	sing	sang	sung	співати
138	sink	sank	sunk	поринати, занурюватися, тонути
139	sit	sit	sat	сидіти
140	slay	slew	slain	вбивати
141	sleep	slept	slept	спати
142	slide	slid	slid	ковзати
143	sling	slung	slung	кидати, підкидати
144	slink	slunk	slunk	іти нишком
145	slit	slit	slit	розрізати, роздирати
146	smell	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)	нюхати, пахнути
147	smite	smote	smitten	вдаряти
148	sow	sowed	sown	сіяти
149	speak	spoke	spoken	говорити, розмовляти
150	speed	sped (speeded)	sped (speeded)	поспішати
151	spell	spelt (spelled)	spelt (spelled)	читати по літерам
152	spend	spent	spent	витрачати, проводити (час)
153	spill	spilt	spilt	розливати, розсипати
154	spin	spun (span)	spun	прясти
155	spit	spat	spat	плювати
156	split	split	split	розщеплювати, розривати, розколювати
157	spoil	spoilt	spoilt	псувати
158	spread	spread	spread	поширювати
159	spring	sprang	sprung	стрибати
160	stand	stood	stood	стояти, ставити, триматися
161	steal	stole	stolen	красти
162	stick	stuck	stuck	встромляти, липнути приклеювати, дотримуватися
163	sting	stung	stung	жалити, кусати
164	stink	stank (stunk)	stank (stunk)	смердіти
165	strew	strewed	strewn	сипати, розкидати
166	stride	strode	stridden	крокувати
167	strike	struck	struck	бити, страйкувати
168	string	strung	strung	натягати
169	strive	strove	striven	старатися
170	sunburn	sunburned	sunburned	засмагати
171	swear	swore	sworn	присягатися, божитися
172	sweep	swept	swept	мести, підмітати
173	swell	swelled	swollen/swelled	розпухати, набрякати, збільшуватися
174	swim	swam	swum	плавати
175	swing	swung	swung	гойдатися, коливатися, махати
176	take	took	taken	брати, хапати
177	teach	taught	taught	вчити, навчати
178	tear	tore	torn	рвати

№	Неозначена форма дієслова The Infinitive	Минулий час Past Indefinite Simple Past	Дієприкметник Past Participle Participle II	Основні значення дієслова
179	tell	told	told	казати, повідомляти
180	think	thought	thought	думати
181	thrive	throve	thriven	процвітати, квітнути
182	throw	threw	thrown	кидати
183	thrust	thrust	thrust	штовхати
184	tread	trod	trodden	ступати, топтати, давити
185	unbend	unbent	unbent	розгинати
186	undergo	underwent	undergone	випробовувати, перевіряти, зазнавати
187	underlie	underlay	underlain	лежати під чимось
188	underpay	underpaid	underpaid	недоплатити
189	understand	understood	understood	розуміти
190	undertake	undertook	undertaken	починати, розпочинати
191	underwrite	underwrote	underwritten	підписувати, підтверджувати
192	upset	upset	upset	перекидати, засмучувати
193	wake	woke	woken	прокидатися
194	wear	wore	worn	носити
195	weave	wove	woven	ткати, плести
196	weed	wed	wed	полоти грядки, сапати
197	weep	wept	wept	плакати, лити сльози
198	win	won	won	перемагати
199	wind	wound	wound	заводити, крутитися
200	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	брати назад, викликати
201	withhold	withheld	withheld	утримувати
202	withstand	withstood	withstood	опиратися
203	wring	wrung	wrung	скручувати, чавити, видирати
204	write	wrote	written	писати



## MODAL VERBS

### CAN (COULD)

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Ability, capability	a) can (can't) – the present tense; b) could (couldn't) – the past tense	може, міг, могли	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, interrogative, negative	to be able to, to know how to do smth, to have the ability to do smth	a) He can perform complicated operations. He is a very skilful doctor. Can you swim well? b) He could not feel or hear anything.
2. Possibility due to circumstances	a) can (can't) – the present tense; b) could (couldn't) – the past tense	можу, може, міг, могли	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, interrogative, negative	to be able to, it's possible to do smth	a) At a chemist's shop you can get medicines of all kinds. b) I couldn't come, I was ill.
3. Permission	a) can – the present tense; b) could – the past tense in reported speech	може, можете	Simple Infinitive	affirmative	to permit, to be allowed	a) You can take my car. b) Mother said that I could come a bit later.
4. Prohibition	can't	не можна	Simple Infinitive	negative		You can't visit him, he has an infectious disease. Children can't play with matches.
5. Request	can, could (a polite request)	чи можу я, чи не могли б ви	Simple Infinitive	interrogative		Can (could) you give me some medicine for my headache? Could you help us?
6. Uncertainty, astonishment	can, could	невже, чи може бути, щоб	Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive, Perfect Continuous Infinitive	interrogative (general question)	Is it possible that...? Do you believe that...? Can it be that...?	Can (could) he be her husband? He is twice as old as she is. Can (could) she still be running a high temperature? Can (could) he have been operated on? Can (could) they have been keeping to a diet for a few years?
7. Incredulity, improbability, doubt	can't, couldn't	не може бути, щоб, неймовірно, щоб; навряд чи	Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive	negative	it's hardly possible that..., I refuse to believe that..., I don't think it's possible that...,	He can't (couldn't) be her husband. She can't (couldn't) still be running a high temperature. He can't (couldn't)

					it's next to impossible that..., I don't believe that..., I doubt that..., it's impossible that..., it's incredible that..., it's doubtful that...	have been operated on. They can't (couldn't) have been keeping to a diet for a few years.
8. Suggestion, reproach	could – Subjunctive II form	міг би, могли б	Simple Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive		would be able to do smth, would have been able to do smth	Why don't you want the doctor come? He could prescribe some medicine to bring down the fever (if he came). You could have stayed in bed for a few days. But you didn't.
9. For emotional colouring	can, could (in present time contexts)	І що вони...? І про що вони...? І як він...? І що це вона...?	Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive, Perfect Continuous Infinitive	interrogative (special questions)		What can (could) you know of such things? What can (could) they be speaking about? How can (could) you have made such a mistake? What can (could) he have been doing all this time?

#### MAY (MIGHT)

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Permission	a) may – the present tense; b) might – the past tense	можеш, можете	Simple Infinitive	affirmative	to be allowed, to be permitted	a) I have got two historical novels. So you may take one of them. b) Mother said you might take some oranges.
2. Request	a) may – the present tense; b) might – the past tense; c) might – Subjunctive II	можна, може	Simple Infinitive	interrogative		a) May I see him in the hospital on Tuesday? b) He asked me if he might rest for an hour. c) Might I spend the weekend with you?
3. Prohibition	may not	не смій, не можна, ні в якому разі	Simple Infinitive	negative		– May I have a look at the picture? – No, you may not. I don't want you to. You may not go out today.
4. Possibility due to circumstances	a) may – the present tense; b) might – the past tense	можеш, могли	Simple Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive	affirmative		a) Let's meet at 5 o'clock at the post-office if the place and time are convenient to everybody.

			(if the possibility existed, but it wasn't realized)			We may get there by bus. b) He said he might get to work by the Metro. Be careful! You might have broken the vase.
5. Supposition implying doubt, uncertainty	may, might	МОЖЛИВО, МОЖЕ БУТИ	Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive, Perfect Continuous Infinitive	affirmative, negative	perhaps, may be	She looks pale. She may (might) be ill, but I think she may (might) not have a high temperature. I think the doctor may (might) be examining the patient now. Nick is missing today. He may (might) have been taken ill. She may have been staying in bed for a week.
6. Disapproval or reproach	might – Subjunctive II	МІГ БИ, МОГЛИ Б	Simple Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive	affirmative		Your child is shivering with cold. You might be more attentive to him. Tell him to put on his jacket. You answered his invitation with a cold refusal. You might have been more polite.

#### MUST

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of the rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Obligation, necessity with no freedom of choice or necessity from the speaker's point of view	must – in present or future time contexts, in past time contexts in Indirect speech	повинен	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, interrogative	to be obliged to, it's necessary for smb to do smth	If you have a new heart attack you must be taken to hospital. What must he do to keep fit? He said he must go to the dentist.
2. Prohibition	mustn't	не повинен, не можна	Simple Infinitive	negative	to be forbidden	Students mustn't stay away from classes without a good reason. You mustn't stay in the sun.
3. Emphatic request or advice, invitation, command	must, mustn't	повинен	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative		You mustn't miss the film. It's worth while seeing it. You must drop in at the chemist's on your way home. You must come and see our baby.
4. Supposition, implying assurance, strong probability	must		Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive, Perfect	only in the affirmative form in affirmative and negative sentences	probably, evidently, surely, no doubt, undoubtedly, it's clear that, in all	He must be at home now. They must be admiring the beautiful flowers in Hyde Park now. They must have been watching swans and ducks floating on the pond for an

			Continuous Infinitive		probability	hour. She must have got used to their customs and traditions.
--	--	--	-----------------------	--	-------------	--

### TO HAVE (GOT) TO

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Obligation, necessity arising out of circumstances	have (has) to, had to, will have to, have (has) got to (in colloq. English.)  Do (does)... have to? Did... have to ...? Have (has)... got to...? (colloq.)  Had to, didn't have to, would (not) have to, would have/had to (in the Oblique Mood)	доводиться, повинен, змушений	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, interrogative	to be obliged	I often have to come here. Do you often have to come here? She doesn't have to get up early. Did you have to wait for us? If you don't take care of yourself, you'll have to consult a doctor. I wondered how long he had to stay in the hospital. Have I got to wake him up for the medicine? But for the bad weather we wouldn't have to stay in. If I had to answer such a question I would say the same. If he had not fallen ill we would not have had to send for a doctor. If you were more dutiful you would not have had to go there once again yesterday.
2. Absence of necessity	don't (doesn't) have to, didn't have to, haven't (hasn't) got to	не треба, немає необхідності	Simple Infinitive	negative	needn't do	You don't have to stay in here with me, if it bothers you. You haven't got to be operated on, have you?

### TO BE TO

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Obligation arising out of a plan or an arrangement	am (is, are) to, was (were) to	повинен, повинні були	Simple Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive (an unfulfilled plan)	affirmative, interrogative	to plan, to make a plan, to arrange, to decide	Today I am to go to the post-office. When are you to go there? Yesterday I was to have gone to the post-office to send a parcel, but I wasn't able to (a planned action was not carried out).
2. An order, an instruction	am (is, are) to, was (were) to	повинен, повинні були	Simple Infinitive	affirmative		If your letter contains anything valuable you are to register it. You are to stay in bed.
3. Prohibition	are not, was (were) not	не смій	Simple Infinitive	negative		You are not to leave this room till I come.

4. Something thought of as unavoidable	am (is, are) to, was (were) to	судилося (не судилося)	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative		I was to get a letter from her. I still hope to get a letter from her, but it wasn't to be.
5. Possibility	am (is, are) to, was (were) not	можна	Simple Infinitive Passive	affirmative, interrogative		He is to be trusted. Nothing was to be done.

### SHOULD (OUGHT TO)

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Obligation weakened to the sense of advice, desirability	should, shouldn't Should I...? ought to, oughtn't to Ought I to...?	треба, слід, слід було	Simple Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive (indicates that a desirable action was not carried out, an undesirable action was carried out)	affirmative, negative, interrogative	I advise you to do... I advise you not to do... I recommend you to do... I urge you to do... It's advisable for you to do... I would advise you to do...	You should (ought to) help your friend. He is in trouble. You should (ought to) be getting ready for your report. You should (ought to) have changed for the Underground, Shevchenko Street is far away from here. He shouldn't (oughtn't to) have left London without visiting Hyde Park.
2. Instructions, corrections	should, shouldn't Should I...? ought to, oughtn't to Ought I to...?	треба, слід	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative, interrogative		This preposition should be pronounced with a neutral sound in an unstressed position. You should (ought to) take this medicine three times a day before your meal.
3. Disapproval, reproach for failing to do what was one's duty or moral obligation	should, shouldn't, ought to, oughtn't to,  should / ought to have done, shouldn't / oughtn't to have done	слід, слід було б, треба, треба було б	Continuous Infinitive (refers the action to the present), Perfect Infinitive (indicates that the action was not carried out)	affirmative, negative		You should (ought to) be speaking more clearly. You shouldn't (oughtn't to) have allowed him to go out so early after his illness.
4. Supposition implying probability	should, shouldn't, ought to, oughtn't to	напевно, очевидно, ймовірно	Simple Infinitive (refers the action to the present or future), Perfect Infinitive (refers the action to the past)	affirmative, negative	Very likely he... It's likely he... Most likely he... Very probably he... I think it probable	This dish should (ought to) be very delicious as it has been cooked by mother. This dish is very delicious. It should (ought to) have been cooked by mother.

					that... I expect he... Probably not... It's unlikely that...	
5. Emotional colouring	Should I...?		Simple Infinitive	interrogative		Why should I? Why should you help him? How should I know?

### SHALL

Meaning	Forms of the modal verb	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1. Promise, strong intention	shall, shan't	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative	You are sure to get... I promise that they won't punish you.	Don't worry, you shall have a minute's rest before the meeting begins. You shan't know about this.
2. Threat or warning	shall, shan't	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative		That day shall come. Tell him he shall be punished for his behaviour. You shall fail at the exam if you don't work hard.
3. Asking for instructions	Shall I...? Shall he (she, they)...?	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	interrogative	Must I do it? Do you want me to do it? Am I to do it?	Shall I read the article again? – No, you need not. Shall he (she, they) start speaking on the topic? Shall we start? – Let's.
4. Compulsion or strict order	shall, shan't	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative	I shall make him do it. I shall get you do it.	You shall stop reading fiction books at your lectures. He shan't prevent us from working at the problem.

### WILL (WOULD)

Meaning	Forms of the modal verbs	Ways of rendering into Ukrainian	Forms of the Infinitive	Kinds of sentences	Other ways of expressing the same meaning	Sentence patterns
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1. Volition (willingness, readiness, consent, intention, determination)	I will (would), I won't (wouldn't), we will (would), we won't (wouldn't)	хочу (бажаю), не бажаю, не допущу, не дозволю	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative	I intend... I am willing... We wish... We want... I'm determined...	I will tell him about your coming, so he can meet you. I've often spoken at public meetings but this time I won't.
2. Request (polite request, polite invitation and suggestion)	will, would		Simple Infinitive	interrogative	Could you give...? May I ask you to give...?	Will you pass me the salt? Would you come to tea this afternoon? Will you have another cup of tea?
3. Command	will	by emphatic intonation	Indefinite Infinitive	affirmative	imperative sentences: Do as I say.	You will do as I say.

4. Insistence	will	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	affirmative		He will try to mend it himself (he insists on mending it himself).
5. Resistance, persistence or refusal to perform an action with lifeless things	will (would), won't (wouldn't)	все одно (робить), стійко відмовляється, ніяк не, продовжує робити	Simple Infinitive	affirmative, negative	He insists on... He keeps on... She refuses... They continue...	I asked him to tell me the truth, but he wouldn't. I couldn't explain anything because the words wouldn't come.
6. Habitual or recurrent actions, characteristic behaviour or quality	a) will – the present tense (not common); b) would – the past tense (literary style)	звичайно, бувало	Simple Infinitive	affirmative	used to...	She will spend a whole evening listening to music. They would often have dinner in the garden in summer. You would be naughty sometimes, wouldn't you? Oil will float on water.
7. Inevitability, smth. naturally expected	will	by emphatic intonation	Simple Infinitive	affirmative	by modal verbs	Truth will out. What will be will be.
8. Prediction, certainty	will, would	напевно, очевидно	Simple Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive	affirmative	must, evidently, probably	That will be my wife. That would be our train. Jane will come back by tomorrow.

## SUMMARY CHART OF MODAL VERBS

Meaning 1	Modal verb: example 2
ability, capability	<b>can / could:</b> I can swim. He can speak French. We couldn't lift that bag. Could he read at five?
possibility	<b>can / could:</b> You can take this book at the library. <b>may / might:</b> You may order a taxi. <b>to be to + Passive Infinitive:</b> He is often to be seen here. He is to be trusted.
obligation	<b>must:</b> I must finish this work today. You must go there with me. / Must I go there with you? <b>to have to:</b> You'll have to come once again. Did you have to wait for a long time? Sorry, but you will have to wait a bit. <b>to be to:</b> I am to be at home at six. We were to have met at 6, but he didn't turn up. <b>ought to:</b> You ought to warn them. You ought to have done it yesterday. <b>should:</b> You should stay here. You should have warned us beforehand. <b>shall:</b> He shall do as I say.
command, order	<b>must:</b> You must leave the room at once! <b>to be to:</b> You are to say nothing to anybody. <b>shall:</b> You shall do nothing of the sort! <b>will:</b> Will you be quiet!
necessity, absence of necessity	<b>need:</b> Need I come? I wonder if I need go there. You needn't go there. You needn't have gone there then.
permission	<b>may:</b> You may take any book. He said that I might smoke in that room. <b>can:</b> You can use my car. He said that I could use his car.
prohibition	<b>mustn't:</b> You mustn't get up! <b>may not:</b> You may not go out. <b>cannot:</b> You can't cross the street here. <b>to be not to:</b> You are not to leave the room.
advisability	<b>ought to:</b> You ought to see a doctor. <b>should:</b> You should stay in bed.
negative advice, weakened prohibition	<b>oughtn't to:</b> You really oughtn't to buy this car. <b>shouldn't:</b> You shouldn't be so impatient.
request	<b>may / might:</b> May / might I come in? <b>can / could:</b> Can / could you help me? <b>will / would:</b> Will / would you tell me?
doubt, improbability	<b>can't / couldn't:</b> He can't / couldn't be so old. They cannot / couldn't have been late. They cannot / couldn't be sleeping now. They cannot / couldn't have been sleeping for 3 hours.



Meaning	Modal verb: example
surprise	<b>can / could:</b> Can / could he be so old? Can / could they have left? Can / could they be sleeping now? Can / could they have been sleeping for 3 hours?
supposition, prediction, certainty	<b>may / might:</b> He may / might be ill. He may / might be playing tennis in the yard. They may / might have left. <b>must:</b> He must be ill. They must be sleeping now. He must have left. <b>ought to:</b> You ought to be hungry. <b>should:</b> The film should be interesting. <b>will:</b> This will be my wife.
reproach	<b>could / might / ought to / should + Perfect Infinitive:</b> You could / might be more polite. You could have opened the door for me. You might have come earlier. You ought to have helped him. You shouldn't have done that.
promise	<b>shall:</b> I shall do as you say.
resistance	<b>won't / wouldn't:</b> The car won't start.
inevitability	<b>will / would:</b> What will be will be. <b>to be to:</b> He was never to see her again.
threat	<b>shall:</b> You shall never see me again.
courage to do smth	<b>dare:</b> How dare he speak to you like that? Dare you ask him?
suggestion, offer	<b>shall:</b> Shall I read? – Do, please. Shall we start? – Let's.
willingness, volition, intention	<b>will / would:</b> I will speak. He wouldn't answer.

## THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB (THE VERBALS)

### THE INFINITIVE The Characteristics of the Infinitive

Characteristics		Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinctions		The Infinitive is used	
Nominal	Verbal	Simultaneous Actions	Prior Actions	without <i>to</i>	with <i>to</i>
<p>The infinitive can be used:</p> <p>1) as a subject: Never <u>to be late</u> was her unbreakable rule.</p> <p>2) as a predicative: Her aim was <u>to become</u> a doctor.</p> <p>3) as an object: I was glad <u>to see my fellow students</u> again.</p>	<p>1) The infinitive has aspect, tense and voice distinctions.</p> <p>2) The infinitive can take an object; if the verb is transitive the infinitive has a direct object: She promised <u>to write letters</u> regularly.</p>	<p><b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> The trouble with college is that you are expected <u>to know</u> such a lot of things you've never heard.</p> <p><b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> She hated <u>to be laughed at</u> because of her ignorance.</p>	<p><b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> The girl was glad <u>to have met</u> him.</p> <p><b>The Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> Judy was happy <u>to have been sent</u> to college to continue her education.</p> <p><b>The Perfect Continuous Infinitive:</b> She was sorry <u>to have been treating</u> him so cruelly so long.</p>	<p>1) after the auxiliary and modal (defective) verbs <i>shall, will, do, may, can, must</i>;</p> <p>2) after some verbs expressing physical perception: <i>to hear, to see, to feel, to perceive, to watch, to notice, to observe</i>;</p> <p>3) after the verbs <i>to let, to make</i> (примувувати), <i>to bid</i>; also after the expression <i>I won't have</i>;</p> <p>4) after the verb <i>to know</i> in the sense of <i>to experience, to observe</i>;</p>	<p>1) after <i>ought to, have to, be to</i>;</p> <p>2) after the verbs <i>to hear, to see, to make</i> in the Passive Voice.</p>
	<p>3) The infinitive can be modified by an adverb: She promised <u>to write letters</u> regularly.</p>	<p><b>The Continuous Infinitive:</b> It was pleasant <u>to be breathing</u> fresh air again.</p>		<p>5) after the verb <i>to help</i> the infinitive is often used without <i>to</i>;</p> <p>6) After the following expressions: <i>had better, had best, would have, would rather (... than), would sooner (... than), cannot but (can but), does nothing but..., need scarcely (only, hardly)</i>;</p> <p>7) in special questions beginning with <i>why</i> when the infinitive has the force of a predicate.</p>	

**Note:** After the past tense forms of the verbs *to mean, to expect, to hope, to intend* the Perfect Infinitive shows that the hope or intention was not carried out. E.g. The children intended to have taken their mother for a beautiful drive away into the country.

#### The Infinitive as a Subject

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	Phrases to memorize
A subject	<p>1) <u>Never to study</u> at night was her unbreakable rule.</p> <p>2) It was a great pleasure for Daddy-Long-Legs <u>to be thinking</u> all the time about Judy.</p>	<p><b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> It was pleasant <u>to observe</u> the fresh flowers in the room.</p> <p><b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> <u>To be presented</u> with flowers was very pleasant for her.</p> <p><b>The Continuous Infinitive:</b> It was very strange <u>to be talking</u> to a newcomer like that.</p> <p><b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> <u>To have seen</u> Judy was enough for her</p>	<p>1) It's always easy to...</p> <p>2) It was hard to...</p> <p>3) It is so important to...</p> <p>4) It gives him pleasure to...</p> <p>5) It's dangerous to...</p> <p>6) It's wise of him to...</p> <p>7) It does people a lot of good to...</p> <p>8) It won't do you any harm to...</p> <p>9) It has become his habit to...</p> <p>10) It surprised me to...</p> <p>11) It made me feel awkward to...</p>

		guardian. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> <u>To have been informed</u> about her arrival was a real pleasure for him. <b>The Perfect Continuous Infinitive:</b> It was annoying <u>to have been waiting</u> for his letters for quite a time	12) It was natural (useless, strange, annoying, difficult) to... 13) It is necessary to ... 14) It is good (better) to ... 15) It is bad (worse) to ... 16) It is (of) no use to ... 17) It is not much (little) use to... 18) It is impossible to... 19) It is quite possible to ...
--	--	---	--

### The Infinitive as a Predicative

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	Peculiarities
Part of a compound nominal predicative: 1) a predicative; 2) part of a predicative	1) After her long trip to New York her first desire was <u>to take a bath</u> . 2) Judy was by nature a sunny soul and she was pleasant <u>to deal with</u> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> Our aim is <u>to keep</u> every person healthy and happy <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> He was hungry but his first desire was <u>to be shaven</u> .	1) In sentences with an infinitive subject the predicative infinitive denotes an action that follows, or results from, the action of the subject infinitive. 2) As a subject of a compound nominal predicative with an infinitive predicative can function: a) nouns describing situations: <i>action, advice, aim, ambition, attempt, business, consequence, custom, desire, difficulty, duty, experience, function, habit, happiness, hope, idea, ideal, instruction, intention, job, method, need, object, order, plan, principle, problem, purpose, reason, risk, role, rule, task, thing, wish, etc.</i> ; b) the pronoun <i>all</i> or the substantivized superlatives <i>the most</i> and <i>the least</i> with the attributive clause attached to them; c) a gerund or by a what-clause: 3) A predicative infinitive phrase may be introduced by the conjunctive adverbs and pronouns <i>how, when, where, what, what</i> .

### The Infinitive as Part of a Compound Verbal Predicate

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	The Infinitive is used after
1) Part of a compound verbal modal predicative	1) He <i>must have been</i> an excellent swimmer years ago. 2) Old Burton said: "You <i>had better come back and see</i> me in another thirty-five years". 3) Judy thought: "I'd <i>rather read</i> plain books." 4) The fire <i>is certain to produce</i> a panic in the morning.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> You must <u>drop in</u> at the chemist's on your way home. <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> Could she <u>be taken ill</u> so often? <b>The Continuous Infinitive:</b> Quite an army of people must <u>be living</u> from hand to mouth in the slums of the East End. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> She might <u>have told him</u> John was going to be there. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> Could she <u>have been taken</u> to hospital? <b>The Perfect Continuous Infinitive:</b> She couldn't <u>have been watching</u> swans and ducks floating on the pond for an hour.	1) modal verbs <i>can, may, must, to be to, to have to, should, ought, will, would, shall, need, dare</i> . 2) verbs which do not express actions (or state) but denote modality(intention, determination, desire, etc.): <i>to intend, to try, to fail, to hope, to expect, to wish, etc.</i> 3) the combinations <i>to be obliged, to be compelled, to be willing, to be ready, to be eager, etc.</i> which have modal meaning. 4) the construction <i>to be going to...</i> , which has often modal force (збиратись щось зробити): 5) the following phraseological combinations: <i>had better (best), had rather, would rather, would sooner, would have</i> which impart modality to the action expressed by the infinitive. 6) verbs and expressions used in the predicate of sentences containing the subjective infinitive construction: a) verbs of saying ( <i>to announce, to declare, to</i>

			<i>report, to say, to state</i> ), mental activity ( <i>to believe, to consider, to expect, to find, to know, to mean, to presume, to regard, to suppose, to think, to understand</i> ),
			sense perception ( <i>to feel, to hear, to see, to watch</i> ), the verb <i>to make</i> ; b) intransitive verbs ( <i>to seem, to appear, to prove, to turn out, to happen, to chance</i> ); c) phrases <i>to be likely, to be unlikely, to be sure, to be certain</i> .
2) Part of a compound verbal aspect predicate.	A bit of money <u>used to come in</u> for Burton once a quarter. She suddenly <u>began to speak</u> .	<b>The Indefinite Infinitive Active:</b> I sat down and commenced <u>to read</u> but I could see he was not following me.	The verbs expressing the beginning, the duration, the repetition, the end of the action: <i>to begin, to start, to commence, to continue, to cease, used to + Infinitive, would + Infinitive</i>

### The Infinitive as an Object

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	The Infinitive is used after
An object	1) Judy was happy <u>to continue</u> her education. 2) I found it utterly cruel <u>to offer</u> the man to swim when he was not in good condition.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> George was happy <u>to get</u> the first prize. <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> He was pleased <u>to be given</u> the chance to see her. <b>The Continuous Infinitive:</b> He is glad <u>to be training</u> young sportsmen again. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> Mr. Burton wasn't sorry <u>to have sent</u> his namesake to death <b>The Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> He was fortunate <u>to have been taken</u> to hospital immediately. <b>The Perfect Continuous Infinitive:</b> He was sorry <u>to have been arguing</u> with them so long.	1) verbs that take only one object: <i>to agree, to arrange, to attempt, to care (to like), to choose, to claim, to consent, to decide, to deserve, to determine, to expect, to fail, to fear, to forget, to hesitate, to hope, to intend, to learn, to like, to long, to love, to manage, to mean, to neglect, to omit, to plan, to prefer, to pretend, to refuse, to regret, to remember, to swear, to tend, etc.</i> 2) Verbs that take two objects, the first of which is a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and the second an infinitive. These are the verbs of inducement; they all have the general meaning "to persuade, to cause to do something": <i>to advise, to allow, to ask, to beg, to cause, to command, to compel, to direct, to encourage, to forbid, to force, to have, to impel, to implore, to induce, to instruct, to invite, to leave, to let, to make, to order, to permit, to persuade, to recommend, to request, to require, to tell, to urge.</i> 3) some adjectives and adjectivized participles: <i>anxious, apt, bound, careful, curious, determined, difficult, eager, easy, entitled, fit, free, hard, impatient, inclined, interested, keen, liable, powerless, prepared, quick, ready, reluctant, resolved, set, slow, worthy.</i>
			When used with these adjectives, the infinitive denotes actions either simultaneous with, or posterior to, the states expressed by the predicates, and cannot therefore be used in perfect forms. 4) some adjectives and participles that express certain psychological states which are the result of the action expressed by the infinitive object, so the latter therefore always denotes an action slightly preceding the state expressed by the predicate, and can have both non-perfect and perfect forms: <i>amused, annoyed, astonished, delighted, distressed, frightened, furious, glad, grateful, happy, horrified, pleased, proud, puzzled, relieved, scared, sorry, surprised, thankful, touched.</i> 5) certain <b>statives</b> denoting psychological states,

			such as <i>afraid, agog, ashamed</i> 6) the introductory object <i>it</i> : <i>to find, to consider, to think, to make, to feel</i> <b>it</b> <i>interesting, necessary, impossible, cruel, useful, hopeful, hopeless, important to do smth</i>
--	--	--	---

### The Infinitive as an Attribute

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	The Infinitive is used after
An attribute	1) I have no desire <u>to change</u> my mind. 2) This is a chance <u>not to be missed</u> . 3) There was a great deal <u>to tell</u> you. 4) There's nothing <u>to worry</u> about. 5) She was the first <u>to guess</u> what he was driving at. 6) He was the last <u>to realize</u> the danger.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> I have nobody <u>to say</u> a kind word to me. <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> We are different kinds of people and there's nothing more <u>to be said</u> . <b>The Continuous Infinitive Active:</b> For a moment I had a strong desire <u>to be drinking</u> some hot milk. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> He was one of the very few men <u>to have seen</u> everything with his own eyes. <b>The Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> She was one of the first <u>to have been</u> informed about that exciting news.	1) abstract nouns: <i>time, hope, desire, love, hate, etc.</i> 2) class nouns: <i>a patient, a doctor, a sportsman, a footballer, etc.</i> 3) substantivized quantitative adjectives ( <i>much, little, a good deal, plenty, no more, no less, little more, enough, etc.</i> ). 4) indefinite and negative pronouns in <i>-body, -thing, -one</i> ( <i>somebody, something, anybody, anything, etc.</i> ). 5) substantivized ordinal numerals ( <i>the first, the second, etc.</i> ). 6) substantivized adjectives <i>next</i> and <i>last</i> . 7) the noun-substitute <i>one</i> .

### The Infinitive as an Adverbial Modifier

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	The Ways of Introducing the Infinitive
1) an adverbial modifier of purpose	1) You must be a good player <u>to be</u> captain of a team. 2) He came to my office one day <i>in order</i> <u>to see</u> me and <u>ask</u> for a job. You'd better wait outside so as <u>to be</u> at hand if I want you.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active and Passive:</b> I have come here <u>not to be insulted</u> but <u>to talk</u> to you as a friend.	1) by the conjunctions <i>in order to, so as</i> ; limiting participles <i>just, only</i> . 2) without any conjunction.
2) an adverbial modifier of subsequent events	1) He arrived at three o'clock <b>to hear</b> that Fleur had gone with the car at ten. 2) She returned to London in a few days, <i>only</i> <u>to learn</u> that Bess had gone to the continent.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> He hurried to the house <i>only</i> <u>to find</u> it empty.	1) by the particles <i>only, merely, simply</i>
3) an adverbial modifier of consequence	1) The opportunity was <i>too</i> good <u>to be missed</u> . 2) He was old <i>enough</i> <u>to be</u> her father. 3) He was not <i>such</i> a man <i>as</i> <u>to break</u> the promise. 4) Mr. Burton was <i>so</i> cruel <i>as</i> <u>to send</u> a man to death.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> He was <i>such</i> a man <i>as</i> <u>to treat</u> people cruelly. <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> The European championship in figure skating was exciting <i>enough</i> <u>to be followed</u> with great interest.	1) <i>too</i> hot (skilled, excited, shocked, frightened, impressed, angry) to do smth.; 2) clever (experienced, skilled, strong, old, sharp, brave) <i>enough</i> to do smth.; 3) <i>so</i> cruel (impressed, careless) <i>as</i> to do smth.; 4) <i>such</i> a man (a fool, a woman, a student, a sportsman) <i>as</i> to do smth.
4) an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances	1) Young Burton swam to the creek of Tarumi never <u>to turn up</u> . 2) He turned <u>to look</u> at me with those kind and candid blue eyes of his.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> At the age of seventeen the boy left for South Africa never <u>to return</u> home.	1) sometimes by the adverb <i>never</i> , the particle <i>only</i> .

	3) Mr. Burton managed to get to Tarumi at half past twelve only <u>to learn</u> his namesake hadn't turned up.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> He returned from the office <u>to be struck</u> by that terrible news.	
5) an adverbial modifier of comparison	1) He opened his mouth <i>wide as if to speak</i> . 2) He turned away <i>as though to go</i> out of the room. 3) She seemed more anxious <u>to listen</u> to the troubles of others <i>than discuss</i> her own.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> He said he had more important things to do than <u>look for</u> a vacancy for him. <b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Passive:</b> She opened her eyes wide <i>as if to be told</i> something horrible.	1) by the conjunctions <i>as if, as though, than</i>
6) an adverbial modifier of condition	1) I'll thank you <u>to take your hands off me</u> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> <u>To touch</u> it one would believe that it was the best of furs.	
7) an adverbial modifier of exception	1) I had nothing to do <i>but wait</i> . 2) There is nothing to do <i>except turn back</i> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> What could I do <i>but submit</i> ?	1) by the prepositions <i>but, except</i> (in negative and interrogative sentences)
8) an adverbial modifier of time	1) His father lived <u>to be ninety</u> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> Go away! I shudder <u>to see you here</u> .	
9) an adverbial modifier of cause	1) He was smart <u>to win</u> this scholarship. 2) What an idiot I was not <u>to have thought</u> of it before.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> She was silly <u>to come here</u> . <b>The Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> They are out of their minds <u>to have sent you here!</u>	

### The Infinitive as Parenthesis

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinction	Phrases to be memorized
Parenthesis	<u>To crown it all</u> , I had an accident the other day. <u>To begin with</u> , there was not much to listen to.	<b>The Non-Perfect Infinitive Active:</b> <u>To make things still worse</u> , I've caught a cold.	<i>to begin with, to be (quite) frank, to be sure, to make matters worse, to put it mildly, to say the least, to tell the truth, to speak the truth, needless to say, strange to say, so to speak, to make (cut) a long story short, to crown all, to be more precise, to say nothing of, to put it in a nutshell ..., etc.</i>



**THE GERUND**  
**The Characteristics of the Gerund**

Characteristics		Tense, Voice Distinctions		Peculiarities
Nominal	Verbal	Simultaneous Actions	Prior Actions	
<p>The Gerund may be:</p> <p>1) used as a subject: <u>Swimming</u> is just delightful there.</p> <p>2) used as a predicative: My favourite outdoor winter sport is <u>figure-skating</u>.</p> <p>3) used as an object: I hate <u>seeing</u> people <u>off</u>, I prefer <u>being seen off</u> myself.</p> <p>4) preceded by a preposition: I can boast of <u>having seen</u> London.</p> <p>5) modified by a possessive pronoun: His <u>being</u> so slow is very annoying.</p>	<p>The Gerund:</p> <p>1) has tense and voice distinctions: <i>seeing off, having seen off, having been seen off</i></p> <p>2) can be modified by an adverb: She burst out <u>crying bitterly</u>.</p> <p>3) can take an object; if the verb is transitive, it has a direct object: They can't get good crops without <u>cultivating soil</u>.</p>	<p><b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active:</b> I hate <u>being</u> on sick leave and staying in bed.</p> <p><b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive:</b> He had a feeling of <u>being watched</u>.</p>	<p><b>The Perfect Gerund Active:</b> It serves you right for <u>having disobeyed</u> me.</p> <p><b>The Perfect Gerund Passive:</b> I've never heard of the house <u>having been painted</u> once since it was built.</p>	<p>1) The Gerund is rendered in Ukrainian by a noun, an infinitive, by дієприслівник, by a subordinate clause.</p> <p>2) After the verbs <i>to remember, to excuse, to forgive, to thank</i> and after the prepositions <i>on (upon), after, without</i> the Non-Perfect Gerund is used to denote a prior action: <i>I hardly remember ever <u>seeing</u> a better game. Young people enter college after <u>finishing</u> high school at 18.</i></p> <p>3) After the verbs <i>to want, to need, to deserve, to require</i>, and the adjective <i>worth</i></p>
<p>6) modified by a noun in a Possessive Case: She objected to her <u>son's travelling</u> by the sea.</p>				<p>The Gerund is used in the active form though it is a passive meaning: <i>My watch needs <u>repairing</u>. The film is amusing. It's worth <u>seeing</u>. The sportsman deserves <u>praising</u>.</i></p>

**The Gerund as a Subject**

Function	Sentence Pattern	Voice, Tense Distinction		Patterns to memorize
A Subject	<p>1) <u>Flying</u> is a thrilling thing.</p> <p>2) <u>Your being</u> indifferent irritates me.</p> <p>3) It's no use <u>discussing</u> it now.</p> <p>4) It's worth while <u>seeing</u> the ballet.</p> <p>5) There was <u>no persuading</u> him, as he was too stubborn.</p>	<p><b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b></p> <p><b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b></p> <p><b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b></p> <p><b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b></p>	<p>It's no good your <u>trying</u> to find an excuse.</p> <p>Their <u>being bothered</u> amused me.</p> <p>His <u>having failed</u> at the examinations was a great disappointment to his mother.</p> <p>Mary's <u>having being put</u> in an awkward position irritated both of us.</p>	<p>A complex subject: <u>His being</u> so slow is very annoying.</p> <p>It was unexpected <u>his coming</u> so soon.</p> <p>A subject with the introductory "there is no": Once he starts making little jokes, <u>there is no stopping him</u>.</p> <p><u>There is no deceiving him</u>, he can read my face like a book.</p>



### The Gerund as a Predicative

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction	
A Predicative	1) What he loves best in the world is <u>going</u> to the theatre. 2) What annoyed me most of all was his <u>accepting</u> their proposal quite readily.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	The important part is <u>helping</u> people to live normal lives. What tired them greatly was <u>being questioned</u> by newspaper correspondents.

### The Gerund as Part of a Compound Verbal Predicate

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction		Peculiarities
Part of a Compound Verbal Modal Predicate	Julia <u>couldn't help feeling</u> the warmth of the reception.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>  <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	I <u>couldn't help staying</u> in a hotel when on a business trip. I <u>couldn't help being excited</u> when I was told that news.	The Gerund forms a compound verbal modal predicate with verbs and verbal phrases denoting modality <i>to intend, to try, to attempt</i> , and with <i>can't help</i> .
Part of a Compound Verbal Aspect Predicate	The audience <u>burst out applauding</u> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>	They started <u>discussing</u> this book at four.	Here are some verbs with which the Gerund forms a compound verbal aspect predicate: <i>to keep on, go on, give up, leave off, turn out, finish, stop, cease, begin, start, continue</i> .

### The Gerund as a Direct Object

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction		Peculiarities
A Direct Object	1) This film is worth <u>seeing</u> . (a direct object)  2) I remember <u>his coming</u> here once. (a complex direct object)	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>  <b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	Would you mind <u>opening</u> the window? I can't bear <u>being asked</u> about my private affairs. I can't recollect such a thing <u>having happened</u> to me. He denied the message <u>having been sent by</u> him.	The verbs after which the Gerund is used as a direct object are of monotransitive character and can take only the gerund ( <i>to admit, to appreciate, to avoid, to deny, to detest, to enjoy, to excuse, to fancy, to imagine, to mention, to mind, to miss, to need, to postpone, to practise, to put off, to recollect, to resent, to resist, to risk, to suggest, to understand</i> ), or may be followed either by the gerund or by the infinitive ( <i>to like, to dislike, to have, to plan, to prefer, to forget, to remember, to regret, can't bear, can't afford</i> ).

### The Gerund as a Prepositional Object

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction		Peculiarities
A Prepositional Object	We are looking forward to <u>seeing</u> "Swan Lake" tonight. He agreed to <u>this valuable letter being registered</u> (a	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>  <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	I was greatly surprised at <u>his not knowing it</u> . I insisted on the parcel <u>being sent with declared value</u> . She suspected of his <u>having read</u> her	The verbs after which the Gerund is used as a prepositional object a) monotransitive prepositional verbs ( <i>to agree to, to consist in, to devote to, to hear of, to insist on, to learn of, to think of, to persist in, to count on, to depend on, to rely on, to succeed in, to look forward to, to object to</i> ); b) ditransitive

	<u>complex prepositional object</u> ).	<b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	letters. She complained of <u>having been interrupted</u> every other moment.	verbs taking a direct and a prepositional object ( <i>to accuse of, to suspect of, to prevent from, to stop from, to assist in, to help in, to thank for, to blame for, to praise for, to punish for, to sentence for, to have difficulty in, to congratulate on</i> ); c) adjectives and statives ( <i>to be afraid of, to be aware of, to be conscious of, to be capable of, to be fond of, to be ignorant of, to be proud of, to be sure of, to be responsible for, to be sorry about, to be keen on</i> ); d) participle II, generally used as a predicative ( <i>to be accustomed to, to be used to, to be absorbed in, to be engrossed in, to be (dis)pleased with, to be surprised at, to be tired of</i> )
--	--	---	--	--

### The Gerund as an Attribute

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction		Peculiarities
An Attribute	The doctor left three different medicines with instructions <u>for giving</u> them. I don't believe that is the reason for <u>their losing</u> the game (a complex attribute).	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>	He pointed out the way of <u>avoiding</u> complications.	Here are the nouns after which the Gerund is used as an attribute: <b>of</b> <i>chance, custom, fear, feeling, gift, habit, hope, idea, importance, intention, manner, means, method, necessity, pleasure, possibility, problem, right, risk, sign, sound, trouble, way, etc.</i> <b>for</b> <i>apology, excuse, explanation, instruction, plan, preparation, reason</i> <b>in</b> <i>difficulty, experience, harm, interest, sense, skill, use</i> <b>at</b> <i>astonishment, disappointment, surprise</i>
		<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	He had a feeling of <u>being watched</u> .	
		<b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b>	I hadn't any fear of <u>having said</u> too much.	
		<b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	She gave no sign of <u>having been informed</u> of their arrival.	

### The Gerund as an Adverbial Modifier

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction		Prepositions Used with the Gerund
1. An adverbial modifier of time	1. <i>Before <u>crossing</u></i> the road, stop and look both sides. 2. <i>On <u>hearing</u></i> the news of his arrival, she hurried home. 3. <i>In <u>trying</u></i> to avoid another car, he ran into a lamp-post.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>	<i>On <u>entering</u></i> the hall she saw a lot of familiar faces.	<b>in</b> <b>on (upon)</b> <b>before</b> <b>after</b> <b>at</b> <b>since</b>
		<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	<i>After <u>being looked through</u></i> , the article was signed.	
2. An adverbial modifier of reason (cause)	<i>Through <u>being</u></i> careless he met with an accident.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b>	He caught cold <i>through <u>getting</u></i> his feet wet.	<b>for</b> <b>for fear of</b> <b>owing to</b> <b>through</b> <b>because of</b> <b>from</b> <b>on account of</b>
		<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	So you see I could not sleep <i>for <u>being worried</u></i> .	
		<b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b>	I feel the better myself <i>for <u>having spent</u></i> a good deal of my time abroad.	

		<b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	He was in hospital <i>for having been run</i> by a car.	
3. An adverbial modifier of manner	1. She spent the whole evening <i>in packing</i> . 2. He saved a good deal of time <i>by going</i> there by air.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	He improved the article <i>by changing</i> the end. He succeeded in finishing the work <i>by being given</i> a helping hand.	
4. An adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances	1. <i>Besides being</i> clever she was very industrious. 2. He put the letter away <i>without reading</i> it.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	She passed by <i>without noticing</i> me. <i>Instead of being invited</i> to this party he was sent on a business trip.	<b>without besides instead of</b>
5. An adverbial modifier of concession	<i>In spite of being</i> tired, he continued working.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	I don't ask any questions <i>in spite of</i> there <i>being</i> a lot of questions to ask.. <i>In spite of being sent for</i> , the doctor didn't turn up. <i>In spite of having spent</i> the whole summer in the south, he is taken ill again. <i>In spite of having been scolded</i> he was not offended.	<b>in spite of</b>
6. An adverbial modifier of condition	You will never speak good English <i>without learning</i> English.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	You can't get tickets <i>without booking</i> them in advance. He couldn't enter <i>without being invited</i> .	<b>without in case of but for</b>
7. An adverbial modifier of purpose	This hall is used <i>for dancing</i> .	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	The story was changed <i>for staging</i> at the theatre. He addressed them <i>for being given</i> a piece of good advice.	<b>for</b>

### Predicative Constructions with the Gerund

Function	Sentence Pattern	Voice, Tense Distinction	The Nominal Element may be expressed by		Peculiarities
			a living being	a lifeless thing	
1) a complex subject 2) a complex predicative. 3) a complex object. 4) a complex attribute	1) It's no use <u>your telling</u> me not to worry. 2) What annoyed her most of all was <u>his accepting</u> their proposal quite readily. 3) I was irritated with <u>him having been put</u> in an awkward position. 4) I don't like the idea of <u>Mary's going</u> home alone.	<b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Non-Perfect Gerund Passive</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Active</b> <b>The Perfect Gerund Passive</b>	1) by a noun in the genitive (possessive) case: It's bad enough <u>Richard's failing</u> at the examination. 2) by a possessive pronoun: The morning passed without <u>my making</u> any decision. 3) by a noun in a common case: a) when the doer of the action is	1) by a possessive pronoun: He insisted on <u>its (the document) being delivered</u> without delay. 2) by a noun in the common case: The carrying out of these plans depends on <u>the papers being signed</u> in time.	1) The Gerundial Predicative Construction is nearly always rendered in Ukrainian by a subordinate clause introduced by <i>те, що; тим, що; як; після того, як</i> , etc.: You may rely <u>on my setting</u> matters right. – Ви можете

5) a complex adverbial modifier	5) I stayed at the party a bit longer in spite of <u>her having told me</u> the sad news.		emphasized: He denied <u>Mary having done</u> this on purpose.		розраховувати на те, що я все владною.
			<p>b) when the nominal element consists of two or more nouns: I insist on <u>Mary and Kate passing</u> their vacation at a rest-home.</p> <p>c) when the nominal element is a noun modified by an attribute in post-position: Did you ever hear of <u>a man of sense rejecting</u> such an offer?</p> <p>4) by a pronoun in the objective case: Do you mind <u>them coming</u> too?</p>	3) by pronouns which have no case distinctions, such as <i>all, this, that, both, each, something</i> . I couldn't deny <u>both of them having made</u> a reasonable excuse.	2) Gerundial Constructions in which the nominal element is expressed by a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case are sometimes called constructions with a half gerund 3) In the Predicative Gerundial Construction the Gerund usually refers to a subject of its own.

## THE PARTICIPLE PARTICIPLE I

### The Characteristics of Participle I

Characteristics		Tense, Aspect, Voice Distinctions	
Adjectival or Adverbial	Verbal	Simultaneous Actions	Prior Actions
Participle I may be used as: 1) an attribute: The boy <u>playing</u> centre forward is a first-year student of the English faculty. 2) an adverbial modifier: <u>Having cured</u> his first patient of a serious disease, the young doctor was very happy.	Participle I 1) has tense and voice distinctions: building, being built; having built, having been built. 2) may combine with a noun or a pronoun as direct, indirect or prepositional object: She heard Justine <u>starting a fire</u> in the kitchen. We didn't utter a word while <u>listening to the story</u> . 3) may also combine with an adverb or a prepositional phrase as an adverbial modifier: His son saw him <i>gravely</i> <u>hanging</u> up his coat. The captain walked up and down <u>looking straight</u> before him.	1) <b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> <u>Making</u> a tour of England we were struck by its "parklike" appearance. 2) <b>Participle I Non-Perfect Passive:</b> The monument <u>being erected</u> now on this square will be soon unveiled.	1) <b>Participle I Perfect Active:</b> <u>Having decided</u> to get a general idea of the country we began to study the map. 2) <b>Participle I Perfect Passive:</b> <u>Having been presented</u> with five gold coins, Judy went shopping. <b>Note:</b> Participle I Non-Perfect Active is used to express a prior action with some verbs of sense perception and motion, such as <i>to see, to hear, to come, to arrive, to seize, to look, to turn, to enter, to close, to open, to pass, to cross, etc.</i> <u>Looking out</u> of the window she saw a man working in the garden.

### Participle I as an Attribute

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction	Peculiarities
An attribute	<p>1) The <u>roaring</u> water of the river made a deep impression on him. (in pre-position)</p> <p>2) Great Britain is situated on the British Isles <u>lying</u> to the west of the continent of Europe. (in post-position)</p>	<p>1) <b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> On the western coast Great Britain is washed by the Atlantic ocean and the Irish Sea, <u>separating</u> England from Ireland.</p> <p>2) <b>Participle I Non-Perfect Passive:</b> The country <u>being shown</u> on the map now is Great Britain.</p>	<p>1) If we have a Participle used as an attribute to a noun (in pre-position) the noun performs the action expressed by the -ing form: <i>a touching story – a story that can touch;</i></p> <p>2) Participle I Perfect can be used only as an adverbial modifier and never as an attribute. To express priority attributive clause is used: The student <u>who has shown</u> the countries of America on the map is going to his seat.</p> <p>3) Sometimes Participle I Non-Perfect denotes an action referred to no particular time: Taiga is a thick forest <u>stretching</u> to the south of the tundra.</p>

### Participle I as an Adverbial Modifier

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction	Peculiarities
1. An adverbial modifier of time	<p>1) <u>Learning</u> the topic “the geographical position of Great Britain”, he remembered that he had forgotten to buy the map of Great Britain.</p> <p>2) While <u>getting</u> breakfast ready, the girls began to light the camp fire.</p> <p>3) When in England she couldn't help <u>admiring</u> its “park-like” appearance.</p> <p>4) <u>Coming</u> to the Lake District, we put up our tents on the boundary of the lake.</p>	<p><b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> <u>Studying</u> the map of Great Britain, he found all the mountains and rivers on it.</p> <p><b>Participle I Non-Perfect Passive:</b> <u>Being thanked</u> for his help, he left.</p> <p><b>Participle I Perfect Active:</b> <u>Having reached</u> the top of the mountain we sank to the ground too tired to do anything.</p> <p><b>Participle I Perfect Passive:</b> <u>Having been asked</u> to show the countries of America on the map, he refused to do it.</p>	<p>1) <i>The action expressed by a participle in the function of an adverbial modifier always refers to the subject of the whole sentence.</i></p> <p>2) With such verbs as <i>to see, to hear, to notice, to come, to arrive, to seize, to look, to enter, to turn, to close, to open, to cross</i> Participle I Non-Perfect is used to express a prior action when the action expressed by the finite verb closely follows the action expressed by the Participle: <u>Seeing</u> that it was useless to argue with him, I dropped the subject.</p> <p>3) The conjunctions <i>when</i> and <i>while</i> are often used with Participle I Non-Perfect Active to express an action in progress simultaneous with that of the finite verb: <i>While making</i> a tour of England, we were impressed by its beauty.</p> <p>4) Participle I Non-Perfect of the verb <i>to be</i> is not used as an adverbial modifier of time.</p> <p>Clauses of the type “Коли він був у Києві” may be translated “When in Kyiv”.</p>
2. An adverbial modifier of reason (cause)	<p>He was not surprised to see her, <u>having been informed</u> about her arrival beforehand.</p>	<p><b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> <u>Not knowing</u> the topic well, he got confused.</p> <p><b>Participle I Non-Perfect Passive:</b> <u>Being impressed</u> by the duel scene in “Hamlet”, they were silent on the way home.</p> <p><b>Participle I Perfect Active:</b> <u>Having lost</u> the book, the</p>	<p>1) The most frequently used non-perfect participles I are those of verbs denoting mental perception and emotions (<i>knowing, realizing, remembering, expecting, hoping, fearing</i>) also the participles <i>being</i> and <i>hearing</i>.</p> <p>2) Another characteristic feature of participles functioning as adverbials of reason consists in their combinability with negation.</p>

		students couldn't prepare the topic. <b>Participle I Perfect Passive:</b> <u>Having been left</u> alone, the child felt miserable and lonely.	
3. An adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances	He was standing on the top of the mountain, <u>admiring</u> the beautiful view.	<b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> I spent the morning on the cliff <u>reading</u> .	Participle I denotes some action or event parallel to the action or state denoted by the main verb. The verbs most frequently used in this way are durative. When a terminative verb occurs, it would be more exact to call it an adverbial of subsequent event or action.
4. An adverbial modifier of manner	He came in <u>limping</u> .	<b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> She balanced herself on the curbstone and began to walk carefully, <u>setting heel to toe, heel to toe, and counting her steps</u> .	Participle I as an adverbial of manner characterizes the action of the main verb.
5. An adverbial modifier of comparison	He was silent for a while, <i>as though</i> <u>pausing</u> for a reply.	<b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> She shivered with fright <i>as if</i> <u>realizing</u> the danger.	As an adverbial modifier of comparison the Participle I is always preceded by the conjunctions <i>as if, as though</i> .

#### Participle I as a Predicative

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinction	Phrases to be memorized
Predicative	The answer of the student is <u>disappointing</u> .	<b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> The trip to the mountain was very <u>exciting</u> .	<i>to be astonishing, to be disappointing, to be humiliating, to be tempting, to be terrifying, to be touching.</i>

#### Participle I as Parenthesis

Function	Sentence Pattern	Tense, Voice Distinctions	Phrases to be memorized
Parenthesis	<u>Judging</u> by his words he has visited Great Britain.	<b>Participle I Non-Perfect Active:</b> Generally <u>speaking</u> the best way to get general idea of the country is to study the map.	<i>generally speaking, judging by words, mildly speaking, speaking frankly, strictly speaking, saying nothing of, roughly speaking.</i>

## PARTICIPLE II

### The Characteristics of Participle II

Characteristics	
Adjectival	Verbal
<p>1) Participle II may function in the sentence, as an attribute or predicative. It may combine with adverbs of degree peculiar to adjectives, such as <i>very, too, slightly, so, much, more</i>: I am <u>very pleased</u> with you. The children were <u>too excited</u> to notice the newcomer. No man has ever had a <u>more devoted</u> sister than I.</p> <p>2) Participle II is often negated with the prefix un-, as in <i>unfinished, unanswered</i>.</p> <p>3) Participle II may undergo adjectivization, sometimes acquiring qualitative meaning and becoming synonymous with an adjective, as in <i>celebrated-famous, tired-weary</i>.</p> <p>4) Participle II may form adverbs with the help of the suffix -ly: <i>fixedly, unhurriedly, admittedly</i>.</p>	<p>1) Participle II possesses the potential verbal meaning of voice and aspect, which depend upon the meaning of the verb it is formed from and which are realized in the context.</p> <p>2) The main meanings of participle II are those of a state as a result of some action and an action itself. Participle II transitive verbs, when it is not part of a perfect form, is always passive in meaning. The passive meaning of Participle II may be of three types: a) denoting an action directed towards the subject as the carrier. of the action. This is peculiar to durative (non-terminative) transitive verbs, such as: <i>to accompany, to follow, to watch, to carry, to teach, to listen (to), to laugh (at), to look (at, for, on), to speak (of, to), to love, to hate</i>. b) denoting a state, which is the result of an action. This is typical of terminative transitive verbs, such as <i>to bring, to catch, to do, to find, to make, to put, to solve, to build, to realize, to open, to close</i>, etc. c) denoting a pure state. This is the case with verbs denoting psychological states and emotions, such as <i>to amuse, to annoy, to offend, to surprise, to please, to excite</i>.</p> <p>3) Participle II of intransitive verbs is always active in meaning. The use of the active participle is restricted. Only Participles II of verbs denoting motion or change of state can be used independently, mostly as attributes. These are participles II of the verbs <i>to arrive, to fall, to go, to rise, to depart, to decease, to retire, to fade, to wither, to vanish, to decay</i> and some others (<i>arrived guests, the risen moon, the vanished civilization, the fallen leaves, the retired president</i>).</p>
<p>5) The adjectival nature of Participle II is traced in adjectivized participles with a form different from the Verbal Participle II. These forms occur as attributes in such phrases as <i>on bended knees, a drunken man, a lighted match (candle, torch), molten lava (lead, steel), roast meet, a rotten apple, a shaven head, a well-shaven man, sodden clothes, sunken eyes, a swollen river</i></p>	<p>4) The original aspectual meaning of Participle II is perfectivity. It is evident in terminative verbs and verbs of double aspectual meaning. In transitive terminative verbs the passive meaning of Participle II is combined with perfectivity. Thus Participle II can be opposed to participle I in their aspectual meanings of perfectivity/imperfectivity: <i>taking – taken, asking – asked, writing – written, telling – told</i>. Participle II of intransitive verbs or verbs used intransitively is always perfective in meaning and can be opposed to participle I indefinite: <i>rising – risen, decaying – decayed, going – gone, arriving – arrived, retiring – retired</i>, as in: <i>the rising moon – the risen moon, the retiring director – the retired director</i>.</p> <p>5) Participle II has no tense distinctions; the idea of priority and simultaneousness is suggested by the aspectual character of the verb and is realized in the given context. With terminative verbs Participle II expresses an action already completed, that is, an action expressed by the finite form of the verb in the sentence follows the action, expressed by Participle II (<i>broken, opened, closed, translated, built, made, written</i>, etc.). But depending on the context, Participle II of a terminative verb may lose its perfective meaning and indicate an action which is simultaneous to the action of the finite form of the verb. With durative verbs Participle II has no perfective meaning and denotes an action simultaneous to the action of the finite form of the verb.</p> <p>6) The verbal character of Participle II is manifested in its combinability.</p> <p>a) Participle II of transitive verbs easily combines with an agentive by-object: Jane entered the room <u>followed by her brother</u>. b) Participles II of phrasal verbs retain their composite structure: <i>a boy brought up in a teacher's family</i>. c) Participles II of prepositional transitive verbs are followed by the appropriate prepositions: <i>a book often asked for, the article referred to, a man much spoken of</i>. d) Ditransitive verbs keep their second object: That was the main question <u>asked her</u> at the wedding. e) Participle II may be accompanied by an adverbial modifier expressed by adverbs or phrases combining with verbs: <i>a house built two years before, man hidden in the bush, a play well acted, a story long forgotten</i>. f) One of the main verbal features of Participle II is revealed in its functioning as part of the compound verb forms of the passive voice and the perfect.</p>

### Syntactical Functions of Participle II

Function	Sentence Patterns	Notes
1. An attribute	1) People <u>treated</u> in polyclinics are called out-patients (post-position) 2) After <u>giving</u> the boy the <u>prescribed</u> medicine, I went out for a while (pre-position) 3) <u>Frozen</u> with horror, he understood everything (detached) 4) I took the boy for a walk up the path <u>covered</u> with faded leaves.	1) As a postmodifier Participle II manifests its verbal character more explicitly, even when it stands alone. It may be accompanied by a preposition, by an agentive by-object, an adverb and prepositional phrases as adverbial modifiers: Things <u>seen</u> are mightier than things <u>heard</u> . The dictionary <u>referred to</u> is to be found in our library. These are cities <u>inhabited by their creators</u> . Two women <u>dimly seen in the shadow</u> are talking softly. 2) When Participle II or a participial phrase is detached, its position is not fixed. It may occupy the initial position, the mid-position or the final position in the sentence.
2. 1) An adverbial modifier of time ( <i>when</i> or <i>until</i> ); 2) an adverbial modifier of reason; 3) an adverbial modifier of condition ( <i>if</i> or <i>unless</i> ); 4) an adverbial modifier of concession ( <i>though</i> or <i>although</i> ); 5) an adverbial modifier of comparison ( <i>as if</i> or <i>as though</i> ).	1) <i>When</i> <u>told</u> the fare, he realized he couldn't afford the tour. 2) <u>Deprived of his wife and son</u> by the Spanish adventure, Jolyon found the solitude at Robin Hill intolerable. 3) <i>If</i> <u>sent</u> immediately, the telegram will be delivered in time. 4) <i>Though</i> <u>frightened</u> , he didn't show it. 5) He looked bewildered <i>as if</i> <u>told</u> something unbelievable.	In the adverbial function the Participle should have logically the same subject as the predicate of the whole sentence.
3. A predicative (part of a compound nominal predicate)	1) He seemed <u>delighted</u> to see me again. 2) She looked <u>worried</u> . 3) I confessed I was <u>bewildered</u> .	The compound nominal predicate consists of a link verb ( <i>be, look, get, grow, seem, turn, remain, etc.</i> ) and a predicative (which can be expressed by Participle II and denotes a state).

### The Objective Participial Construction with Participle I and Participle II

Function	Verbs after which the construction is used:	Verbal	Form	Sentence Patterns	Peculiarities
A complex object	1) Verbs of sense perception <i>to hear, to see, to feel, to watch, to observe, to notice, to find</i> .	Participle II  Participle I	Participle II  Participle I Non-Perfect Active	I heard these <u>words mentioned</u> several times. I watched <u>him seeing</u> a friend off.	Participle II shows that the meaning is passive. Participle I describes an action in progress.
	2) Verbs of mental activity: <i>to consider, to understand</i> .	Participle II	Participle II	I consider <u>him engaged</u> at the local theatre.	The meaning is passive
	3) Verbs denoting wish: <i>to want, to wish, to desire</i> .	Participle II	Participle II	I want <u>the parcel delivered</u> in time.	The meaning is passive
	4) <i>to have, to get</i> .	Participle II	Participle II	1) I had my <u>room prepared</u> . 2) Get <u>the prescriptions</u> made at the chemists. 3) Where did you have your <u>watch mended</u> ? 4) Why don't you have your <u>hair waved</u> ?	1) Participle II expresses the idea of something done for the benefit of the person expressed by the subject of the sentence. 2) In questions and in negative sentences the auxiliary <i>do</i> is used.



### Verb Patterns with the Infinitive

#### Verbs/verbal phrases + to + Infinitive

to agree  
to appear  
to arrange  
to ask  
to choose  
to come  
to decide  
to demand  
to deserve  
to expect  
to fail  
to happen  
to help  
to hesitate  
to hope  
to learn  
to manage  
to mean  
to offer  
to prepare  
to pretend  
to promise  
to prove  
to refuse  
to seem  
to struggle  
to tend  
to threaten  
to wait  
to write

#### Verbs/verbal phrases + a noun/a pronoun + to + Infinitive

to advise  
to allow  
to appoint  
to ask  
to beg  
to call  
to cause  
to choose  
to command  
to convince  
to direct  
to encourage  
to expect  
to forbid  
to help  
to instruct  
to invite  
to mean  
to oblige  
to order  
to prefer  
to promise  
to remind  
to require  
to teach  
to tell  
to warn  
to want  
to wish

#### Verbs/verbal phrases + a noun/a pronoun + to + Infinitive

would like  
would love  
would prefer  
would hate

### Verb Patterns with the Infinitive or the Gerund

#### Verbs+ the Gerund/the Infinitive (similar meanings)

to be afraid (of)	to begin
to cease	to dread
to continue	to fear
to hate	to intend
to like	
to love	
to neglect	
to prefer	
to propose	
to start	

#### Verbs+ the Gerund/the Infinitive (different meanings)

to forget  
to remember  
to go on  
to regret  
to stop  
to try

## Verb Patterns with the Gerund

### Verbs/verbal phrases + the Gerund

to admit  
to adore  
to appreciate  
to avoid  
to burst out  
to delay  
to deny  
to discuss  
to dislike  
to enjoy  
to escape  
to excuse  
to fancy  
to feel like  
to finish  
to forgive  
to give up  
to keep (on)  
to leave off  
to mention  
to mind  
to miss  
to postpone  
to practice  
to prevent  
to put off  
to recommend  
to resist  
to risk  
to suggest  
cannot help  
can't stand

### Verbs/verbal phrases + a preposition + the Gerund

to accuse of  
to adjust to  
to advise against  
to apologize for  
to approve of  
to argue about  
to believe in  
to blame for  
to comment on  
to complain about  
to concentrate on  
to congratulate on  
to count on  
to depend on  
to dream about  
to get used to  
to feel like  
to insist on  
to look forward to  
to look like  
to object to  
to persist in  
to prevent from  
to rely on  
to speak of  
to succeed in  
to suspect of  
to thank for  
to think of  
to warn against

### Predicative word-groups +( a preposition) + the Gerund

to be accustomed to  
to be astonished at  
to be ashamed of  
to be aware of  
to be busy in  
to be capable of  
to be concerned about  
to be delighted at  
to be disappointed at  
to be engaged in  
to be excited about  
to be fond of  
to be guilty of  
to be indignant at  
to be interested in  
to be proud of  
to be responsible for  
to be sure of  
to be surprised at  
to be tired of  
to be worth (while)

## ЛІТЕРАТУРА

1. Барановська Т. В. Граматика англійської мови. Збірник вправ : навч. посіб. Київ : Логос, 2005. 384 с.
2. Валігура О. Р., Пастернак Л. П. Неособові форми англійського дієслова: інфінітив, герундій, дієприкметник. Тернопіль : Підручники і посібники, 1997. 32 с.
3. Задорожна І. П., Соленко О. П. Основи англомовного аналітичного письма : навч.-методич. посіб. Тернопіль : Богдан, 2005. 112 с.
4. Мирончук Т. А. Збірник вправ з порівняльної граматики англійської та української мов : навч. посіб. для студ. вищ. навч. закл. Київ : МАУП, 2005. 128 с.
5. Практична граматика англійської мови. Морфологія : навч. посіб. для студ. вищих навч. закладів / Є. І. Гороть та ін. Луцьк : ВДУ ім. Лесі Українки, 2007. 350 с.
6. Практична морфологія англійської мови. Морфологія : навч. посіб. для студ. вищих навч. закладів / Є. І. Гороть та ін. Луцьк : Вежа, 2007. 436 с.
7. Харитонов І. К. Теоретична граматика сучасної англійської мови : навч. посіб. Вінниця : Нова книга, 2008. 352 с.
8. Хоменко Е. Г. Граматика англійської мови: навч. посіб. Київ : Знання-Прес, 2007. 606 с.
9. Черноватий Л. М., Карабан В. І., Набокова І. Ю. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами : навч. посіб. для студентів вищих закладів освіти. Т. 1. Вінниця : Нова книга, 2005. 288 с.
10. Черноватий Л. М., Карабан В. І., Набокова І. Ю. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами : навч. посіб. для студентів вищих закладів освіти. Т. 2. Вінниця : Нова книга, 2005. 288 с.
11. Шерік А. Д., Старко В. Ф. Англійські прийменники для українців. Луцьк: Агроспецсервіс, 2004. 88 с.
12. Alexander L.G. Right Word. Wrong Word. Longman, 1994. 420 p.
13. Allsop J. Student's English Grammar. New York : Prentice Hall, 1992. 220 p.
14. Azar B. Sh., Matthies B., Hartle Sh. Understanding and Using English Grammar. Teacher's Guide. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Longman : Pearson Education, 1999. 300 p.
15. Azar B. Sh. Understanding and Using English Grammar. Workbook. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Longman : Pearson Education, 1999. 437 p.
16. Biber D., Conrad S., Leach G. Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English. Longman : Pearson Education Limited, 2003. 487 p.
17. Bowen J. D. Teaching the English Modal Perfects. *TESOL Quarterly*, 1997. P. 283–301.
18. Chalker S. Current English Grammar . London : Macmillan, 1990. 500 p.
19. Dooley J. Grammarway 3 with answers. Berkshire : Express Publishing, 2006. 278 p.
20. Eastwood J. Oxford Practice Grammar. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 1997. 334 p.
21. Eastwood J. Oxford Practice Grammar: textbook. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2001. 432 p.
23. English Grammar in Exercises = Граматика англійської мови у вправах : навч. посіб. для студ. вищих навч. закладів / Є. І. Гороть, О. В. Василенко, Н. В. Сфремова, І. М. Калиновська та ін. Луцьк : Вежа-Друк, 2016. 416 с.
24. Evans V. FCU Use of English: textbook. Newbury, 2000. 239 p.
25. Fuchs M., Bonner M., Bourke K. Grammar Express. Pearson Limited, 2003. 418 p.
26. Ginger Grammar Rules. URL : <https://www.gingersoftware.com/content/grammar-rules/conjunctions/conjunction-exercises/>
27. Hewings M. Advanced Grammar in Use : Textbook. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1999. 342 p.
28. Jones L. New Progress to First Certificate : Workbook. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2002. 208 p.
29. Longman Essential Activator. Pearson Education Limited, 2006. 982 p.

30. Modern English Grammar: Morphology and Syntax = Граматика сучасної англійської мови : навч. посіб. для студентів вищих навч. закладів / Алла Павлюк, Леся Малімон, Наталія Єфремова, Ірина Калиновська, Ольга Василенко. Луцьк: Вежа-Друк, 2019. 320 с.
31. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use : Textbook. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. 352 p.
32. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use. A Self-Study Reference and Practice Book for Intermediate Students. 5th ed. Cambridge University Press, 2019. 394 p.
33. Palmer F. R. Modality and the English Modals. Abingdon: Routledge, 1990. 256 p.
34. Prodromou L. Grammar and Vocabulary for First Certificate : Textbook. Pearson Education Limited, 1999. 320 p.
35. Soars J. Headway Pre-Intermediate, Intermediate, Upper-Intermediate : Textbook. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 1995. 262 p.
36. Swan M. How English Works : workbook. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 1997. 362 p.
37. Thomson A. J., Martinet A. V. A Practical English grammar. Exercises : Workbook. Oxford : Oxford University Press, 1995. 384 p.
38. Vince M. Advanced Language Practice. Bath Press, 1994. 330 p.
39. Vince M. First Certificate Language Practice. Macmillan Publishes Limited, 2004. 336 p.